BASIC SPOKEN CHINESE
PRACTICE ESSENTIALS
CORNELIUS C. KUBLER & YANG WANG

AN INTRODUCTION TO SPEAKING AND LISTENING FOR BEGINNERS

A wealth of carefully-designed activities to power and polish your spoken Chinese
features 16+ hours of audio, plus 125+ pages of additional practice!

《基础中文：听与说》练习册
《基礎中文：聽與說》練習冊
A Note to the Learner

When it comes to learning Chinese, practice is essential, of course. This workbook offers you many options for practicing and polishing your language skills, and was designed to be used in conjunction with the book Basic Spoken Chinese. However, it may be used to hone speaking skills no matter which book or course you’re using to learn Chinese.

There are no Chinese characters to be found here because you don’t need characters to learn to speak Chinese. In fact, learning the characters for everything you learn to say is an inefficient way to learn Chinese, one that significantly slows down your progress.

To help you learn to speak and understand Chinese as efficiently as possible, this workbook gives you the Chinese language portions not via characters, but instead through audio featuring native speakers (on the accompanying disc). And in the pages of this book, the Chinese is represented in Hanyu Pinyin, the official Chinese romanization system.

- If you wish to learn Chinese reading and writing, which is certainly to be recommended for most learners, you should—together with or after the spoken course—use the companion course Basic Written Chinese. It corresponds with Basic Spoken Chinese and systematically introduces the highest-frequency characters (simplified and traditional) and words in context in sentences and reading passages as well as in realia such as street signs, notes, and name cards.
• For instructors and those learners with prior knowledge of Chinese characters, a Basic Spoken Chinese: Character Transcription is also available. It contains transcriptions into simplified and traditional characters of Basic Spoken Chinese. Please note that the character transcription is not intended, and should not be used, as the primary vehicle for beginning students to learn reading and writing.

• The Basic Chinese Instructor’s Guide contains detailed suggestions for using these materials as well as communicative exercises for use by instructors in class or by tutors during practice sessions.
Do you prefer single-sided pages for ease in turning in completed exercises for review & correction?

DOWNLOAD the free bonus material

Sections 5, 6, 7, and 8 may be printed out in single-sided format.
Contents

1. A Note to the Learner
2. How to Use These Materials
3. Abbreviations
4. 1. New Vocabulary and Grammar Summaries
5. 2. Substitution Drills
6. Substitution Drills Unit 4, Part 4 – Unit 10, Part 4
7. 3. Transformation and Response Drills
8. Transformation and Response Drills Unit 3, Part 3 – Unit 10, Part 4
9. 4. Role Play Exercises
10. 5. Listening Comprehension Exercises
11. 6. Dictation Exercises
12. 7. Translation Exercises, Units 1–10: For Each Part (Lesson)
13. 8. Translation Exercises, Units 1–10: For Each Complete Unit
Every section includes practice materials for these 10 topics:

Unit 1: Greetings and Useful Phrases

Unit 2: Introductions

Unit 3: Numbers, Dates, Time, and Money (I)

Unit 4: Numbers, Dates, Time, and Money (II)

Unit 5: Locating Persons, Places, and Things

Unit 6: Biographical Information (I)

Unit 7: Biographical Information (II)

Unit 8: Getting Around Beijing (I)

Unit 9: Getting Around Beijing (II)

Unit 10: Weather
How to Download the Disc Content of this Book.

1. You must have an internet connection.

2. Click the link below or copy paste the URL to your web browser. 
   http://www.tuttlepublishing.com/fetchapp-download/cd4840149

3. Check if the title is correct and click "ADD TO CART".

4. Make sure that the "Order Subtotal" at the top of "Proceed to Checkout" is $0.00. If not, please email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com. If Checkout shows $0.00, please proceed to checkout.

5. Secure Checkout (Billing Details): Please complete the Billing Details and click the "BILL & SHIP TO THIS ADDRESS".

6. Secure Checkout (Shipping Details): Click "modify" if your shipping address is different from your billing address and click "SHIP TO THIS ADDRESS".

7. Secure Checkout (Shipping Method): Please tick "Free Shipping $0.00" and click "CONTINUE".
8. Secure Checkout (Order Confirmation): Check the cart items and make sure that the Grand Total is $0.00 and "CONTINUE". If the item total is not zero, please email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com.

9. Thereafter, an e-mail confirmation will be sent to you. It contains a link for you to download the file(s).

For support email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com.
How to Use These Materials

Basic Spoken Chinese Practice Essentials contains extensive drills and exercises for each unit of the textbook Basic Spoken Chinese. The purpose of this workbook is to offer learners various kinds of practice activities for both in- and out-of-class use, so as to enable learners to reinforce and “activize” their learning of the new vocabulary and grammar introduced in the textbook.

New Vocabulary and Grammar Summaries

The first section of the Practice Essentials consists of a one-page list of new vocabulary and grammar in each Basic Spoken Chinese lesson, from Unit 1, Part 1 through Unit 10, Part 4.

The lists are divided into a section on “Vocabulary” and a section on “Grammar.” In the vocabulary section, each new vocabulary item introduced in the corresponding lesson of the textbook is listed in alphabetical order of the Pinyin with English translation and indication of word class (any Additional Vocabulary is not included). In the grammar section, each new grammar pattern introduced in that part of the textbook is listed, also in alphabetical order, in most cases with one or more examples in Pinyin and English translation.

• We believe these lists of new vocabulary and grammar will be useful for all learners for review purposes. However, learners should ideally not learn new vocabulary or grammar from these lists; instead, they should always try to learn new
vocabulary and grammar in the context of the Basic Conversations and Build Ups in the textbook.

- Those learners who are using the Practice Essentials to supplement other textbooks and who do not have access to the textbook for Basic Spoken Chinese, will want to pay special attention to these lists, since the various drills and exercises in this book assume thorough familiarity with all this material.

The next two sections consist of drills. Don’t underestimate the value of drills as enabling mechanisms that help you, the learner, to attain the ultimate goal of communicative competency. The drills are useful for improving your pronunciation, developing your fluency, and increasing your confidence in speaking Chinese. Although it’s true that some of the drills in this workbook are of necessity fairly mechanical, others are more realistic and communicative, in some cases even incorporating a certain amount of cultural material.

- The drills are best done out of class in self-study mode, either in a language learning laboratory or, working with a computer or your audio player, in some other place of your choosing. If you’re learning Chinese in a classroom setting, doing the drills out of class also frees up valuable time with the instructor so that you can focus on those kinds of interactive learning activities for which the instructor’s guidance and active participation is essential.
• You should work with the recordings on the accompanying disc as actively as possible, speaking loudly and always thinking of the meaning of what you are hearing and saying.

• If you’re learning Chinese on your own, the drills will be especially important for you and, working with the accompanying audio disc, you should try to go through each one several times. In addition, it will be to your benefit to seek out a native-speaking tutor or mentor who can work with you one or two hours a week for additional practice and to answer questions.

Substitution Drills

In the substitution drills, a model sentence is first said for you to repeat. Next, various vocabulary and grammar prompts are given that you’re to substitute into the model sentence, creating a related but new sentence.

In the audio portion, after each prompt a pause is provided for the learner to say the new sentence with that substitution. A native speaker then provides a confirmation of the correct sentence, followed by a pause during which you should repeat the correct sentence. An English translation of each sentence is included in the workbook.

• It’s most effective to do each drill at least twice: the first time with the workbook open and the second time with the workbook closed.

Transformation and Response Drills
As the name implies, these drills involve transforming one phrase or sentence into another, or responding to a question or other cue. There are also a smaller number of politeness drills, translation drills, and drills involving the conversion of Beijing-style speech to non-Beijing-style speech and vice versa.

In the audio portion, instructions for each drill are given in English before the drill. As with the substitution drills, each of the transformation and response drills is followed by a pause for the learner’s response, which is then in turn followed by confirmation of the correct response by a native speaker. A pause then allows you time to repeat the correct sentence. An English translation of each sentence or phrase is included in the workbook.

- Again, it is best to do each drill at least twice—once with the workbook open and once with the workbook closed.

- Though the transformation and response drills are in principle meant to be done by students out of class, some instructors may choose to do some of the drills in class, or some of the drills could be adapted for in-class exercises.

Role Play Exercises

The role play exercises involve conversations between two or more speakers that make use of the new vocabulary, grammar, functions, and situations introduced in the lesson.
There are three to eight role plays for each of the four parts of each unit. In many cases, the role plays are based roughly on the textbook’s Basic Conversation but with some of the details changed. Most of the role plays involve two roles (indicated by A and B), with a few involving three roles (A, B, C).

Here in the workbook, the role plays are rendered in English, but they’re to be performed in Chinese. The role plays are designed to be done as one of the last activities of each lesson.

- While performing the role plays, you may glance at the English but should try to look up as much as possible when saying the Chinese.

- The role plays should be performed at a fairly rapid clip, so you may wish to practice them in advance (making a few notes is fine, but you should not write out complete translations). The goal isn’t laboriously translating word-for-word from English to Chinese but, rather, producing natural Chinese equivalents based on the English cues. The emphasis should be on the performance of the role plays. If you find that you’re hesitant and choppy in performing a role play, this most likely means you haven’t yet attained sufficient mastery of the material.

- If you’re learning Chinese in a class, after individual students have performed a role play, the instructor will probably lead the whole class in
repeating the lines of the role play one more time together.

• If you’re learning Chinese on your own, then the role plays will be especially helpful in giving you practice in using the vocabulary and grammar of the lesson in new combinations. By playing all the roles in a role play exercise, you as an independent learner stand to gain extra benefits for your language skills, enhancing your fluency and becoming flexible in swiftly switching perspectives. Of course, if you’re learning with a friend or have access to a native-speaking tutor, then each of you could take one role.

Listening Comprehension Exercises

The listening comprehension exercises involve conversations or monologues which are available on the accompanying disc only, since it is listening that we want to practice, not reading. There are two listening passages for each lesson, each approximately the same length as the basic conversations, that is, about 6 to 12 lines total. To provide additional practice in listening comprehension, the passages reuse, in new contexts, the new vocabulary (including the Supplementary Vocabulary) and grammar of the current and previous lessons.

Each listening passage is followed by two to four multiple choice questions on the content of the passage. Based on the recorded passages, you should circle the best response—(A), (B), or (C)—to each of the questions that follows.
• While you work on the listening comprehension exercises, feel free to listen to each passage as many times as needed.

• In a classroom setting, the listening comprehension exercises are best done as homework which students hand in the next day for the instructor to correct, grade, and return. After they have been corrected and returned to students, they can be inserted by the student into a binder for future reference.

• Independent learners will also find the listening comprehension exercises helpful for practice in comprehending new combinations of words and grammar patterns; if they have questions, they can ask a tutor or Chinese friend. It may also be useful to obtain the Instructor’s Guide, since along with the scripts for the listening comprehension exercises it also includes the correct answers.

Dictation Exercises

The dictation exercises provide practice in listening to and transcribing in Pinyin romanization the sounds of Mandarin, as well as listening comprehension practice involving the classroom expressions, numbers, ages, money amounts, clock times, amounts of time, and dates (days of the week, days of the month, months, and years).

Dictation exercises are included only for some of the lessons in the textbook. The lesson in the textbook that a given dictation exercise is designed to accompany is indicated.
The dictation exercises provide all learners, independent or class-based alike, with additional practice to reinforce the content of the lesson. If you’re learning Chinese in a classroom setting, your instructor may suggest that you do the dictation exercises as homework to reinforce what’s been covered in class.

- Like the listening comprehension exercises, the dictation exercises are based on audio recordings by native speakers that are available only on the accompanying disc. Instructions are given in English at the beginning of each exercise.

- You may listen to each dictation exercise as many times as you wish.

- Also like the listening comprehension exercises, the dictation exercises may be removed from the workbook for correction by the instructor, then may be kept in a binder for reference.

Translation Exercises

The purpose of the translation exercises is to provide you with additional practice in using the grammar patterns and important vocabulary of the unit and to serve as a check of mastery over the material. Completing the translation exercises will be helpful to students in reviewing for the unit tests.

It is recommended that the classroom instructor correct and return the translation exercises to students before the test on the corresponding unit, so that any remaining problems can be
identified and addressed in a timely manner. Students should carefully study the instructor’s corrections, making sure they understand why any errors occurred, and file the corrected exercises for later reference.

The translation exercises come in two different sets. The first set of translation exercises consists of five sentences for each of the four Parts or lessons of each Unit in the textbook, while the second set of translation exercises consists of ten sentences for each complete Unit of the textbook. Instructors can decide whether the students in their classes should complete both sets or only one of the two sets. Independent learners would profit from doing both sets of translation exercises and can read out their translations to a tutor or native-speaking friend for correction and comments.

- The sentences should be translated into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks in the blank space that has been left under each sentence.

- The English in the translation exercises is in some places purposely somewhat stilted, so as to guide the student toward the correct Chinese translation.

- In certain cases, additional instructions have been added in parentheses within or after the English sentence, for example, to be polite or to use or not use certain words or patterns.

- If you’ve forgotten the Chinese equivalent for an English word or grammar pattern, you can consult the English-Chinese Glossary, Chinese-English Glossary, or Index of Grammatical and Cultural
Topics in the back of the Basic Spoken Chinese textbook.

**Footnotes**

1. Complete scripts of the listening comprehension exercises in Chinese characters are available in the Instructor’s Guide, which also includes other exercises for in-class use.

2. Scripts of the dictation exercises are also included in the Instructor’s Guide.
Abbreviations

Word Classes *

A    Adverb
AT   Attributive
AV   Auxiliary Verb
BF   Bound Form
CJ   Conjunction
CV   Coverb
EV   Equative Verb
EX   Expression
I    Interjection
IE   Idiomatic Expression
L  Localizer

M  Measure

MA Moveable Adverb

N  Noun

NU Number

P  Particle

PH Phrase

PR Pronoun

PT Pattern

PV Postverb

PW Place Word

QW Question Word
RC  Resultative Compound

RE  Resultative Ending

SN  Surname

SP  Specifier

SV  Stative Verb

TW  Time Word

V   Verb

VO  Verb-Object Compound

Other Abbreviations and Symbols

(B)  Beijing

(T)  Taipei

lit.  literally
SV Supplementary Vocabulary

AV Additional Vocabulary

* (indicates that what follows is incorrect)

/ (separates alternate forms)

* For explanations of the word classes, see the section “Word Classes of Spoken Chinese” in Basic Spoken Chinese.
1. New Vocabulary and Grammar Summaries

Unit 1, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

a (softens sentence) [P]

bàn take care of, do [V]

dào to [CV]

huí go back to [V]

Kē Ke [SN]

năr where [QW]

ne and how about, and what about [P]

nǐ you [PN]

nǐ hǎo hi, how are you? [IE]

qù go [V]
shi(r)  matter [N]
shítáng  cafeteria [PW]
sùshè  dormitory [PW]
túshūguān  library [PW]
Wáng  Wang [SN]
wŏ  I [PN]
yĕ  also, too [A]
yìdiăn(r)  a little [N]

Grammar

A as final particle to soften questions, greetings, and exclamations: Nǐ dào năr qù a? “And where might you be going?”

DÀO...QÙ “go to…”: Wáng Jīngshēng dào năr qù? “Where is Jingsheng Wang going?”

Name + Greeting: Wáng Jīngshēng, nǐ hǎo! “Jingsheng Wang, how are you?”
Names: Wáng Jīngshēng “Jingsheng Wang”

NE as final particle to abbreviate questions: Wǒ qù shítáng. Nǐ ne? “I’m going to the dining hall. And what about you?”

QÙ + Place word to indicate “go to a certain place”: Wǒ qù túshūguăn. “I’m going to the library.”

QÙ + Verb to indicate purpose: Wǒ qù túshūguăn bàn yìdiǎnr shí. “I’m going to the library to take care of something.”

Question Word Questions: Nǐ dào nǎr qù? “Where are you going?”

Unit 1, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

àirén spouse [N]

bàba dad [N]

dōu all, both [A]

hái still [A]

háiizi child [N]

hǎo jiǔ bú jiànle long time no see [IE]
hǎo be good [SV]
hěn very [A]
le (indicates changed status or situation) [P]
lèi be tired [SV]
ma (indicates questions) [P]
māma mom [N]
máng be busy [SV]
tā he, she [PN]
tāmen they [PN]
xiān first [A]
xièxie thank you [IE]
xíng be O.K. [V]
Grammar

MA to transform statements into questions: Tāmen yĕ qù shítáng ma? “Are they going to the dining hall, too?”

Stative Verb Sentences: Wŏ hĕn lèi. “I’m tired.”

Unmarked coordination: nǐ àirén, háizi “your spouse and children”

Unit 1, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

āi be short [SV]

bù not [A]
-de (in tīng…-de “quite, very”) [P]
èi hey, hi [I]
Gāo Gao [SN]
gāo be tall [SV]
gōngzuò work [N]
Hé He [SN]
jīnzhāng be intense [SV]
kéyi be O.K. [SV]
kùn be sleepy [SV]
lǎo be old [SV]
nán be difficult [SV]
róngyi be easy [SV]
shì    be [EQ]
tài   too, excessively [A]
tǐng  quite, very [A]
xiǎo  be small [SV]
xuéxí study, studies [N]
yàngzi way [N]

Zhōngwén Chinese language [N]

zuìjin recently [TW]

Grammar


BÙ to negate verbs: bù máng “not be busy,” bù huí sùshè “not go back to the dormitory”

LÃO and XIĀO before monosyllabic surnames: Lǎo Gāo “Old Gao,” Xiǎo Wáng “Little Wang”
Stative Verbs before nouns as adjectives: 老洋子 “old way,” 好孩子 “good child,” 小事儿 “small matter”

TīNG...-DE: 听谨慎的 “quite intense,” 听容易的 “quite easy”

Tone change of BÙ to BÚ before Tone Four syllables: bù + qù → bú qù

Topic-comment construction: 你工作忙不忙? “Is your work busy or not busy?”

Vocative Expressions: 小刘! “Little Liu!,” 爸爸! “Dad!”

Unit 1, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bú kèqi you’re welcome [IE]

děi must [AV]

huānyíng welcome [IE]

jìn enter [V]

lǎoshī teacher [N]

Lǐ Li [SN]
Lin  Lin [SN]
màn zǒu  take care [IE]
méi yisi  not be interesting [PH]
nǐmen  you (plural) [PN]
nín  you (polite) [PN]
qǐng jìn  please come in [IE]
qǐng zuò  please sit down [IE]
qǐng  please [IE]
tàitai  Mrs. [N]
wǒmen  we [PN]
xiānsheng  Mr. [N]
xiǎojie  Miss [N]
Xiè  Xie [SN]

xièxiè  thank [V]

yǒu yìsi  be interesting [PH]

zuò  sit [V]

Grammar

Imperatives: Qǐng nín dào tǔshūguăn qù. “Please go to the library.”

LE to indicate a changed situation: Nǐ māma hǎole ma? “Has your mom gotten well?,” Wǒ bú qùle. “I’m no longer going.”

Pronouns: wǒ, nǐ, nín, tā, wǒmen, nǐmen, tāmen


Unit 2, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Bái  Bai (lit. “white”) [SN]

Chén  Chen [SN]
Huáyì Měiguó rén Chinese-American [PH]

Huáyì person of Chinese descent [N]

Jiā’nádà Canada [PW]

jiào be called or named [EQ]

kěshi but [MA]

Mǎ Ma (lit. “horse”) [SN]

Mǎláixīyà Malaysia [PW]

Měiguó America [PW]

míngzi name [N]

nèi that [SP]

něi which [QW]

něiguó which country [QW]
qǐng wèn  “excuse me,” “may I ask” [IE]

rén  person [N]

Riběn  Japan [PW]

shémme  what [QW]

Táiwān  Taiwan [PW]

tóngxué  classmate [N]

wèi  (polite measure for people) [M]

wèn  ask [V]

Xībānyá  Spain [PW]

Xīnjiāpō  Singapore [PW]

zhèi  this [SP]

Zhōngguo  China [PW]

Grammar
JIÀO in equative verb sentences: Wŏ jiào Bái Jiérui. “My name is Bai Jierui.” Nǐ jiào shémmé míngzi? “What’s your name?”

Nationalities: Mĕiguo rén “American,” Zhōngguo rén “Chinese,” etc.

SHÌ in equative verb sentences: Wŏ shì Mĕiguo rén. “I am (an) American.”

ZHÈI- and NÈI- as specifiers with the polite measure WÈI: zhèiwèi lăoshī “this teacher,” nèiwèi tóngxué “that classmate”

Unit 2, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bié      don’t [AV]

búyào    don’t [AV]

chēnghu   address [V]

-de       (indicates possession) [P]

gāoxing  be happy [SV]

gěi       for [CV]
hǎo  “all right,” “O.K.” [IE]

huānyíng  welcome [V]

jiào  call (someone a name) [V]

jièshào  introduce [V]

lái  come [V]

nà  in that case [CJ]

nà  that [PN]

ò  “oh” [I]

rènshi  be acquainted with, know [V]

shéi  who, whom [QW]

tóngwū(r) roommate [N]

xīn  be new [SV]
yīnggāi should [AV]

zĕmme how [QW]

zhè this [PN]

zhèmme like this, in this way, so [A]

Grammar

BIÉ or BÚYÀO to indicate negative imperative: Qīng nǐ bié qù! “Please don’t go!” Búyào jiào wǒ Lăo Wáng! “Don’t call me old Wang!”

DÀO...LÁI: Qǐng nǐ dào túshūguăn lái. “Please come to the library.”

-DE to indicate possession: wŏde gōngzuò “my work,” nǐde xīn tóngxué “your new classmate”

...HĂOLE: Nǐ hái shì jiào wǒ Xiăo Chén hăole. “It would be better if you called me Little Chen.”

YÍXIÀ(R) after verbs to make them less abrupt: jièshào yixiar “introduce,” lái yixia “come,” wèn yixia “ask”

ZHÈ “this” and NÀ “that” as pronoun subjects: Zhè shì Wáng Àihuá, zhè shì Chén Li “This is Wang Aihua, this is Chen Li,” Nà shì shéi? “Who is that?”
Unit 2, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

- **ba** (indicates supposition) [P]
- **dānwèi** work unit, organization [PW]
- **dàshīguān** embassy [PW]
- **dàxué** university, college [PW]
- **ge** (general measure) [M]
- **gōngsī** company, firm [PW]
- **gōngzuò** work [V]
- **guixing** “what’s your honorable surname?” [IE]
- **jiā** (for companies, factories) [M]
- **nǚshì** madam, lady [N]
- **tàitai** wife [N]
tóngshì colleague [N]
wàijíobù foreign ministry [PW]

Wú Wu [SN]

Xiānggǎng Hong Kong [PW]

xiānsheng husband [N]

xiàozhāng head of a school [N]

xing be surnamed [EQ]

xuéxí learn, study [V]

yī one, a [NU]

zài be located at, at [CV]

Grammar

BA to indicate supposition: Tā shì Yīngguó rén ba “I suppose she’s English.” Nǐ lèile ba? “You must be tired?”
XÌNG in equative verb sentences: Wǒ xìng Zhāng. “My last name is Zhang.” Nǐ xìng shémmé? “What’s your last name?”

Unit 2, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

'à “oh” [I]

cuò be wrong [SV]

-cuò wrong [RE]

dài take along, bring [V]

-de (indicates that what precedes describes what follows) [P]

gǎo get, do [V]

gǎocuò get or do something wrong [RC]

gēn and [CJ]

Hóu Hou [SN]
jīnglǐ   manager [N]

-le (indicates completed action) [P]

Luó   Luo [SN]

màoyì trading company [PH]

gōngsī   trading company [PH]

màoyi trade [N]

méi guānxi “never mind” [IE]

méi (indicates past negative of action verbs) [AV]

míngpiàn name card, business card [N]

Shī   Shi [SN]

tàitai married woman, lady [N]

xiānsheng gentleman [N]

xiáojie young lady [N]
Yīngguó   England [PW]

Zhōng-Mĕi Sino-American [AT]

zōngjīnglǐ   general manager [N]

Grammar

BÙ DŌU vs. DŌU BÙ: Wŏmen bù dōu shì Mĕiguo rén. “We are not all Americans.” Wŏmen dōu bú shì Mĕiguo rén. “None of us is American.”

-DE to indicate that what precedes describes what follows: Zhōng-Mĕi Māoyì Gōngsīde Shī Xiáojie “Ms. Shi from Sino-American Trading Company”

-LE to indicate completed action: Wŏ găocuòle. “I got it wrong.”

MÉI to indicate past negative of action verbs: Tāmen méi lái. “They didn’t come.”

MÉI DŌU vs. DŌU MÉI: Tāmen méi dōu qù. “They didn’t all go.” Tāmen dōu méi qù. “None of them went.”

Unit 3, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary
bā eight [NU]
bān class [N]
bàn(r) half [NU]
Déguo Germany [PW]
èr two [NU]
Făguo France [PW]
jǐ- how many [QW]
jiū nine [NU]
liǎng two [NU]
liù six [NU]
nánde man, male [N]
nánlǎoshī male teacher [N]
nánshēng  male student [N]
nǚde    woman, female [N]
nǚlāoshī female teacher [N]
nǚshēng female student [N]
qī      seven [NU]
sān     three [NU]
shí     ten [NU]
sì      four [NU]
wǔ      five [NU]
yígòng in all [A]
yǒu     there is, there are [V]

Grammar

Numbers from one to ten
Place Word + YŏU + Noun Phrase to indicate existence: Bānshang yŏu shíge tóngxué. “In the class there are ten classmates.”

Unit 3, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

ài     love; like [V]

cāi    guess [V]

dà      be big; old (of people) [SV]

dìdì  younger brother [N]

duì   be correct [SV]

duō    how [QW]

fùqin  father [N]

gēge  older brother [N]

jiējie  older sister [N]
jīnnián this year [TW]
jiù then [A]
kàn look, see [V]
kě’ài be loveable, cute [SV]
mèimei younger sister [N]
méiyòu not have; there is/are not [V]
mǔqīn mother [N]
niánjì age [N]
shàng last [SP]
suí year of age [M]
xià- next [SP]
xiǎng think [V]
yuè  month [N]

Grammar

Age: Nǐ duō dà niánji le? “How old are you?”; Nǐ jīsui le? “How old are you?” (of children); Wǒ jīnnián shībāsuì le. “I’m eighteen years old.”

LE to indicate anticipated change in a situation: Tā xiàge yuè jiù jiǔsuì le “Next month she will be nine years old.”

MÉIYOU “not have; there is not/there are not” as the negative of YŎU: Wǒ méiyou gēge. “I don’t have (any) brothers.”

Numbers from 11 to 99 with SHÍ

Reduplicated monosyllabic verbs + KÀN: xiángxiang kàn “try and think”

Tag Questions: Zhè shì nǐ mèimei, duì bu duì? “This is your younger sister, right?”; Zhè shì nǐ didi, shì bu shì? “This is your younger brother, isn’t it?”

Unit 3, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

a (indicates suggestions) [P]
-bǎi  hundred [NU]
bēibāo  knapsack, backpack [N]
bēizi  cup [N]
dàizi  bag [N]
duōshǎo  how much, how many [QW]
fēn  penny [M]
gōngshibāo  briefcase, attache case [N]
guì  be expensive [SV]
jiā  add; plus [V]
jiǎn  subtract; minus [V]
kuài  dollar (monetary unit) [M]
líng  zero [NU]
mǎi  buy [V]
mài  sell [V]
máo  ten cents, dime [M]
piányi  be cheap [SV]
-qīān  thousand [NU]
qián  money [N]
yào  want, need, cost, take [V]
yī  one [NU]
yò  “gosh,” “wow” [I]
zhǐ  only [A]

Grammar

BA to indicate suggestions: Nín kàn ba. “Why don’t you take a look?”
LE after TÀI in affirmative sentences: tài guile “too expensive”

Monetary system: liùkuài wūmáo jiǔfēn qián “six dollars and fifty-nine cents”

Numbers from 100 to 999 with -BĀI “hundred”

Numbers from 1,000 to 9,999 with -QIĀN “thousand”

Reduplication of verbs: kàn → kànkan “take a look”

YÀO to indicate price: Nèige bēizi yào sānkuài wǔ. “That cup costs three fifty.”

ZHÈIGE “this/this one” and NÈIGE “that/that one”

Unit 3, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

chà lack [V]

chàbuduō almost, about [MA]

cháng be long [SV]

chē vehicle (car, cab, bus, bicycle) [N]
dào  arrive, reach [V]

diăn  o’clock, hour [M]

fēn  minute [M]

huŏ  fire [N]

huŏchē  train [N]

-jí  reach a goal in time [RE]

kāi  depart (of a train, bus, ship) [V]

kè  quarter of an hour [M]

kŏngpà  “I’m afraid that”; probably [MA]

láibují  not have enough time [RC]

nèmme  then, in that case, well [CJ]

shíjiān  time [N]
tàng (for runs by trains, buses) [M]

Tiānjīn Tianjin [PW]

xiànzài now [TW]

yǐjīng already [A]

zài again [A]

zhōng clock, o’clock; bell [N]

zhōngtóu hour [N]

zuò travel by, take [V]

Grammar

Clock times: liǎngdiǎn sānshibāfēn zhōng “2:38”

-DE following long phrases to indicate modification: dào Tiānjīndé huŏchē “the trains that go to Tianjin”

-DE to create nominal phrases: shídiǎn bànde “the 10:30 one,” wŏ măide “the ones I bought”

Number of hours: sān’ge zhōngtóu “three hours”
Time when before the verb: Wǒ bādiăn zhōng qù. “I go at eight o’clock.”

Unit 4, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

guān close [V]
guānmén close a door, close [VO]
kāi open [V]
kāimén open a door, open [VO]
lǐbài week [N]
měi each, every [SP]
mén(r) door, gate [N]
náli “not at all” [IE]
píngcháng usually, ordinarily [MA]
qīchuáng get up from bed, rise [VO]
shàngwǔ  morning, A.M. [TW]
shíyàn  experiment [N]
shíyànshi  laboratory [N]
shuì  sleep [V]
shuijiào  sleep, go to bed [VO]
tiān  day [M]
wǎnshang  in the evening [TW]
xiàwǔ  afternoon, P.M. [TW]
xīngqī  week [N]
xiūxi  rest, take time off [V]
yǔyán shíyànshi language lab [PH]
yǔyán  language [N]
zǎoshang in the morning [TW]

Grammar

Days of the week: xīngqīyī OR lǐbàiyī “Monday,” xīngqī’èr OR lǐbài’èr “Tuesday,” xīngqīsān OR lǐbàisān “Wednesday,” xīngqīsì OR lǐbàisì “Thursday,” xīngqīwǔ OR lǐbàiwǔ “Friday,” xīngqīliù OR lǐbàiliù “Saturday,” xīngqītiān OR xīngqīrì OR lǐbàitiān OR lǐbàirì “Sunday,” xīngqījī OR lǐbāijī “which day of the week?”

TIĀN as measure meaning “day”: yītiān “one day,” liǎngtiān “two days,” jǐtiān “how many days?,” měitiān “every day”

Time spent after the verb: Yŭyán shíyànshì xīngqīliù kāi bàntiān. “On Saturday the language lab is open for half the day.”

Unit 4, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

chūshēng be born [V]

dēng wait, wait for [V]

dìzhǐ address [N]
nián    year [M]
-nòng    alley [BF]
qùnián  last year [TW]
shēngri  birthday [N]
wénhuà  culture [N]
-xiàng   lane [BF]
Zhāng    Zhang [SN]
zuótiān  yesterday [TW]

Grammar

Addresses: Zhōngguó Guǎngdōng Guǎngzhōu Zhōngshān Lù wǔhào sānlóu “3rd floor, Number 5, Zhong Shan Road, Guangzhou, China”

Dates: èr-líng-líng-wǔ nián shíyīyuè èrhào xīngqīyī “Monday, November 2, 2005”

Days of the month with HÀO: wǔhào “the fifth,” jīhào “which day of the month?”
Floors of buildings with LÓU: yīlóu “first floor,” èrlóu “second floor,” jǐlóu? “which floor?”


NIÁN as measure for “year”: yìnián “one year,” jǐnián “how many years?” měinián “every year”

SHI...-DE to express time or place of known past actions: Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-bā-wū-nián chūshēngde. “I was born in 1985.”

Time when before place: Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-bā-wū-nián zài Měiguó chūshēngde. “I was born in 1985 in America.”

Years of the calendar with NIÁN: yī-jiǔ-bā-wū-nián “1985”

Unit 4, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

báitiān  in the daytime [TW]

cì  time [M]

dàyuē  approximately, about [A]
di- (forms ordinal numbers) [SP]

fángjiān room [N]

-guo (indicates experience) [P]

hòunián year after next [TW]

hòutiān day after tomorrow [TW]

huíguó return to one’s home country [VO]

huíjiā return to one’s home [VO]

jiā family, home [PW]

jiǔ be long (of time) [SV]

m (hesitation sound; pause filler) [I]

qiánnián year before last [TW]

qiántiān day before yesterday [TW]
ránhòu  afterward, then [MA]

shuō  say, speak [V]

yào  be going to, will [AV]

yèli  at night [TW]

zhōngwǔ  noon [TW]

zhù  live (in), stay (in) [V]

Grammar

DÌ- to create ordinal numbers: diyī “first,” di’èrge “the second one,” disāncì “the third time”

-GUO to express experience: Wŏ qùguo. “I’ve gone there.” OR “I’ve been there.”

Unit 4, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

-bāiwàn  million [NU]

Bēijīng  Beijing [PW]
bījiào       comparatively, relatively [A]

chángcháng   often [A]

chídào       arrive late, be late [V]

duō          be many, much, more [SV]

Guǎngzhōu   Guangzhou, Canton [PW]

hǎoxiàng    apparently, it seems to me [MA]

kè          class [N]

Nánjīng     Nanjing [PW]

-qīānwàn   ten million [NU]

rénkǒu      population [N]

Shànghǎi   Shanghai [PW]

shàngkè    have class [VO]
shǎo  be few, less [SV]

shíwàn  hundred thousand [NU]

Sūn  Sun [SN]

Táiběi  Taipei [PW]

táokè  skip class [VO]

-twàn  ten thousand [NU]

Xī’ān  Xian [PW]

-zi  hundred million [NU]

Grammar

DUŌ to express “more than”: yībāiduō rén “more than a hundred people,” yīqiān duo kuài “more than a thousand dollars”

HĀOXIÀNG: Tāmen hǎoxiàng hái méi lái. “It seems they haven’t come yet.”

Large numbers: yíwàn “ten thousand,” shíwàn “one hundred thousand,” yībǎiwàn “one million,” yīqiānwàn “ten million,” yīyì “one hundred million,” shíyì “billion”
Unit 5, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bā  (for chairs, umbrellas) [M]

bàngōngshì office [PW]

bāoqìàn  feel sorry, regret [V]

búguò  however [CJ]

dāngrán  of course [MA]

Huáqiáo  overseas Chinese [N]

kéyi  may, can [AV]

lăobăn  boss, owner [N]

liū  leave (someone something) [V]

nàr  there [PW]

shízài  really, truly [A]
tiáozì note [N]

xiāng want to, would like to [AV]

yào shì if [MA]

Yīngwén English (language) [N]

yīzǐ chair [N]

zài be present; be located at [V]

zěmme bàn “what should be done?” [IE]

zhāng (for tables, name cards) [M]

zhǎo look for [V]

zhèr here [PW]

zhīdào know [V]

zhūōzǐ table [N]

Grammar
Deletion of second syllable of bisyllabic verbs in affirmative part of affirmative-negative questions: kéyi bu kéyi → kĕ bu kéyi “may I or may I not?”

Embedded questions: Nǐ zhīdao tā zài nǎr ma? “Do you know where she is?”

GĚI as coverb: Wǒ gěi tā liú yíge tiáozī “I’m going to leave a note for her.”

YÀOSHI: Yàoshi nǐ zhăo yíge rén.../Nǐ yàoshi zhăo yíge rén... “If you’re looking for a person...”

ZÀI as main verb: Tā zài bu zài? “Is she present?,” Tā zài Niŭyuē. “She is in New York.”

-ZI as a noun suffix: zhuōzi “table,” yĭzi “chair”
Unit 5, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Běidà  Peking University [PW]

cài  food [N]

cháng  often [A]

chăng  factory [N]

chī  eat [V]

chīfàn  eat food, eat [VO]

dàxuéshēng  college student [N]

fàn  rice (cooked); food [N]

gōngrén  worker, laborer [N]

Hànyǔ  Chinese (language) [N]

kuài  soon, quickly [A]

péixùn train [V]

pí leather, skin [N]

píxié leather shoe [N]

wǎnfàn dinner, evening meal [N]

wèizi seat, place [N]

wǔfàn lunch [N]

xié shoe [N]

xué learn, study [V]

xuésheng student [N]

zǎofàn breakfast [N]

zhōngfàn lunch [N]

zhōngxīn center [N]

Grammar
College and university abbreviations: Běijīng Dàxué → Běidà “Beijing University”

KUÀI (YÀO)...LE to indicate an imminent action or situation: Tā kuài yào zǒule. “She will be leaving soon.”

LÁI + Verb to indicate purpose: Tā lái zhèr xué Zhōngwén. “She’s coming here to study Chinese.”

Verb-Object compounds: chīfàn “eat rice” → “eat,” shuìjiào “sleep”

ZÀI as coverb: Wǒ zài yìjiā gōngsī gōngzuò. “I work at a company.”

Unit 5, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bān move (a thing or one’s home) [V]
běibiān(r) north [PW]
cèsuǒ toilet [PW]

Cháng Chéng Great Wall [PW]

Cháng Chéng Fàndiàn Great Wall Hotel [PW]
chéng city [N]
-dào arrive at, to [PV]
difang place [N]
dōngbiān(r) east [PW]
fàndiàn hotel [PW]
huí time [M]
kĕ indeed, certainly [A]
méi shì(r) “it’s nothing,” “never mind” [IE]
nánbiān(r) south [PW]
nĕibiān(r) which side, where [QW]
nèibian(r) that side, there [PW]
pàng be fat (of people or animals) [SV]
ràng  let, cause, make [CV]

ràng nǐ jiǔ dēngle  “made you wait a long time” [IE]

shān  mountain, hill [N]

shòu  be thin, lean, skinny [SV]

Xiāng Shān  Fragrant Hills [PW]

xiāng  be fragrant, smell good [SV]

xībiān(r)  west [PW]

yāo  one [NU]

-zài  at, in, on [PV]

zhèibian(r)  this side, here [PW]

Grammar

-DÀO as postverb: Tāmen qùnián bāndao Táibĕi le. “Last year they moved to Taipei.”
Points of the compass: dōngbiān(r) “east, east side,” nánbiān(r) “south, south side,” xībiān(r) “west, west side,” běibiān(r) “north, north side”

Stative Verb + (YÌ)DIǍN(R): pián yìdiăn “a little cheaper,” hǎo yìdiăn “a little better”


Unit 5, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

āiyò (indicates surprise) [I]

diàn nǎo computer [N]

dìxià underneath [PW]

dōngxi thing [N]

e (hesitation sound; pause filler) [I]

gǒu(r) dog [N]

guǎn concern oneself with [V]
hòu  in back, back [L]

hòubian(r)/hòumian/hòutou  in back, back [PW]

kāiguān  switch [N]

lĭ  in, inside [L]

lĭbian(r)/lĭmiàn/lĭtou  in, inside [PW]

pángbiān(r)  at or on the side, next to [PW]

qián  in front, front [L]

qiánbian(r)/qiánmian/qiántou  in front, front [PW]

shàng  on top, on [L]

shàngbian(r)/shàngmian/shàngtou  on top, on [PW]

shĭyòng  use, employ [V]

shĭyòng shŏucè  operating manual [PH]
shŏucè handbook, manual [N]
shūfăng study [PW]
shūjià bookshelf, bookcase [N]
tā it (animal or thing) [PN]
tái (for computers, TV sets) [M]
wài outside [L]
wàibian(r)/wàimian/wàitou outside [PW]
wŭ-bā-liù Pentium® (brand of computer) [N]
xià on the bottom, under, below [L]
xiàbian(r)/xiàmian/xiàtou on the bottom, under, below [PW]
yào want to [AV]
yòu  
right [L]

yòubian(r)  
right side, right [PW]

zuŏ  
left [L]

zuŏbian(r)  
left side, left [PW]

Grammar

-LE in sentences with quantified objects to indicate completed action: Wŏ măile yitái xīn diànnăo “I bought a new computer.”

Localizers: fángjiānli “in the room,” zhuōzishang “on the table”

Place Words: lĭmiàn/lĭtou/lĭbian(r) “inside”; wàibian(r)/wàimian/wàitou “outside”; qiánbian(r)/qiánmian/ qiántou “in front”; hòubian(r)/hòumian/hòutou “in back”; shàngbian(r)/shàngmian/shàngtou “on top”; xiàbian(r)/xiàmian/xiàtou “on the bottom”; zuŏbian(r) “left side,” yòubian(r) “right side,” pángbiān(r) “on the side, next to”; dīxia “underneath”

Unit 6, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>āyí</td>
<td>aunt (mother’s sister) [N]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chū’èr</td>
<td>second year in junior high school [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūsān</td>
<td>third year in junior high school [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūyī</td>
<td>first year in junior high school [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūzhōng</td>
<td>junior high school [PW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dà’èr</td>
<td>sophomore year in college [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàsān</td>
<td>junior year in college [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàsì</td>
<td>senior year in college [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàyī</td>
<td>first year in college [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāo’èr</td>
<td>junior year in high school [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāosān</td>
<td>senior year in high school [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāoyī</td>
<td>sophomore year in high school [TW]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
gāozhōng  senior high school [PW]
-gěi    give; for, to [PV]
hǎochī  be good to eat, delicious [SV]
hǎokàn  be good-looking [SV]
lǐwù    gift, present [N]
m       (indicates something tastes delicious) [I]
nánpéngyou  boyfriend, male friend [N]
niánjí   grade, level (in school) [N]
nǚpéngyou  girlfriend, female friend [N]
péngyou  friend [N]
shàng    go to, attend [V]
shūshu   uncle (father’s younger brother) [N]
sòng  give (as a present) [V]

táng  candy; sugar [N]

xiăoxué  elementary school [PW]

xǐhuan  like [AV/V]

yiniánjí  first grade [TW]

zhēn  really [A]

zhōngxué  middle school [PW]

Grammar

School system and grade in school: xiăoxué sānniánjí “third grade in elementary school,” chūyī “seventh grade,” găo’èr “eleventh grade,” dàsān “junior year in college,” jīnìánjí “which grade?”

Unit 6, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary
bānjiā  move one’s home [VO]
-dà  big [RE]
ei  (indicates liveliness) [P]
érzi  son [N]
jiéhūn  marry, get married [VO]
jīn  gold [BF]
Jīn  gold [SN]
jiù  be old (of things) [SV]
Jiùjīnshān San Francisco [PW]
kànqilai  in the looking [RC]
líhūn  divorce, get divorced [VO]
nàli  there [PW]
Grammar

-QILAI to indicate “in the VERBing”: Tā kànqīlai hĕn lăo. “She looks very old.”
Unit 6, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

dōngběi     northeast [PW]
dōngnán     southeast [PW]
fúwù        serve [V]
hángkōng    aviation [N]
hángkōng gōngsī  airline [PH]
jiāo        teach [V]
jiāoshū     teach [VO]

Mĕiguō Zài Tái Xiéhuì American Institute in Taiwan [PW]
méiyou      (indicates past negative of action verbs) [AV]
néng        be able to, can [AV]
shàngbān(r) work, go to work [VO]
shàngxué attend school [VO]
suóyì therefore, so [CJ]
Táibĕi Měiguó Taipei American School [PW]
Xuéxiào
wèishemme why [QW]
xiàbān(r) get off from work [VO]
xīběi northwest [PW]
xiéhuì association, society [N]
xī’nnán southwest [PW]
Xī’nnán Hángkōng Southwest Airlines® [PW]
Gōngsī
xuéxiào school [PW]
yīnwei because [MA]
Grammar


MÉIYOU to indicate past negative of action verbs: Tā méiyou qù. “She didn’t go.”

YĪNWEI...SUÓYI...: Tā yīnwei hěn máng, suóyi bù néng lái. “Because she’s busy, she can’t come.”

Unit 6, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Àodàliyà Australia [PW]
Àozhōu Australia [PW]
dàmèi older younger sister
fǔmǔ parents [N]
gěi give [V]
gěn with [CV]
Huang (lit. “yellow”) [SN]

older and younger sisters [N]

opportunity, chance [N]

(indicates rank among siblings) [BF]

oldest (among siblings) [N]

chat [V]

chat [VO]

study as a foreign student [VO]

one’s seniority among siblings [N]

maternal grandfather [N]

maternal grandmother [N]

forget [V]
xiăomèi  younger younger sister [N]

xiōngdì  older and younger brothers [N]

yīhòu  in the future [TW]

yímín  immigrate, emigrate [V]

Zhèng  Zheng [SN]

ziwŏ jièshao introduce oneself [PH]

zŭfù  paternal grandfather [N]

zŭmŭ  paternal grandmother [N]

Grammar

...-LE...LE in sentences with non-quantified objects to indicate completed action: Wŏ wàngle ziwŏ jièshaole. “I forgot to introduce myself.”

Unit 7, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar
biǎojiě  older female cousin of different surname [N]

biǎojiěfu  husband of older female cousin of different surname [N]

cóngqián  in the past, formerly [TW]

găiháng  change one’s line of work [VO]

gōngchăng  factory [PW]

hái  in addition [A]

hé  and [CJ]

kŏu  (for people; lit. “mouth”) [M]

măimài  business [N]

nánháiır  boy [N]

ne  (pause filler) [P]

nǚháiır  girl [N]
shēnti body [N]

xiàn county [N]

yòu’éryuán kindergarten [PW]

yuánlái originally, formerly [MA]

zuò māimài do or engage in business [PH]

Grammar

Choice-type questions with choice implied: Nánháir nǚháir? “A boy or a girl?” Nǐ yào zhèige yào nèige? “Do you want this one or do you want that one?”

Unit 7, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Běijīng Yǔyán Beijing Language and Culture Wěnhuà Dàxué University [PW]

bú cuò “not bad,” “quite good” [IE]

Déyǔ German (language) [N]
-de  (verb suffix that indicates manner) [P]

Fāyǔ  French (language) [N]

Hànzi  Chinese character [N]

huà  word, language [N]

huì  know how to, can [AV]

jǐ-  a few, several [NU]

jìxù  continue [V]

ma  (indicates something obvious) [P]

Pǔtōnghuà  Mandarin (language) [N]

qítā  other [AT]

quán  completely [A]

rènshi  recognize [V]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ryū</td>
<td>Japanese (language) [N]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōhuà</td>
<td>speak words, speak [VO]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xībānyáyú</td>
<td>Spanish (language) [N]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiě</td>
<td>write [V]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiězi(r)</td>
<td>write characters, write [VO]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>(form of particle a used after words ending in -a or -i) [P]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yīngyú</td>
<td>English (language) [N]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐqián</td>
<td>before, formerly [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yōude</td>
<td>some [AT]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguo huà</td>
<td>spoken Chinese [PH]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguo zi(r)</td>
<td>Chinese character [PH]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grammar**
Equivalents of “can”: huì “know how,” néng “be physically able,” kéyi “have permission to”

Equivalents of “know”: huì “know how,” zhīdao “know a fact,” rènshi “be acquainted with”

-DE after verbs to indicate manner: Tā Zhōngguo huà shuōde hěn hǎo. “She speaks Chinese very well.” Tā xiě Zhōngguo zì xiěde hěn hǎokàn. “He writes Chinese characters very attractively.”

MA to indicate an obvious situation: Nín de Hányǔ shuōde tīng bú cuò ma! “You speak Chinese quite well, you know!”

Names of languages

Question words used as indefinites: Wǒ rènshi jībāige Zhōngguo zì. “I know a few hundred Chinese characters.” Wǒ zhǐ yǒu jīkuài qián. “I only have a few dollars.”

Terms for “Chinese language”

YǑUDE...YǑUDE...: Yǒu de láile, yǒu de méi lái. “Some came, some didn’t come.” Yǒu de wǒ mǎile, yǒu de méi mǎi. “I bought some, I didn’t buy others.”

Unit 7, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

duàn(r) section, segment, period (of time) [M]
hé  with [CV]
hòulái  afterward, later [TW]
jiāng  speak, say [V]
jiānghuà  speak, talk [VO]
kāishī  begin [V]; in the beginning [TW]
nánguài...  no wonder... [PT]
nèmme  like that, so [A]
shíhou(r)  time [N]
yíge rén  by oneself, alone [PH]
yiqǐ  together [A]
yòu  again [A]
yōude shíhou(r) sometimes [PH]
yuăn  
be far away [SV]

yuèfen(r)  
month [N]

Grammar

HÉ...YÌQĬ and GĒN...YÌQĬ: Wŏmen hé tāmen yìqĭ qù ba!  
“Let’s go together with them!”

NÁNGUÀI...: Nánguài nǐde Hànyŭ jiăngde zhèmme hăo. “No  
wonder that you speak Chinese so well.”

SHI...-DE to express attendant circumstances of known past  
actions: Wŏ shì hé wŏ àirén yìqĭ láide. “I came together with  
my spouse.”

Unit 7, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bàng  
be great, wonderful [SV]

biyè  
graduate [PT]

chà  
be lacking, deficient [SV]

cóng  
from [CV]
duōshù the majority [N]
fùyu be prosperous [SV]
gǔ be ancient [SV]
jiù only [A]
juéde feel [V]
nèiyang(r) that way, like that [MA]
niàn study [V]
nǔlì be diligent, work hard [SV]
shēnqǐng apply [V]
tīngshuō hear of, hear it said that [V]
yánjiū research [V/N]
yánjiūshēng graduate student [N]
...yīhòu    after... [PT]

...yīqián   before..., ...ago [PT]

zhèiyang(r) this way, like this [MA]

...zhīhòu    after... [PT]

...zhīqián   before..., ...ago [PT]

zhì’ān       public order, public security [N]

Grammar

Backchannel comments: Ò. “Oh,” Zhèiyang. “So this is how it is.”

BÌYÈ: Tā shì Bĕidà biyède. “She graduated from Beijing University.”

Phrase + YĪQIÁN/ZHĪQIÁN and Phrase + YĪHÒU/ZHĪHÒU: Tā shì yīnián yīqián qù Zhōngguode. “He went to China one year ago.” Tā liăngge yuè zhīhòu yào jiēhūn. “She’s going to get married in two months.”

Unit 8, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary
běi  north [L]

běifāng  north, the North [PW]

běifāng huà  northern speech [PH]

běifāng rén  Northerner [PH]

Běijīng Fàndiàn Beijing Hotel [PW]

dădī  take a taxi [VO]

dàgài  probably, about [MA]

dōngfāng  east, the East [PW]

Dōngfāng rén  Asian person [PH]

gèng  even more, more [A]

guò  pass, go by [V]

huòzhě  or [CJ]
jin  be close, near [SV]
kāi  drive, operate a vehicle [V]
kuài  be fast [SV]
láojià  excuse me [IE]
lí  be distant from, from [CV]
nán  south [L]
nánfāng  south, the South [PW]
nánfāng huà  southern speech [PH]
nánfāng rén  Southerner [PH]
Tiān’ānmén  Tiananmen [PW]
wàng  to, toward [CV]
xī  west [L]
xīfāng west, the West [PW]
Xīfāng rén Westerner [PH]
yìzhí straight [A]
zǒu go, walk [V]
zǒulù walk [VO]
zuǒyòu about, approximately [PW]

Grammar

Conditional clauses with -DE HUÀ: Zǒulùde huà, dàgài yào bàn’ge zhōngtóu zuǒyòu. “If you walk, it will probably take about half an hour.”

LÍ to express distance from: Nǐ jiā lǐ zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn? “Is your home far from here?” Wǒ jiā lǐ zhèr hěn jìn. “My home is close to here.”

QÙ...ZĒMME ZÕU: Láojià, qù Wàijiāobù zēmme zǒu? “Excuse me, how do you get to the Foreign Ministry?”

WÀNG to express movement toward a certain direction: wàng xī zǒu “walk toward the west,” wàng qián kāi “drive forward”
ZUŎYÒU: liăngge yuè zuŏyòu “about two months”

Unit 8, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Bēijīng Wàiguoyŭ Dàxué  Beijing Foreign Studies University [PW]

Bēiwài (abbreviation for Beijing Foreign Studies University) [PW]

bīnguăn  guest house, hotel [PW]

chēzi  car, vehicle [N]

chūzū  rent out [V]

chūzū qìchē  taxi [PH]

Fù  Fu [SN]

hăode  “all right,” “O.K.” [IE]

jīchăng  airport [PW]
liàng (for land vehicles) [M]
lóu building (with two or more floors) [N]
ménkŏu(r) doorway, entrance [PW]
qíchē car, vehicle [N]
shŏudū capital [N]
Shŏudū Jīchăng Capital Airport [PW]
wàiguo foreign country [N]
wàiguo huà foreign language [PH]
wàiguo rén foreigner [PH]
wāiguoyǔ foreign language [N]
wéi “hello” [I]
xingmíng first and last name [N]
Yǒuyì Bīnguăn   Friendship Hotel [PW]

yǒuyì    friendship [N]

zhuānjiā    expert [N]

zhuānjiā lóu   (foreign) experts’ building [PH]

Grammar

Pivot sentences: Wǒ yào yíliàng chē qù Shǒudū Jīchăng “I want a car to go to Capital Airport”

Unit 8, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

da    hit [V]

da diànhuà make a telephone call [PH]

diànhuà    telephone [N]

fázi    means, method, way [N]

gǎn    rush, hurry [V]
hùi  be likely to, will [AV]

jiāotōng  traffic [N]

jǐnkuài  as fast as possible [A]

juédìng  decide [V]

máfan  trouble, disturb [V]

mǎshàng  immediately, right away [A]

nàixīn  be patient/patience [SV/N]

pài  dispatch, send [V]

pàiqu  dispatch, send out [RC]

-qu  (indicates motion away from the speaker) [RE]

shàng  go to, come to, to [CV]

sījī  driver, chauffeur [N]
tōngzhī notify [V]

xiǎoshí hour [N]

yào need to, have to, should [AV]; request [V]

yīhuǐr a while [N]

yōngjǐ be crowded [SV]

zěmme how come, why [QW]

zháojǐ worry, get excited [SV/VO]

Grammar

Resultative compounds: pàiqu “send out,” láibují “not be able to make it on time”

Unit 8, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bàntiān “half the day,” a long time [NU+M]

biéde other, another [AT]
dūchē   be clogged up with cars [VO]

gōngjīn  kilo [M]

huàn     change to, exchange [V]

jiàn     (for luggage, matters) [M]

kāichē  drive a car [VO]

mǐ      meter [M]

qīng    be light (not heavy) [SV]

sāichē  be clogged up with cars [VO]

shīfu   master; driver [N]

tiáo    (for streets, alleys) [M]

xíngli  luggage, baggage [N]

xūyào   need [V]
yīngdāng should, ought to [AV]

zāogāo  be a mess [SV]; “darn it,” “what a mess” [IE]

zhǎo  give in change [V]

zhǎoqian give (someone) change [VO]

zhīhāo  have no choice but [A]

zhòng  be heavy [SV]

zuìhòu  in the end, finally [TW]

Grammar

CÔNG...DÀO...: Cóng sāndiǎn bàn dào wǔdiǎn. “From 3:30 until 5:00.”


Specifier + Number + Measure + Noun: zhèliăngjiàn xíngli “these two pieces of luggage”

ZHĪHĀO: Wǒmen zhīhāo huí sūshè. “We have no choice but to return to our dorm.”
Unit 9, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bái  
be white [SV]

báisè  
the color white [N]

bèndì  
this place, here [N]

bú yòng  
not need to, don’t need to [AV]

bú yòng xiè  
“don’t mention it” [IE]

dēng  
light, lamp [N]

guǎi  
turn [V]

hēi  
be black [SV]

hēisè  
the color black [N]

Hépíng Bīnguăn Peace Hotel [PW]

hóng  
be red [SV]
hónglùdēng  traffic light [N]
hóngsè  the color red [N]
huáng  be yellow [SV]
huángsè  the color yellow [N]
jiāotōng jīngchá traffic police [PH]
jiāotōngjǐng  traffic police [N]
jīngchá  police [N]
lán  be blue [SV]
lánsè  the color blue [N]
lǜ  be green [SV]
lùkōu(r)  intersection [PW]
lûsè  the color green [N]
qīngchu  be clear, clear about [SV]

xiè  thank [V]

yánsè  color [N]

zhuǎn  turn [V]

Grammar

Chinese equivalents of English “ask”: Nǐ yàoshi bù dǒngde huà, yào wèn lăoshī a! “If you don’t understand, you should ask the teacher!” Qĭng tā míngtiān zài lái. “Ask him to come again tomorrow.” Lăoshī jiào wŏmen zuò zuòyè. “The teacher asked us to do our homework.”

Color terms

Unit 9, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

búbì  don’t need to, not be necessary [AV]

chēzhàn  bus stop; bus station [PW]

diànhē  street car, trolley, tram [N]
dòngwù animal [N]
dòngwùyuán(r) zoo [PW]
gōnggòng public [AT]
gōnggòng qìchē public bus, bus [PH]
lù (for bus routes) [M]
māo(r) cat [N]
niăo(r) bird [N]
shàngchē get on a vehicle [VO]
yăng raise, keep [V]
Yíhéyuán Summer Palace [PW]
yú(r) fish [N]
zhàn station, stop [N]
zhī  (for most animals) [M]

zhōngdiǎn  final or terminal point [N]

zhōngdiǎn zhàn  last station, last stop [PH]

Grammar

XIĀN...RÁNHÒU... “First...then...”: Xiān chīfàn ránhòu zài qù mǎi dōngxi. “First eat and then go shopping.”

Unit 9, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bèn  be stupid [SV]

búdàn  not only [A]

cōngming  be smart [SV]

érqìě  moreover, and, also [CJ]

gāng  just now, just [A]

gānggāng  just now, just [A]
gānjìng  be clean [SV]

jiào  call (someone) [V]

kāi wánxiào  joke around, play a prank [PH]

lǎn  be lazy [SV]

luàn  be disorderly, messy [SV]

méi  not have [V]

piào  ticket [N]

shàng  get on [V]

shēngqì  get angry [SV/VO]

shòupiàoyuán  ticketseller, conductor [N]

shuō xiàohua(r)  tell a joke [PH]

wánxiào  joke [N]
xīwàng  hope [V]

yònggōng  be hardworking, studious [SV]

zāng  be dirty [SV]

zhěngqí  be in order, neat [SV]

Grammar

BÚDÀN...ÉRQIĔ... “Not only...but also...”: Tā bútàn niánqīng, érqǐē cōngmíng. “She’s not only young, but also smart.”

Unit 9, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

chēpiào  bus ticket [N]

chūshì  show, produce [V]

-dào  (indicates action of verb is realized) [RE]

dōng  understand [V]
-dŏng understand [RE]

gāi should [AV]

jìde remember [V]

kàn read [V]

kándŏng read and understand [RC]

ne (indicates continuous aspect) [P]

shuizháo fall asleep [RC]

tīng hear, listen [V]

tīngdŏng hear and understand [RC]

tóngzhi comrade [N]

wèi “hey” [I]

xiàchē get off a vehicle [VO]
xiăoxīn  be careful [SV]

yuèpiào  monthly ticket [N]

zăo  be early [SV]

-zháo  (indicates action of verb is realized) [RE]

zhăodào  look for and find, find [RC]

zhăozháo  look for and find, find [RC]

-zhe  (indicates continuous aspect) [P]

zhŭnbèi  prepare, get ready, plan [V]

Grammar

Potential resultative compounds: zhăo “look for,” zhăozháo “look for and find,” zhăodezháo “be able to find,” zhăobuzháo “be unable to find”

-ZHE as continuous aspect suffix: zăozhe ne “it’s (continuing being) early”

Unit 10, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary
āiyà       “oh,” “gosh” [I]
biàn       change [V]
-chéng     become; into [PV]
dālēi      thunder [VO]
dǐ         be low [SV]
dù         degree (of temperature) [M]
éi         (introduces questions) [I]
...éryī     only [PT]
kěněng     be possible [AV]
qíngtiān   fine day, sunny day [N]
rè          be hot [SV]
shǎndiàn    lightning strikes [VO]
suóyi shuō  so, therefore [PH]

tiān  sky [N]

tiānqi  weather [N]

tiānqi yùbào  weather forecast [PH]

wēndù  temperature [N]

xiàyǔ  rain [VO]

yídìng  definitely [A]

yīntiān  cloudy or overcast weather [N]

yǔ  rain [N]

yùbào  forecast [N]

yuè lái yuè... more and more... [PT]

yún  cloud [N]
zǎo  “good morning” [IE]
zhǔn  be accurate [SV]
zuí  most [A]

Grammar
CÓNG...KĀISHĬ: cóng míngtiān kāishī “starting from tomorrow”
DÙ to express temperatures: shǐbādù “eighteen degrees”
...ÉRYĪ “and that’s all”: Wǒ zhǐ yǒu yībǎikuài éryī. “I only have one hundred dollars and that’s all.”
YUÈ LÁI YUÈ... “more and more”: Tiānqì yuè lái yuè rè. “The weather has been getting hotter and hotter.”

Unit 10, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

chū tàiyáng  the sun comes/is out [PH]
chūntiān    spring [TW]
dōngtiān    winter [TW]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fēng</td>
<td>wind [N]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēngshā</td>
<td>wind and sand; blowing sand [N]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gān</td>
<td>be dry [SV]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hěn shǎo</td>
<td>seldom [PH]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>héshì</td>
<td>be appropriate [SV]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jìjié</td>
<td>season [N]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lĕng</td>
<td>be cold [SV]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiūtiān</td>
<td>fall, autumn [TW]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rúguŏ</td>
<td>if [MA]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shā</td>
<td>sand, gravel [N]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shūfu</td>
<td>be comfortable [SV]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǐ</td>
<td>die [V]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tàiyáng  sun [N]

wán(r)  play, have a good time [V]

xiàtiān  summer [TW]

xiàxuě  snow [VO]

xuě  snow [N]

yào  if [MA]

zhèmme shuō saying it like this; then [PH]

zhèng  just [A]

Grammar

BÙ...YĒ BÙ... “neither...nor...”: Tā shuō Zhōngwén bù nán yě bù róngyi. “She said that Chinese was neither hard nor easy.”

RÚGUŎ...JIÙ... “if...then...”: Rúguŏ xiàyûde huà, wǒmen jiù bù qù. “If it should rain, we (then) won’t go.”

YÒU...YÒU... “both...and...”: Nèige xuésheng yòu cōngmíng yòu yònggōng. “That student is both smart and diligent.”
Unit 10, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bànfā(r)  
way of doing something, method [N]

cháoshī  
be humid [SV]

chūlái  
come out [RC]

-chūlái  
come out [RE]

chūmén(r)  
go outside [VO]

chūqu  
go out [RC]

dànshi  
but [CJ]

gēnbēn (+ NEGATIVE) (not) at all [A]

jinláí  
come in [RC]

-jinláí  
come in [RE]

jìnqu  
go in [RC]
kànchūlái  know something by looking [RC]

kōngqì  air [N]

m  (indicates agreement) [I]

máomáoyŭ  light rain [N]

nèiyangzi  that way, like that [MA]

pèng  bump, run into [V]

pèngshang  run into, meet with, encounter [RC]

piāo  float [V]

piāojìnлái  float in [RC]

qíshí  actually [MA]

shāchuāng  screen window [N]

-shàng  up, on [RE]
táifēng typhoon [N]
wù fog [N]
xià máomáoyǔ drizzle [PH]
Yángmíng Shān Yangming Mountain [PW]
yùnqi luck [N]
zài (indicates progressive aspect) [AV]
zhèiyangzi this way, like this [MA]

Grammar

Directional Verbs: jìnlái “come in,” jìnqu “go in,” chūláí “come out,” chūqu “go out,” píāojìnlái “float in,” kànbuchūlái “be unable to know something by looking”

HĀOXIÀNG...-DE YÀNGZI “seem like...”: Hǎoxiàng wù cóng shāchuāng píāojínláide yàngzi. “It seems as though the fog is floating in through the window screen.”

Reduplication of measures and nouns to indicate “every”: tiān “day” → tiāntiān “every day,” nián “year” → niánnián “every year,” rén “person” → rénrén “everybody”

ZÀI as auxiliary verb to indicate progressive aspect: Tā zài chīfàn. “He’s eating.”

Unit 10, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Àomén Macao [PW] (10-4)
bǐ compare [CV/V]
chàbūduō not lack much, be good enough [IE]
...-de shīhòu(r) when... [PT]
dōngàn east coast [PW]
dōng-nuān-xià-liáng “warm in winter, cool in summer” [EX]
fēngjīng scenery [N]
gānzào be dry [SV]
Jiāzhōu  California [PW]

liángkuai  be comfortably cool [SV]

měi  be beautiful [SV]

Měijí Huárén  Chinese with U.S. nationality [PH]

nánguò  be sad [SV]

nuǎnhuo  be warm [SV]

qihou  climate [N]

shìyìng  adapt, get used to [V]

wăn  be late [SV]

xī’àn  west coast [PW]

xíguàn  be accustomed to [V]

Grammar

Bǐ to express unequal comparison: Tā bǐ wǒ gāo. “He is taller than me.”
...DE SHÍHOU(R) “when”: Tā gàosu wǒde shíhou, yǐjīng tài wănle. “When he told me, it was already too late.”

A MÉIYOU B NÈMME/ZHÈMME C “A is not as C as B”: Wǒ méiyou tā nèmme gāo. “I’m not as tall as him.”
2. Substitution Drills

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 1, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Kē Léi’ēn, nǐ hǎo! Ke Leien, how are you?

   Wáng Jīngshēng       Wang Jingsheng, how are you?

   Kē Léi’ēn       Ke Leien, how are you?

2. Nǐ dào nǎr qù? Where are you going?

   Kē Léi’ēn       Where is Ke Leien going?

   Wáng Jīngshēng       Where is Wang Jingsheng going?

   Nǐ       Where are you going?

128
3. Wǒ qù túshūguăn. I’m going to the library.

shítáng. I’m going to the dining hall.

sùshè. I’m going to the dormitory.

túshūguăn. I’m going to the library.

4. Wǒ dào túshūguăn qù. I’m going to the library.

shítáng I’m going to the cafeteria.

sùshè I’m going to the dormitory.

túshūguăn I’m going to the library.

5. Wǒ qù túshūguăn. Nǐ ne? I’m going to the library. How about you?

Kē Léi’ēn I’m going to the library. How about Ke Leien?

Wáng Jīngshēng I’m going to the library. How about Wang Jing-sheng?
Nǐ I’m going to the library. How about you?

6. Wǒ huí sùshè. I’m going back to the dormitory.

túshūguăn. I’m going back to the library.

shítáng. I’m going back to the cafeteria.

sùshè. I’m going back to the dormitory.

7. Wǒ qù bàn I’m going to take care of a little yidiānr shìr. matter.

Kē Léi’ēn Ke Leien is going to take care of a little matter.

Wáng Jǐngshēng Wang Jingsheng is going to take care of a little matter.

Wǒ I’m going to take care of a little matter.

8. Wǒ Wáng Jǐngshēng I’m going and Wang Jingsheng is qù, yě qù. going, too.
I’m going and Ke Leien is going, too.

I’m going and you’re going, too.

I’m going and Wang Jingsheng is going, too.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 1, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Zhao Guocai, long time no see!

Wang Jingsheng, long time no see!

Ke Leien, long time no see!

Dad, long time no see!
Māma  Mom, long time no see!

Háizi  Child, long time no see!

Zhào Guócái  Zhao Guocai, long time no see!

2. Nǐ  zěmmeyàng a? How are you?

Tā  How is he?

Tāmen  How are they?

Nǐ àirén  How is your spouse?

Wáng Jīngshēng  How is Wang Jingsheng?

Shítáng  How is the cafeteria?

Nǐ  How are you?

3. Wǒ  hái xíng. I’m all right.

Nǐ  You’re all right.
Tā  He’s all right.
Tāmen  They’re all right.
Wŏ bàba  My dad is all right.
Wŏ māma  My mom is all right.
Wŏ àirén  My spouse is all right.
Wŏ  I’m all right.

4. Nǐ àirén  hǎo ma? Is your spouse well?
Nǐ māma  Is your mom well?
Nǐ  Are you well?
Tā  Is she well?
Tāmen  Are they well?
Zhào Guócái  Is Zhao Guocai well?
Sùshè  Is the dormitory good?

Nǐ àirén  Is your spouse well?

5. Nǐ àirén, háizi  dōu hǎo Are your spouse and children ma?  all O.K.?

Nǐ bàba, māma  Are your mom and dad both O.K.?

Kē Léi’ěn, Wáng Jīngshēng  Are Ke Leien and Wang Jingsheng both O.K.?

Zhào Guócáí, Wáng Jīngshēng  Are Zhao Guocai and Wang Jingsheng both O.K.?

Tāmen  Are they all O.K.?

Háiizi  Are the children all O.K.?

Nǐ àirén, háizi  Are your spouse and children all O.K.?

6. Nǐ bàba qù ma? Is your father going?
Tā  Is her father going?

Wŏ  Is my father going?

Nǐ  Is your father going?

7. Tāmen dōu hěnhăo. They are all very well.

máng. They are all very busy.

lèi. They are all very tired.

hăo. They are all very well.

8. Tāmen yĕ dōu hěnhăo. They also are all very well.

hěn máng. They also are all very busy.

qù. They also are all going.

huí sùshè. They also are all going back to the dormitory.
hái xíng. They also are all alright.

yǒu yǐdiǎnr They also all have something to shì. do.

qù bàn They also are all going to take care yǐdiǎnr shì. of something.

hěn hǎo. They also are all very well.

9. Wǒ yǒu yǐdiǎnr shì. I have something to do.

Tā He has something to do.

Tāmen They have something to do.

Zhào Guócái Zhao Guocai has something to do.

Wǒ bàba My father has something to do.

Wǒ I have something to do.

To Download the audio files, please click here.
Unit 1, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Èi, Lăo Hé, nǐ hăo a! Hey, Old He, how are you?

   Kē     Hey, Old Ke, how are you?

   Wáng   Hey, Old Wang, how are you?

   Gāo    Hey, Old Gao, how are you?

   Zhào   Hey, Old Zhao, how are you?

   Hé     Hey, Old He, how are you?

2. Xiăo Gāo, zuìjìn zĕmmeyàng a? Little Gao, how have you been recently?

   Hé     Little He, how have you been recently?
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kē</td>
<td>Little Ke, how have you been recently?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wáng</td>
<td>Little Wang, how have you been recently?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhào</td>
<td>Little Zhao, how have you been recently?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gāo</td>
<td>Little Gao, how have you been recently?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Wŏ bù máng.** I’m not busy.

jīnzhāng. I’m not nervous.

lăo. I’m not old.

ǎi. I’m not short.

zōu. I’m not leaving.

máng. I’m not busy.

4. **Tā yě bù kùn.** He is also not sleepy.
lèi. He is also not tired.

zuò. He is also not sitting.

jìn. He is also not entering.

qù. He is also not going.

kùn. He is also not sleepy.


lèi. Not very tired.

kùn. Not very sleepy.

gāo. Not very tall.

lǎo. Not very old.

nán. Not very difficult.

máng. Not very busy.
6. Nǐ gōngzuò máng bu máng? Is your work busy or not?
   lèi bu lèi? Is your work tiring or not?
   nán bu nán? Is your work difficult or not?
   jǐnzhāng bu jǐnzhāng? Is your work intense or not?
   rónɡyì bu rónɡyì? Is your work easy or not?
   máng bu máng? Is your work busy or not?

7. Tāmen zuìjìn jǐnzhāng de. They have been quite nervous recently.
   lèi They have been quite tired recently.
   kùn They have been quite sleepy recently.
   máng They have been quite busy recently.
They have been quite well recently.

They have been quite nervous recently.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 1, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Lín Tàitai, xièxie nín le! Thank you, Mrs. Lin!

   Wáng Xiānsheng Thank you, Mr. Wang!

   Zhào Xiáojie Thank you, Miss Zhao!

   Xiè Tàitai Thank you, Mrs. Xie!

   Hé Xiānsheng Thank you, Mr. He!

   Lín Tàitai Thank you, Mrs. Lin!
2. 王先生，请进！
   Mr. Wang, please enter!
   请漫步！
   Mr. Wang, please take care!
   请坐！
   Mr. Wang, please sit down!
   请去食堂！
   Mr. Wang, please go to the cafeteria!
   请回宿舍！
   Mr. Wang, please return to the dormitory!

3. 小赵，请到食堂去。
   Little Zhao, please go to the cafeteria.
   小赵，请到图书馆去。
   Little Zhao, please go to the library.
   小赵，请回宿舍。
   Little Zhao, please return to the dormitory.
qù bàn Little Zhao, please go and take yìdiǎnr shì care of something.

xièxié tāmen. Little Zhao, please thank them.

qù. Little Zhao, please go.

zǒu. Little Zhao, please leave.

dào shítáng qù Little Zhao, please go to the cafetería.

4. Wǒ zǒu le. I’ll be going now.

yǒu I have it now.

kùn I’ve gotten sleepy.

lèi I’ve gotten tired.

lǎo I’ve gotten old.

hǎo I’m O.K. now.
kéyi    I’m O.K. now.

zǒu     I’ll be going now.

5. Wŏ bú qù le. I’m no longer going.

bú zuò     I won’t sit any longer.

bú bàn     I don’t handle it any more.

bù zǒu     I’m not leaving anymore.

bù xíng    I’m in a bad way now.

bú kùn     I’m no longer tired.

bù jīnzhāng I’m no longer nervous.

bú qù     I’m no longer going.

6. Nǐ lèi le ma? Have you gotten tired?

kūn       Have you gotten sleepy?
hǎo  Are you O.K. now?

bú qù  Are you no longer going?

bú bàn  Are you no longer doing it?

lèi  Have you gotten tired?

7. Zhōngwén yǒu yìsi ma? Is Chinese interesting?

méi yìsi  Is Chinese not interesting?

nán  Is Chinese difficult?

róngyì  Is Chinese easy?

yǒu yìsi  Is Chinese interesting?

8. Tāmen  gāo ma? Are they tall?

Wǒ  Am I tall?

Nǐ  Are you tall?
Unit 2, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Nǐ shí nēiguó rén?  What country are you from?
   Nín  What country are you from?
   Tā  What country is she from?

To Download the audio files, please click here.
Xiăo Hé  What country is Little He from?

Lăo Zhào  What country is Old Zhao from?

Bái Xiáojie  What country is Miss Bai from?

Xiè Tài tāi  What country is Mrs. Xie from?

Nǐ  What country are you from?

2. Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.  She is Chinese.

Jiā’néndà rén.  She is Canadian.

hăo háizi.  She is a good child.

Zhōngwén láoshī. She is a Chinese teacher.

wŏ bàba.  She is my father.

wŏ àirén.  She is my spouse.
hǎo rén. She is a good person.

Zhōngguo rén. She is Chinese.

3. Nǐ shì bu shì Zhōngguo rén? Are you Chinese?

zōngjīnglǐ? Are you the general manager?

Jiā’nádà rén? Are you Canadian?

Měiguó rén? Are you American?

Riběn rén? Are you Japanese?

jīnglǐ? Are you the manager?

Zhōngguo rén? Are you Chinese?


Táiwān rén. I’m not Taiwanese.

Xībānyá rén. I’m not Spanish.
Yīngguo rén. I’m not English.

lăoshī. I’m not a teacher.

jīnglǐ. I’m not the manager.

zōngjīnglǐ. I’m not the general manager.

Zhōngguo rén. I’m not Chinese.

5. Nǐ jiào shémme míngzi? What is your name?

Tā What is her name?

Nǐ māma What is your mother’s name?

Zhèiwèi tóngxué What is this student’s name?

Nèiwèi lăoshī What is that teacher’s name?

Nǐ What is your name?
6. Tājiào shémme? What is his name?

wèn  What did he ask?

bàn  What is he taking care of?

yǒu  What does he have?

jiào  What is his name?

7. Nǐmen dōu shì Mĕiguo rén ma? Are you all Americans?

lăoshī  Are you all teachers?

Riběn rén  Are you all Japanese?

Zhōngguo rén  Are you all Chinese?

jīnglĭ  Are you all managers?

Mĕiguo rén  Are you all Americans?

8. Wŏmen bù dōu Mĕiguo rén. We are not all Americans.
We are not all Canadians.

We are not all new teachers.

We are not all students.

We are not all general managers.

We are not all colleagues.

We are not all Americans.

None of us are Americans.

None of us are Chinese.

None of us are Japanese.

None of us are teachers.
jīnglĭ. None of us are managers.

háiizi. None of us are children.

Měiguo rén. None of us are Americans.

10. Nèiwèi tóngxué yě shì Riběn That classmate is also Japanese.

lǎoshī That teacher is also Japanese.

Găo Xiānsheng That Mr. Gao is also Japanese.

Kē Tàitai That Mrs. Ke is also Japanese.

Lín Xiáojie That Miss Lin is also Japanese.

tóngxué That classmate is also Japanese.
11. Nènei tóngxué jiào Wáng Jīngshěng? Which student is called Wang Jingsheng?

Zhèiwei. This student is called Wang Jingsheng.

Nènei. That student is called Wang Jingsheng.

Nènei? Which student is called Wang Jingsheng?

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 2, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Zhè shì wǒde xīn tóngwū. This is my new roommate.

nǐde This is your new roommate.

tāde This is her new roommate.
Xiao Linde
This is Little Lin’s new roommate.

Lao Wangede
This is Old Wang’s new roommate.

Wode
This is my new roommate.

2. Huanying ni dao Zhongguo lai! Welcome to China!
   Womeende sushè Welcome to our dormitory!
   Womeende shitang Welcome to our cafeteria!
   Womeende bushuguan Welcome to our library!

Meiguo
Welcome to the United States!

Riben
Welcome to Japan!

Zhongguo
Welcome to China!
3. 我很 appings 你。 I’m very happy to become acquainted with you.

你是我 的同学。 I’m very happy that you are my roommate.

你是我 们 的老师。 I’m very happy that you are our teacher.

到中国去。 I’m very happy to go to China.

学习中文。 I’m very happy to study Chinese.

到美国去。 I’m very happy to go to the United States.

认识你。 I’m very happy to become acquainted with you.

4. 别这么称呼我！ Don’t address me this way!

问！ Don’t ask!
wèn ta! Don’t ask him!
gāoxìng! Don’t be happy!
bù gāoxìng! Don’t be unhappy!
dào Zhōngguo qù! Don’t go to China!
qù wǒmende sùshè! Don’t go to our dormitory!
lái wǒmende shítáng! Don’t come to our dining hall!
zhèmme chēnghu wǒ! Don’t address me this way!

5. Nǐ bú yào zǒu! Don’t leave!
qù! Don’t go!
wèn! Don’t ask!
lái! Don’t come!
zuò! Don’t sit!
zǒu! Don’t leave!

6. Háishi jiào wǒ Xiǎo Chén hăole. Why don’t you just call me Little Chen.

jiào wǒ Lăo Luó Why don’t you just call me Old Luo.

jiào tā Lín Tàitai Why don’t you just call her Mrs. Lin.

dài níde tóngwū Why don’t you just bring your roommate.

dài níde háizi Why don’t you just bring your kids.

jiào wǒ Xiǎo Chén Why don’t you just call me Little Chen.

7. Wǒ yīnggāi zemmé chēnghu nín? How should I address you?
	ní? How should I address you?
tā? How should I address him?
nǐde How should I address your
tóngwū? roommate?
nǐde bàba? How should I address your
father?
nǐmende How should I address your
zōngjīnglǐ? general manager?
nín? How should I address you?

8. Nà who is that?
shí shéi a? Zhè Who is this?
Who is this?
Tā Who is she?
Tāmen Who are they?
Nǐ Who are you?
Nǐmen Who are you all?
Wǒ  Who am I?

Wŏmen  Who are we?

Nà  Who is that?

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 2, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

| 1. Wǒ xìng Gāo. Nín guixing? | My name is Gao. What is your name? |
| Wáng. | My name is Wang. What is your name? |
| Lín. | My name is Lin. What is your name? |
| Shī. | My name is Shi. What is your name? |
Wú. My name is Wu. What is your name?

Chén. My name is Chen. What is your name?

Gāo. My name is Gao. What is your name?

2. Nín zài dānwèi gōngzuò? Which organization do you work at?

gōngsī Which company do you work at?

dàxué Which university do you work at?

túshūguăn Which library do you work at?

shítáng Which cafeteria do you work at?

dānwèi Which organization do you work for?
3. 我在中文大学学习。 I study at Chinese University of Hong Kong.

宿舍 I study in the dormitory.

图书馆 I study at the library.

食堂 I study in the cafeteria.

单位 I study in my work unit.

公司 I study at the company.

香港中文大学 I study at Chinese University of Hong Kong.

4. 小王在哪个大使馆工作？

zhèige Little Wang works at this embassy

nèige Little Wang works at that embassy
nēige  ? Which embassy does Little Wang work at?

5. Tā bàba zài yījiā gōngsī gōngzuò  Her father works for a company.

něijiā  ? Which company does her father work for?

zhēijiā  Her father works for this company.

nèijiā  Her father works for that company.

yījiā  Her father works for a company.

6. Nèiwèi shì Mā Xiàozhāng. That is President Ma.

Zhèiwèi  This is President Ma.

Nèiwèi  ? Which one is President Ma?

Nèiwèi  That is President Ma.
7. Tā nín de shì xiānshēng ba? I suppose he is your husband?
   lǎoshī I suppose he is your teacher?
   jīnglǐ I suppose he is your manager?
   tàitai I suppose she is your wife?
   tóngshì I suppose she is your colleague?
   tóngwū I suppose she is your roommate?
   tóngxué I suppose she is your classmate?
   xiānshēng I suppose he is your husband?

8. Nǐ hěn gāoxíng ba? I suppose you must be happy?
   jīnzhāng I suppose you must be nervous?
   kùn I suppose you must be sleepy?
lèi I suppose you must be tired?
máng I suppose you must be busy?
gāoxìng I suppose you must be happy?

9. Nǐmen yě gōngzuò ba? I suppose you are also working?

dài I suppose you are also bringing some?

rènshi I suppose you are also acquainted?

yǒu I suppose you also have some?

qù I suppose you are also going?

bàn I suppose you are also doing it?

gōngzuò I suppose you are also working?

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 2, Part 4: Substitution Drills
Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Duibuqǐ, wǒ méi dài míngpiàn. Sorry, I didn’t bring a name card.
   jièshao tā. Sorry, I didn’t introduce him.
   wèn nǐ. Sorry, I didn’t ask you.
   xièxie nǐ. Sorry, I didn’t thank you.
   dài míngpiàn. Sorry, I didn’t bring a name card.

2. Wǒ gēn Luó Xiáojie dōu bú shì Yīngguó rén. Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is English.
   lèi. Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is tired.
   kùn. Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is sleepy.
Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is American.

Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is Chinese.

Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is English.

Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is happy.

Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is coming.

Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is tall.

Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is old.

Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is busy.
zŏu. Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is leaving.

gāoxìng. Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is happy.

4. Tāmen dōu méi qù. None of them went.

lái. None of them came.

zuò. None of them sat.

zǒu. None of them left.

wèn. None of them asked.

dài. None of them brought it.

gōngzuò. None of them worked.

qù. None of them went.

5. Zhè shì Zhōng-Mĕi Màoyì Gōngsī de Shī Xiáojie. This is Miss Shi from the Sino-American Trading Company.
Xiānggǎng Dàxué
This is Miss Shi from Hong Kong University.

Ribĕn Dàshīguăn
This is Miss Shi from the Japanese Embassy.

túshūguăn
This is Miss Shi from the library.

Jiā’nádà Dàshīguăn
This is Miss Shi from the Canadian Embassy.

Zhōng-Mĕi Màoïyí Gōngsī
This is Miss Shi from the Sino-American Trading Company.

6. Nǐ nèiwèi tàitai ma? Do you know that lady?

xiānsheng Do you know that gentleman?

xiáojie Do you know that young lady?

nǚshì Do you know that lady?
lǎoshī  Do you know that teacher?

xiàozhǎng  Do you know that president?

tóngxué  Do you know that classmate?

táitai  Do you know that lady?

7. Nǐ dài bu míngpiàn? Are you bringing name cards?

tóngxué? Are you bringing classmates?

tóngshi? Are you bringing colleagues?

nǐ xiānsheng? Are you bringing your husband?

nǐ tàitai? Are you bringing your wife?

nǐ māma? Are you bringing your mother?
nǐde háizi?  Are you bringing your children?

Gāo Xiáojie?  Are you bringing Miss Gao?

míngpiàn?  Are you bringing name cards?

8. Tāmen méi dōu qù. Not all of them went.

zuò. Not all of them sat.

zǒu. Not all of them left.

wèn. Not all of them asked.

lái. Not all of them came.

qù. Not all of them went.
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 3, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

Tāmen bānshang yǒu jīge tóngxué? How many classmates are there in their class?

1. yíge. There is one classmate in their class.

2. liǎngge. There are two classmates in their class.

3. sān’ge. There are three classmates in their class.

4. sìge. There are four classmates in their class.

5. wǔge. There are five classmates in their class.
liùge

There are six classmates in their class.

qíge

There are seven classmates in their class.

báge

There are eight classmates in their class.

jiǔge

There are nine classmates in their class.

shíge

There are ten classmates in their class.

jīge

How many classmates are there in their class?

2. Bānshāng yǒu shíge rén. In the class there are ten people.

Túshūguǎn In the library there are ten people.

Sùshè In the dormitory there are ten people.
Shítáng  
In the dining hall there are ten people.

Gōngsī  
In the company there are ten people.

Dānwèi  
In the organization there are ten people.

Bānshang  
In the class there are ten people.

3. Tāmen yǒu jīwèi lăoshī? How many teachers do they have?
yíwèi . They have one teacher.
liăngwèi . They have two teachers.
sānwèi . They have three teachers.
siwèi . They have four teachers.
wŭwèi . They have five teachers.
liuwèi . They have six teachers.
qíwèi . They have seven teachers.

báwèi . They have eight teachers.

jiūwèi . They have nine teachers.

shíwèi . They have ten teachers.

jīwèi ? How many teachers do they have?

4. Yígòng yǒu

sānwèi. In all, there are three of them.

sān’ge. In all, there are three.

sān’ge rén. In all, there are three people.

sān’ge nánshēng. In all, there are three male students.

sān’ge núshēng. In all, there are three female students.

sān’ge nánde. In all, there are three men.
sān’ge nǚde. In all, there are three women.
sān’ge háizi. In all, there are three children.
sān’ge bān. In all, there are three class sections.
sān’ge shītáng. In all, there are three cafeterias.
sānwèi Zhào In all, there are three Miss Xiáojie. Zhaos.
sānwèi nánlăoshī. In all, there are three male teachers.
sānwèi nǚlăoshī. In all, there are three female teachers.
sānwèi. In all, there are three of them.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 3, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with
the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Tā duō dà niánji le? How old is she?
   
   Tāde háizi How old is her child?

   Lāo Gāo How old is Old Gao?

   Tāmen How old are they?

   Nèiwèi lǎoshī How old is that teacher?

   Wáng Xiáojie How old is Ms. Wang?

   Tā How old is she?

2. Nǐ mèimei jīsuì le? How old is your younger sister?

   Nǐ dìdi How old is your younger brother?

   Zhèige háizi How old is this child?

   Nèige háizi How old is that child?
Nǐde háizi    How old is your child?

Nǐ    How old are you?

Nǐmen    How old are you?

Nǐ mèimei    How old is your younger sister?

3. Wǒ jīnnián èrshì’èr sui le. I’m twenty-two this year.

shíliù    I’m sixteen this year.

shíqī    I’m seventeen this year.

shíbā    I’m eighteen this year.

shíjiǔ    I’m nineteen this year.

èrshí    I’m twenty this year.

èrshiyī    I’m twenty-one this year.

èrshi’èr    I’m twenty-two this year.

wènwen   Try to ask.

zuòzuò   Try to sit.

cāicai   Try to guess.

jiàojiao Try to call (somebody’s name).

xiǎngxiǎng Try to think.

5. Zhè shì nǐ mèimei, duì bu? This is your younger sister, right?

dīdī This is your younger brother, right?

gēge This is your older brother, right?

jiējie This is your older sister, right?

fùqin This is your father, right?
mŭqin  This is your mother, right?

àirén  This is your spouse, right?

mèimei  This is your younger sister, right?


wèn  Don’t ask, O.K.?

lái  Don’t come, O.K.?

qù  Don’t go, O.K.?

zuò  Don’t sit down, O.K.?

zŏu  Don’t leave, O.K.?

cāi  Don’t guess, O.K.?

kàn  Don’t look, O.K.?

7. Nĭ dìdì hĕn kĕ’ài!  Your younger brother is cute!
gāo! Your younger brother is tall!

ǎi! Your younger brother is short!

dà! Your younger brother is big!

xiăo! Your younger brother is small!

hăo! Your younger brother is good!

gāoxìng! Your younger brother is happy!

máng! Your younger brother is busy!

kùn! Your younger brother is sleepy!

kĕ’ài! Your younger brother is cute!

8. Tā xiàng jìu suì le. She will be nine years old next month.

èrshi yǐ suì She will be twenty-one years old next month.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lái</td>
<td>She will come next month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bù lái</td>
<td>She will not come next month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu</td>
<td>She will have it next month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méiyou</td>
<td>She will not have it next month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu háizi</td>
<td>She will have a child next month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǒu</td>
<td>She will leave next month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiǔsui</td>
<td>She will be nine years old next month.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

**Unit 3, Part 3: Substitution Drills**

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Qǐng wèn, zhèige duōshǎo Excuse me, how much is this?
zhèige bēibāo  Excuse me, how much is this backpack?

nèige  Excuse me, how much is that?

nèige bēibāo  Excuse me, how much is that backpack?

bēizi  Excuse me, how much is that cup?

gōngshibāo  Excuse me, how much is that briefcase?

yíge yuè  Excuse me, how much is it for a month?

liǎngge yuè  Excuse me, how much is it for two months?

zhèige  Excuse me, how much is this?

2. Yò, tài gui le. Gosh, that’s too expensive.
dà Gosh, that’s too big.

xiǎo Gosh, that’s too small.

cháng Gosh, that’s too long.

nán Gosh, that’s too hard.

guì Gosh, that’s too expensive.

3. Nèige zhī yào sānkuài wǔ. That is only three dollars and fifty cents.

yīfēn qián. That is only one cent.

liùkuài wǔ. That is only six dollars and fifty cents.

shíkuài qián. That is only ten dollars.

jiǔqiān jiǔbāi jiǔshíjiǔkuài. That is only nine thousand nine hundred and ninety-nine dollars.

qīkuài sì. That is only seven dollars and forty cents.
sānkuài wǔ. That is only three dollars and fifty cents.

4. Wǒ kànkan, xíng bu xíng? Let me see, O.K.?
   xíng ma? Let me see, O.K.?
   hǎo bu hǎo? Let me see, O.K.?
   hǎo ma? Let me see, O.K.?
   xíng bu xíng? Let me see, O.K.?

5. Qǐng nǐ kànkan. Please take a look.
   wènwen. Please go and ask.
   zuòzuò. Please sit down.
   xiángxiang. Please think about it.
   cāicai. Please guess.
   kànkan. Please take a look.

cāi Why don’t you guess.

wèn Why don’t you ask.

mǎi Why don’t you buy it.

mài Why don’t you sell it.

zuò Why don’t you sit.

zǒu Why don’t you leave.

lái Why don’t you come.

qù Why don’t you go.

kàn Why don’t you look.

7. Wǒmen zǒu ba. Let’s leave.

huí sùshè Let’s return to the dormitory.
qù tǔshūguǎn  Let’s go to the library.

yě dài míngpiàn  Let’s also bring name cards.

yě xuéxí Zhōngwén Let’s also study Chinese.

yě jiào tā Xiăo Mă  Let’s also call him Little Ma.

yě măi yíge Let’s also buy one.

zǒu  Let’s leave.

8. Wŏ méi dài míngpiàn. I didn’t bring name cards.

qián. I didn’t bring money.

gōngzuò. I didn’t bring work.

bēizi. I didn’t bring a cup.

dàizi. I didn’t bring a bag.
bēibāo.  I didn’t bring a backpack.

gōngshìbāo. I didn’t bring a briefcase.

míngpiàn. I didn’t bring name cards.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 3, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Xià yītàng dào Tiānjīn de huǒchē jīdiǎn kāi? When does the next train for Tianjin depart?

   Yīngguo

   Fǎguo

   Déguo

When does the next train depart for England?

When does the next train depart for France?

When does the next train depart for Germany?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Xībānyá</td>
<td>When does the next train for Spain depart?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mēiguō</td>
<td>When does the next train for the U.S. depart?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jiā’néndà</td>
<td>When does the next train for Canada depart?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguō</td>
<td>When does the next train for China depart?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiānjīn</td>
<td>When does the next train for Tianjin depart?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Xìatángde huǒchē When does the next train for dào Tiānjīn jídiǎn kāi? Tianjin depart?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Departure Location</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bādiǎn èrshí dào Tiānjīn</td>
<td>When does the train that arrives in Tianjin at 8:20 depart?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shí’èrdiǎn dào Xīnjiāpō</td>
<td>When does the train that arrives in Singapore at 12:00 depart?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wǒ gēn Bái Tàitai zuò</td>
<td>When does the train that Mrs. Bai and I are taking depart?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

188
Tāmen yīnggāi zuò  When does the train that they’re supposed to take depart?

Lǎo Chén dĕi zuò  When does the train that Old Chen must take depart?

Xià yítàng dào Tiānjīn  When does the next train for Tianjin depart?

3. Tā yīdiǎn èrshí dào. She arrives at 1:20.

liăngdiǎn  She arrives at 2:20.

sāndiǎn  She arrives at 3:20.

sìdiǎn  She arrives at 4:20.

wǔdiǎn  She arrives at 5:20.

liùdiǎn  She arrives at 6:20.

qīdiǎn  She arrives at 7:20.

bādiǎn  She arrives at 8:20.
jiūdiăn  She arrives at 9:20.

shídiăn  She arrives at 10:20.

shíyīdiăn  She arrives at 11:20.

shí’èrdiăn  She arrives at 12:20.

yīdiăn  She arrives at 1:20.


bàn.  9:30.

sānkè.  9:45.

wūshí.  9:50.

wūfēn. 9:05.

shīfēn. 9:10.

yíkè.  9:15.
èrshí. 9:20.

5. Kǒngpà nín láibujíle. I’m afraid you’re not going to make it.

gāo cuò le. I’m afraid you got it wrong.

lèile. I’m afraid you’re tired.

kùnle. I’m afraid you’ve gotten sleepy.

dēi zōule. I’m afraid you have to go now.

láibujíle. I’m afraid you’re not going to make it.

6. Nà, wŏ jiù zuò shí diăn bàn de. In that case, I’ll take the 10:30 one.

liū diăn yí kè In that case, I’ll take the 6:15 one.

qī diăn sān kè In that case, I’ll take the 7:45 one.
bādiǎn wǔfēn  In that case, I’ll take the 8:05 one.

jiǔdiǎn èrshí  In that case, I’ll take the 9:20 one.

wǔdiǎn bàn  In that case, I’ll take the 5:30 one.

sìdiǎn yíkè  In that case, I’ll take the 4:15 one.

shídiǎn bàn  In that case, I’ll take the 10:30 one.

7. Dào Tiānjīn yào duō cháng How long does it take to get to Tianjin?

Fǎguó How long does it take to get to France?

túshūguǎn How long does it take to get to the library?

shítáng How long does it take to get to the cafeteria?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Travel Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sùshè</td>
<td>How long does it take to get to the dormitory?</td>
<td>It takes about two and a half hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Déguo</td>
<td>How long does it take to get to Germany?</td>
<td>It takes about half an hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiānjīn</td>
<td>How long does it take to get to Tianjin?</td>
<td>It takes about one and a half hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chàbuduō</td>
<td>It takes about three and a half hours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liǎngge bàn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōngtóu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàn’ge</td>
<td>It takes about one hour.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yíge bàn</td>
<td>It takes about seven and a half hours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sān’ge bàn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yíge</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīge bàn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It takes about two and a half hours.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 4, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Qǐng yǔyán wèn, shíyànshì jǐdiǎn zhōng kāimén?
   Excuse me, what time does the language lab open?

   túshūguǎn
   Excuse me, what time does the library open?

   shítáng
   Excuse me, what time does the cafeteria open?

   dàshǐguǎn
   Excuse me, what time does the embassy open?

   màoyì gōngsī
   Excuse me, what time does the trading company open?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shíyànshì</td>
<td>Excuse me, what time does the laboratory open?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǔyán shíyànshì</td>
<td>Excuse me, what time does the language lab open?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qǐng yǔyán jǐdiǎn zhōng</td>
<td>Excuse me, what time does the language lab close?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūshūguǎn</td>
<td>Excuse me, what time does the library close?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shítáng</td>
<td>Excuse me, what time does the cafeteria close?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàshǐguǎn</td>
<td>Excuse me, what time does the embassy close?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màoyì gōngsī</td>
<td>Excuse me, what time does the trading company close?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shíyànshì</td>
<td>Excuse me, what time does the laboratory close?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǔyán shíyànshì</td>
<td>Excuse me, what time does the language lab close?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3. Měitiān  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Opening Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:00 A.M.</td>
<td>bādiăn kāimén.</td>
<td>It opens every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:30 A.M.</td>
<td>qīdiăn bàn</td>
<td>It opens every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15 A.M.</td>
<td>shídiăn yīkè</td>
<td>It opens every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30 A.M.</td>
<td>liùdiăn bàn</td>
<td>It opens every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:45 A.M.</td>
<td>jiǔdiăn sānkè</td>
<td>It opens every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:05 A.M.</td>
<td>shídiăn wūfēn</td>
<td>It opens every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00 A.M.</td>
<td>bādiăn</td>
<td>It opens every day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. Wǎnshang  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Closing Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9:30 P.M.</td>
<td>jiǔdiăn bàn guānmén.</td>
<td>It closes every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:30 P.M.</td>
<td>shídiăn bàn</td>
<td>It closes every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15 P.M.</td>
<td>bādiăn yīkè</td>
<td>It closes every day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Xīngqīliù  kāi bu kāi? Is it open on Saturday?

Xīnqīyī  Is it open on Monday?

Xīngqī’èr Is it open on Tuesday?

Xīngqīsān Is it open on Wednesday?

Xīngqīsì Is it open on Thursday?

Xīngqīwǔ Is it open on Friday?

Xīngqītiān Is it open on Sunday?

Xīngqīrì Is it open on Sunday?

Xīngqīliù Is is open on Saturday?
6. Lîbàiliù kāi bàntiān. It’s open half-days on Saturday.

Lîbàiyī It’s open half-days on Monday.

Lîbài’èr It’s open half-days on Tuesday.

Lîbàisān It’s open half-days on Wednesday.

Lîbàisi It’s open half-days on Thursday.

Lîbàiwū It’s open half-days on Friday.

Lîbàitiān It’s open half-days on Sunday.

Lîbàiri It’s open half-days on Sunday.

Lîbàiliù It’s open half-days on Saturday.

7. Xīngqītiān xiūxi. He rests on Sundays.

Zăoshang It’s closed in the morning.

Wănshang It’s closed in the evening.
Shàngwǔ  It’s closed mornings.

Xiàwǔ  It’s closed afternoons.

Shàngge xīngqī  It was closed last week.

Zhèige xīngqī  It’s closed this week.

Xiàge xīngqī  It’s closed next week.

Píngcháng  It’s ordinarily closed.

Mĕitiān dōu  It’s closed every day.

Xīngqītiān  He rests on Sundays.

8. Wŏ  píngcháng  zăoshāng  qīdiăn  qǐchuáng.  I usually get up from bed at 7:00.

wŭdiăn  bàn  I usually get up from bed at 5:30.

liùdiăn  yīkè  I usually get up from bed at 6:15.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bādiăn</th>
<th>I usually get up from bed at 8:30.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bàn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jiǔdiăn</th>
<th>I usually get up from bed at 9:45.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sānkè</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>qīdiăn</th>
<th>I usually get up from bed at 7:20.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>èrshí</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>qīdiăn</th>
<th>I usually get up from bed at 7:00.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9. Wǒ píngcháng</th>
<th>I usually go to bed at 11:00.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shíyīdiăn zhōng</td>
<td>shuǐjiào.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>liǎngdiăn bàn</th>
<th>I usually go to bed at 2:30.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>shídīăn yíkè</th>
<th>I usually go to bed at 10:15.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>shí’èrdiăn sānkè</th>
<th>I usually go to bed at 12:45.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sāndiăn zhōng</th>
<th>I usually go to bed at 3:00.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīdiǎn bàn</td>
<td>I usually go to bed at 1:30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liǎngdiǎn yíkè</td>
<td>I usually go to bed at 2:15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shíyīdiǎn</td>
<td>I usually go to bed at 11:00.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Wǒ píngcháng měitiān shuǐ qíge zhōngtóu. I usually sleep for seven hours every day.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>báge</td>
<td>I usually sleep for eight hours every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liùge bàn</td>
<td>I usually sleep for six and a half hours every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīge</td>
<td>I usually sleep for four hours every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǔge bàn</td>
<td>I usually sleep for five and a half hours every day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I usually sleep for twelve hours every day.

I usually sleep for ten hours every day.

I usually sleep for seven hours every day.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 4, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Nǐ jiào shémme míngzi? What is your name?

   Tā What is her name?

   Nǐ àirén What is your spouse’s name?

   Nǐde háizi What is your child’s name?
Nǐde tóngwū  What is your roommate’s name?

Nǐde tóngxué  What is your classmate’s name?

Nèiwèi tóngshì  What is that colleague’s name?

Nǐ  What is your name?

2. Nǐ shi něinián In what year were you born?

Tā  In what year was she born?

Gāo Xiānsheng  In what year was Mr. Gao born?

Bái Xiáojie  In what year was Ms. Bai born?

Lǎo Wáng  In what year was Old Wang born?
Xiăo Lín  In what year was Little Lin born?

Tāmen  In what year were they born?

Chén Tàitai  In what year was Mrs. Chen born?

Nǐ  In what year were you born?

   yī-jiǔ-bā-líng-nián  I was born in 1980.
   yī-jiǔ-bā-yī-nián  I was born in 1981.
   yī-jiǔ-bā-èr-nián  I was born in 1982.
   yī-jiǔ-jíǔ-sān-nián  I was born in 1993.
   yī-jiǔ-jíǔ-sì-nián  I was born in 1994.
   yī-jiǔ-jíǔ-wǔ-nián  I was born in 1995.

shíyuè yīhào. My birthday is October 1st.

sānyuè èrshibāhào. My birthday is March 28th.

jiǔyuè sìhào. My birthday is September 4th.

lìyuè èrshihào. My birthday is June 20th.

wǔyuè sānhào. My birthday is May 3rd.

yīyuè sānshihào. My birthday is January 30th.

siyuè shísānhào. My birthday is April 13th.

5. Wénhuà Lù sìhào 4 Culture Road
sānbăi èrshísānhào 323 Culture Road

bābăi líng wūhào 805 Culture Road

shísānhào 13 Culture Road

sānshihào 30 Culture Road

jiūhào 9 Culture Road

sībăi wūshiwūhào 455 Culture Road

sīhào 4 Culture Road

6. Hépíng Dōng Lù yī duàn sīhào. Number 4, Hoping East Road Section One.

èr Number 4, Hoping East Road Section Two.

sān Number 4, Hoping East Road Section Three.

sì Number 4, Hoping East Road Section Four.
wǔ  Number 4, Hoping East Road Section Five.

liù  Number 4, Hoping East Road Section Six.

qī  Number 4, Hoping East Road Section Seven.

yī  Number 4, Hoping East Road Section One.

7. Tiānjin Lù èrxiàng qīhào. Number 7, Lane 2, Tianjin Road.

yīxiàng Number 7, Lane 1, Tianjin Road.

sānxiàng Number 7, Lane 3, Tianjin Road.

sìxiàng Number 7, Lane 4, Tianjin Road.

wǔxiàng Number 7, Lane 5, Tianjin Road.
liùxiàng  Number 7, Lane 6, Tianjin Road.

qīxiàng  Number 7, Lane 7, Tianjin Road.

èrxiàng  Number 7, Lane 2, Tianjin Road.

8. Tā yào qù jĭlóu?  What floor does she want to go to?

yīlóu.  She wants to go to the first floor.

èrlóu.  She wants to go to the second floor.

sānlóu. She wants to go to the third floor.

sìlóu.  She wants to go to the fourth floor.

wŭlóu.  She wants to go to the fifth floor.

liùlóu. She wants to go to the sixth floor.

qīlóu.  She wants to go to the seventh floor.
jīlóu? What floor does she want to go to?

9. Qǐng nǐ děng yíxià. Could you wait a moment, please?

tā Could she wait a moment, please?

tāmen Could they wait a moment, please?

Zhào Xiānsheng Could Mr. Zhao wait a moment, please?

Xiè Tàitai Could Mrs. Xie wait a moment, please?

Wáng Xiáojie Could Miss Wang wait a moment, please?

Lǎo Zhāng Could Old Zhang wait a moment, please?

Xiāo Mǎ Could Little Ma wait a moment, please?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Jīntiān jīyuè jīhào?</td>
<td>What is today’s date?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Míngtiān</td>
<td>What is tomorrow’s date?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zuótīān</td>
<td>What was yesterday’s date?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jīnnián</td>
<td>Which month and which day this year?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Míngnián</td>
<td>Which month and which day next year?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Qùnián</td>
<td>Which month and which day last year?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nǐde shēngrì</td>
<td>When is your birthday?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jīntiān</td>
<td>What is today’s date?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Jīnnián shì nēinián?</td>
<td>What year is this year?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Míngnián  What year will it be next year?

Qùnián  What year was it last year?

Jīnnián  What year is this year?

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 4, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Zhè shì tā dì jī cì dào Zhōngguo lái? How many times has he been to China?
   yī 这是他的第一次来中国。
   èr 这是他的第二次来中国。
   sān 这是他的第三次来中国。
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>yī</td>
<td>This is my first time here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>二</td>
<td>This is my second time here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>sān</td>
<td>This is my third time here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>sì</td>
<td>This is his fourth time in China.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>wǔ</td>
<td>This is his fifth time in China.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>liù</td>
<td>This is his sixth time in China.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>qī</td>
<td>This is his seventh time in China.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>bā</td>
<td>This is his eighth time in China.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>jiǔ</td>
<td>This is his ninth time in China.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Zhè shì wǒ dì èr cì lái. This is my second time here.
sì  This is my fourth time here.

wǔ  This is my fifth time here.

liù This is my sixth time here.

qī  This is my seventh time here.

bā  This is my eighth time here.

jiǔ This is my ninth time here.

èr  This is my second time here.

3. Dì yí  ge rén shì shéi? Who was the first person?

èr  Who was the second person?

sān Who was the third person?

sì  Who was the fourth person?

wǔ  Who was the fifth person?
liù  Who was the sixth person?

qī  Who was the seventh person?

bā  Who was the eighth person?

jiǔ  Who was the ninth person?

shí  Who was the tenth person?

yí  Who was the first person?

4. Yǒu yìsi, di èr wèi láoshī yě xìng Wáng!  Interesting, the 2nd teacher’s surname was also Wang!

sān  Interesting, the 3rd teacher’s surname was also Wang!

sì  Interesting, the 4th teacher’s surname was also Wang!

wǔ  Interesting, the 5th teacher’s surname was also Wang!
liù Interesting, the 6th teacher’s surname was also Wang!

qī Interesting, the 7th teacher’s surname was also Wang!

bā Interesting, the 8th teacher’s surname was also Wang!

èr Interesting, the 2nd teacher’s surname was also Wang!

5. Wǒ lái guo. I’ve been here before.

qù I’ve been there before.

wèn I’ve asked before.

mǎi I’ve bought them before.

mài I’ve sold them before.

lái I’ve been here before.

6. Tā láiguoyí cì. She has been here once.
liăng . She has been here twice.

sān . She has been here three times.

sì . She has been here four times.

wǔ . She has been here five times.

liù . She has been here six times.

qī . She has been here seven times.

bā . She has been here eight times.

jiǔ . She has been here nine times.

shí . She has been here ten times

jī ? How many times has she been here?

yí . She has been here once.

7. Lǎo Zhào méi zuò guo. Old Zhao has never taken one (e.g., a train) before.
mǎi  Old Zhao has never bought one before.

mài  Old Zhao has never sold one before.

shuō  Old Zhao has never said it before.

zuò  Old Zhao has never taken one before.

8. Tā zhècì yào zhù duō jiǔ?  How long will he stay this time?

liǎngtiān.  He will stay for two days this time.

liǎngge xīngqī.  He will stay for two weeks this time.

liǎngge yuè.  He will stay for two months this time.

liǎngnián.  He will stay for two years this time.

bàn’ge yuè.  He will stay for half a month this time.
yí ge bàn He will stay for one and a half months this time.

duō jiǔ? How long will he stay this time?

9. Wǒ míngtiān huí guó. I’ll return to my native country tomorrow.

jiā. I’ll go home tomorrow.

sùshè. I’ll return to my dorm tomorrow.

xuéxiào. I’ll return to school tomorrow.

guó. I’ll return to my native country tomorrow.

10. Nǐ zhù něige făngjiān? In which room are you staying?

jīhào What is the number of the room in which you are staying?

shéide Whose room are you staying in?
nēige In which room are you staying?

11. Tā zhù sān líng liù. She is staying in 306.

èr jiǔ bā. She is staying in 298.

sūshè. She is staying in the dormitory.

wǒ jiā. She is staying in my home.

nēige fāngjiān? Which room is she staying in?

wǒde fāngjiān. She is staying in my room.

năr? Where is she staying?

sān líng liù. She is staying in 306.

12. Tā xiān shuōle shémme? Ránhòu shuōle shémme? What did he say first? What did he say then?

zuòle What did he do first? What did he do then?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wènle</th>
<th>wènle</th>
<th>What did he ask first? What did he ask then?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mǎile</td>
<td>mǎile</td>
<td>What did he buy first? What did he buy then?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kànle</td>
<td>kànle</td>
<td>What did he look at first? What did he look at then?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōle</td>
<td>shuōle</td>
<td>What did he say first? What did he say then?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13. Nǐ shì qiántiān láiguō wǒ jiā? Did you come to my house the day before yesterday?  
zuótiān Did you come to my house yesterday?  
jǐntiān shàngwǔ Did you come to my house this morning?  
qiánnián Did you come to my house the year before last?
qùnián
Did you come to my house last year?

jīn nián èryuè
Did you come to my house February of this year?

qiántiān
Did you come to my house the day before yesterday?

Bái 14. Xiānsheng jīn nián shuō tā
bù  Mr. Bai says he won’t return huíguó. to his country this year.

míng nián
Mr. Bai says he won’t return to his country next year.

hòunián
Mr. Bai says he won’t return to his country the year after next.

xiàge yuè
Mr. Bai says he won’t return to his country next month.

xiàge xīngqī
Mr. Bai says he won’t return to his country next week.
míngtiān Mr. Bai says he won’t return to his country tomorrow.

hòutiān Mr. Bai says he won’t return to his country the day after tomorrow.

jīnnián Mr. Bai says he won’t return to his country this year.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 4, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Qǐng wèn, Zhōngguó yǒu duōshǎo rén? Excuse me, how many people are there in China?

Mĕiguo Excuse me, how many people are there in the United States?
Excuse me, how many people are there in France?

Excuse me, how many people are there in Germany?

Excuse me, how many people are there in Japan?

Excuse me, how many people are there in England?

Excuse me, how many people are there in China?

There are about 1.3 billion people.

There are about 6,000 people.

There are about 30,000 people.

There are about 250,000 people.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yībǎiwàn</td>
<td>There are about 1 million people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liǎngqiānwàn</td>
<td>There are about 20 million people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yíyì</td>
<td>There are about 100 million people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shísānyi</td>
<td>There are about 1.3 billion people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Nánjīng  de rénkǒu bǐjiào The population of Nanjing is smaller.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tiānjīn</td>
<td>The population of Tianjin is smaller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bēijīng</td>
<td>The population of Beijing is smaller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yīngguo</td>
<td>The population of England is smaller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xīnjiāpō</td>
<td>The population of Singapore is smaller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nánjīng</td>
<td>The population of Nanjing is smaller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Běijīng Dōng Lù bījiào hǎo.</td>
<td>Beijing East Road is better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>guì. Beijing East Road is more expensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>piányi. Beijing East Road is cheaper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dà. Beijing East Road is bigger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>xiăo. Beijing East Road is smaller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>duō. Beijing East Road has more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shăo. Beijing East Road has less.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hǎo. Beijing East Road is better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Hăoxiàng Nánjīng zhī yŏu wūbāiwăn rén.</td>
<td>Apparently, Nanjing only has 5 million people.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Apparently, we have Chinese class every day.

Apparently, this is her first time in China.

Apparently, the language lab is not open.

Apparently, they didn’t bring name cards.

Apparently, Nanjing only has 5 million people.

Little Sun often skips class.

Little Sun is often late.

Little Sun often doesn’t come to class.
táokè. Little Sun often skips class.
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 5, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

   Kē Léi’ēn Xiānheng. I’m looking for Mr. Ke Leien.
   Zhāng Xiăomíng tòngxué. I’m looking for a student by the name of Zhang Xiaoming.
   Xiè Tàitai. I’m looking for Mrs. Xie.
   Chén Lăoshī. I’m looking for Instructor Chen.
   Mă Xiàozhăng. I’m looking for Principal Ma.
   Wú lăobăn. I’m looking for boss Wu.
Luó jīnglĭ. I’m looking for manager Luo.

Wáng Xiáojie. I’m looking for Miss Wang.

2. Qǐng wèn, tā zài bu zài? Excuse me, is he there?

nǐ bàba Excuse me, is your dad here?

nǐ māma Excuse me, is your mom here?

Bái Xiáojie Excuse me, is Miss Bai in?

Hów Xiānsheng Excuse me, is Mr. Hou in?

Shī Tàitai Excuse me, is Mrs. Shi in?

Gāo Zōngjīnglĭ Excuse me, is General Manager Gao in?

wǒ dìdi Excuse me, is my brother there?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>外文</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>英文</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me, is he there?</td>
<td>tā</td>
<td>3. 嘿</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where is Little Ke now?</td>
<td>nār?</td>
<td>Xiāngɡǎnɡ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Ke is now in the library.</td>
<td>tūshūɡuān.</td>
<td>Shéi de bànɡōnɡshì?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Ke is now in England.</td>
<td>Yīnɡguǒ.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Ke is now in Spain.</td>
<td>Xībānyá.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Ke is now at the U.S. Embassy.</td>
<td>Měiguō Dàshǐɡuān.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Ke is now in that room.</td>
<td>Nèiɡe fānɡjiān.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
lăobănde  Little Ke is now in the
bàngōngshì.  boss’ office.

4. Hăoxiàng  Lăo
        Xiè bù zài  jiā.  Apparently, Old Xie is not at
          zhèr.  home.

bàngōngshì.  Apparently, Old Xie is not at
          zhèr.  the office.

wŏde  Apparently, Old Xie is not in
fàngjiān.  my room.

tāde gōngsī.  Apparently, Old Xie is not at
            tāde sūshè.  his company.

shítáng.  Apparently, Old Xie is not in
          Wăijiāobù.  the cafeteria.

            231
nàr.  Apparently, Old Xie is not there.

jiā.  Apparently, Old Xie is not at home.

5. Nèiwèi Wáng Xiáojie?  Which Miss Wang?

Gāo Nǚshì?  Which Madam Gao?

Hé Xiānsheng?  Which Mr. He?

Lín Jīnglǐ?  Which manager Lin?

Zhào Xiàozhāng?  Which Principal Zhao?

Mǎ Lăoshī?  Which Professor Ma?

Wáng Xiáojie?  Which Miss Wang?

6. Wǒ bù zhīdào tāde Zhōngwén míngzi.  I don’t know her Chinese name.

        tāde Yīngwén míngzi.  I don’t know her English name.
lǎobǎn  xiànzài zài năr. I don’t know where the boss is.

yīnggāi zěmme bān. I don’t know what I should do.

nǐ shuō I don’t know what you are saying.

tā yào shémme. I don’t know what she wants.

kĕ bu kéyi. I don’t know whether or not it’s O.K.

zhuōzi, yĭzi shì I don’t know to whom the tables and chairs belong.

tāde Zhōngwén míngzi. I don’t know her Chinese name.

7. Nǐ tāde Zhōngwén zhīdào míngzi ma? Do you know her Chinese name?

tā yào măi shémme Do you know what she wants to buy?
tā xiànzài zài năr  Do you know where she is now?

Wáng Xiáojie zài bàngōngshì  Do you know whether Miss Wang is at the office?

tā shì shéi  Do you know who she is?

tā qù năr  Do you know where she went?

tāde Zhōngwén míngzi  Do you know her Chinese name?

8. Nǐ zhīdào tāde Zhōngwén míngzi?  Do you know her Chinese name?

bù zhīdào míngzi?  No, I don’t know her Chinese name.

tā dìdì jiào shémme?  Do you know the name of her brother?

tāde tóngwū shì shéi?  Do you know who her roommate is?

Chén Xiàozhāng  Did you know President Chen is my brother?
shéi  chángcháng Do you know who often
táokè? skips class?

shéi  chángcháng Do you know who is often
chídào? late for class?

tāde  Zhōngwén Do you know her Chinese
míngzi? name?

Ò, wŏ  zhīdaole. Oh, I know. That person is

shi  tāde Oh, I know. That person is
mèimei. her younger sister.

shi Mă Lăoshī. Oh, I know. That person is
Professor Ma.

shi  Xiăo Lĭde Oh, I know. That person is
xīn làobăn. Little Li’s new boss.

shi  Lăo Băide Oh, I know. That person is
tóngshì. Old Bai’s colleague.
jiào Wáng Guólì. Oh, I know. That person is Wang Guoli.

10. Wǒ kě bù gěi tā liú yíge tiáozì? Can I leave her a note?

gěi nǐ jièshào wǒde tóngwū? Can I introduce my roommate to you?

jīntiān wǎnshàng qù zhǎo nǐ? Can I go and look for you tonight?

jiào nǐ Xiăo Chén? Can I call you Little Chen?

zuò huŏchē? Can I take the train?

mǎi bēibāo? Can I purchase a bookbag?

xuéxí Zhōngwén? Can I study Chinese?

gěi tā liú yíge tiáozì? Can I leave her a note?
11. Yàoshi tā bú zài, nǐ zěmme bàn? If he isn’t in, what will you do?

tā zǒule If he leaves, what will you do?

tā bú rènshi nǐ If he doesn’t recognize you, what will you do?

tā chídào If he is late, what will you do?

nǐ gāocuòle If you got it wrong, what will you do?

tā bù lái If he doesn’t come, what will you do?

tā bú zài If he isn’t in, what will you do?

12. Zhèi zhāng zhuōzi gēn zhèi yīzi bā This table and this chair.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ñèi</th>
<th>nèi</th>
<th>That table and that chair.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mĕi</td>
<td>mĕi</td>
<td>Every table and every chair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yì</td>
<td>yì</td>
<td>One table and one chair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liăng</td>
<td>liăng</td>
<td>Two tables and two chairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jĭ</td>
<td>jĭ</td>
<td>How many tables and how many chairs?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duŏshăo</td>
<td>duŏshăo</td>
<td>How many tables and how many chairs?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nĕi</td>
<td>nĕi</td>
<td>Which table and which chair?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhèi</td>
<td>zhèi</td>
<td>This table and this chair.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 5, Part 2: Substitution Drills
Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Qǐng wèn, zhèige wèizi yǒu rén? Excuse me, is this seat taken?
   nèige wèizi
   zhèizhāng zhuōzi
   nèibā yīzi
   zhèr
   zhèige wèizi

2. Qǐng zhèige wèizi yǒu méiyou rén? Excuse me, is there anyone in this seat?
nèige wèizi  
Excuse me, is there anyone in that seat?

nèizhānɡ
zhūōzi  
Excuse me, is there anyone at that table?

zhèibā yīzi  
Excuse me, is there anyone at this chair?

nàr  
Excuse me, is there anyone there?

zhèige
wèizi  
Excuse me, is there anyone in this seat?

3. Zhèige wèizi xiànzài méiyǒu rén. 
Right now, there is nobody in this seat.
Nèige wèizi  Right now, there is nobody in that seat.

Nèige wèizi  Right now, which seat is not taken?

Zhèizhāng  Right now, this table is not taken.
zhuōzi

Nèizhāng  Right now, that table is not taken.
zhuōzi

Nèizhāng  Right now, which table is not taken?
zhuōzi

Zhèige wèizi  Right now, there is nobody in this seat.

4. Nín cháng lái chī zhèr wǔfàn ma? Do you often come here to eat lunch?

chī  Do you often come here to eat lunch?
zhōngfàn

chī  Do you often come here to eat breakfast?
zǎofàn
chī
wǎnfán  Do you often come here to eat dinner?

chǐfàn  Do you often come here to eat?

mǎi bēizi  Do you often come here to buy cups?

xuéxí  Do you often come here to study?

xiūxi  Do you often come here to rest?

chī
wǔfàn  Do you often come here to eat lunch?

5. zhǎngzhǎng
túshūguǎn
zài  xuéxí  Do you often study in the library?

sùshè  Do you often study in the dormitory?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bàngōngshì</td>
<td>Do you often study in the office?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shítáng</td>
<td>Do you often study in the cafeteria?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐde fāngjiān</td>
<td>Do you often study in your room?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngsī</td>
<td>Do you often study at the company?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>túshūguǎn</td>
<td>Do you often study in the library?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


   gōngzuò. I often work here.

   xiūxí. I often rest here.

   xuéxí. I often study here.

   shuǐjiào. I often sleep here.
chīfàn. I often eat here.

Tā 7. bàba píxié chǎng gōngzuò. Her father works at a shoe factory.

Zhōngguo Wàijiāobù
Měiguō dàshīguān
Déguo Wénhuà Zhōngxīn
Zhōng-Měi Màoyì Gōngsī
yìjiā hěn dàde gōngsī
Wéilián Dàxué túshūguān

Her father works at the Chinese foreign ministry.
Her father works at the U.S. Embassy.
Her father works at the German Cultural Center.
Her father works at Sino-American Trading Company.
Her father works in a very large company.
Her father works at the Williams College library.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>píxié chāng</td>
<td>Her father works at a shoe factory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nàr</td>
<td>I’m studying Chinese there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Běidà</td>
<td>I’m studying Chinese at Peking University.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Táidà</td>
<td>I’m studying Chinese at Taiwan University.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gǎngdà</td>
<td>I’m studying Chinese at the University of Hong Kong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xiānggǎng Zhōngwén Dàxué</td>
<td>I’m studying Chinese at Chinese Univ. of Hong Kong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguo dàshīguǎn</td>
<td>I’m studying Chinese at the Chinese Embassy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hányǔ péixùn zhōngxīn</td>
<td>I’m studying Chinese at the Chinese language training center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hányǔ zhōngxīn</td>
<td>I’m studying Chinese at the Chinese center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhèr</td>
<td>I’m studying Chinese here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Nín píngcháng zài nár xuéxí? Where do you usually study?
  
  chīfàn? Where do you usually eat?
  
  gōngzuò? Where do you usually work?
  
  xiūxi? Where do you usually rest?
  
  shuǐjiào? Where do you usually sleep?
  
  zuò? Where do you usually sit?
  
  mǎi bēizi? Where do you usually buy cups?
shàngkè? Where do you usually attend class?

xuéxí? Where do you usually study?

Yò! Kuài yīdiăn le. Wŏ Gosh! It’s almost one o’clock. I děi zōule. ought to be going now.

liùdiăn Gosh! It’s almost six o’clock. I ought to be going now.

zhōngwǔ Gosh! It’s almost noon. I ought to be going now.

chídào Gosh! I’m almost late. I ought to be going now.

shàngkè Gosh! Class will start soon. I ought to be going now.

guānmén Gosh! It’s going to close soon. I ought to be going now.

yīdiăn Gosh! It’s almost one o’clock. I ought to be going now.
11. Little Bai, you can’t eat!

Little Bai, you can’t close the door!

Little Bai, you can’t skip classes!

Little Bai, you can’t sleep!

Little Bai, you can’t open the door!

Little Bai, you can’t go home!

Little Bai, you can’t go to class!

Little Bai, you can’t eat!

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 5, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with
the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Cèsuǒ zài nải  ? Where is the bathroom?
   zhèibianr. The bathroom is over here.
   nèibianr . The bathroom is over there.
   zhèr    . The bathroom is here.
   nài     . The bathroom is there.
   nèibianr ? Where is the bathroom?
   nài     ? Where is the bathroom?

2. Duìbuqǐ, nǐ jiǔ    Sorry, I made you wait a long
děngle. time.
   nín            Sorry, I made you wait a long
time.
   nǐmen         Sorry, I made you all wait a long time.
Lăoshī  Sorry, Professor, I made you wait a long time.

Xiàozhāng  Sorry, Mr. Principal, I made you wait a long time.

Zōngjīnglǐ  Sorry, General Manager, I made you wait a long time.

nǐ  Sorry, I made you wait a long time.

3. Tā shòu le yidianr. She’s gotten a little thinner.
   gāo  She’s gotten a little taller.
   āi  She’s gotten a little shorter.
   lăo  She’s gotten a little older.
   shòu  She’s gotten a little thinner.

4. Mā Xiáojie zhùzài năr? Where does Miss Ma live?
shémme difang? Where does Miss Ma live?

lào difang  Miss Ma is staying at the same place as before.

fàndiàn  Miss Ma is staying at the hotel.

sān-líng-yī-hào fàngjiān  Miss Ma is staying in room 301.

sùshè  Miss Ma is staying in the dormitory.

jiā  Miss Ma is living at home.

shéide fàngjiān? In whose room is Miss Ma staying?

zhèr  Miss Ma is staying here.

nèibianr  Miss Ma is staying over there.

zhèbianr  Miss Ma is staying over here.
när? Where does Miss Ma live?

5. Tā qùnián bāndao Xiāng le. She moved to Fragrant Hills last year.

huíguó She returned to her country last year.

huíjiā She returned home last year.

bù xué She stopped studying last year.

bù lái She stopped coming last year.

bù mài She stopped selling them last year.

bù măi She stopped buying them last year.

bú qù She stopped going last year.

bāndao Xiāng Shān She moved to Fragrant Hills last year.
6. Wǒ míngnián yào bāndao le. I’ll move to Fragrant Hills next year.
   nèige sūshè I’ll move to that dorm next year.
   tāde fāngjiān I’ll move to her room next year.
   nǐ jiā I’ll move to your home next year.
   Tiānjīn I’ll move to Tianjin next year.
   dàxué sūshè I’ll move to the college dorm next year.
   Xiāng Shān I’ll move to Fragrant Hills next year.

7. Qǐng nǐ zhùzai wǒ zhèr, hǎo Please stay at my place, O.K.?
zuòzai Please sit here, O.K.?
bāndao  Please move to my place, O.K.?

shuizai  Please sleep at my place, O.K.?

zhùzai  Please stay at my place, O.K.?

8. Nǐmen bān dóu nǎr le?  Where did you move to?

xué  Where did you learn up to?

zuò  Where did you take it (bus/tram/train) up to?

shuō  Up to what point did you get in talking?

wèn  Where did you ask up to?

bān  Where did you move to?
Nǐ shuōde nèige 9. difang zài Běijīng běibīǎnr. The place you mentioned is in the northern part of Beijing.
chénɡde

The place you mentioned is nánbiānr. in the southern part of Beijing.

The place you mentioned is dōngbiānr. in the eastern part of Beijing.

The place you mentioned is xībiānr. in the western part of Beijing.

něibiānr? Where in Beijing is the place you mentioned?

The place you mentioned is běibīănr. in the northern part of Beijing.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 5, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with
the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Xiăo Hé māile yì diànnăo. Little He bought a new computer.

   liăng. Little He bought two new computers.

   sān. Little He bought three new computers.

   sì. Little He bought four new computers.

   wŭ. Little He bought five new computers.

   liù. Little He bought six new computers.

   qī. Little He bought seven new computers.

   jĭ? How many new computers did Little He buy?
yì  Little He bought a new computer.

2. Wǒ mǎile yītái xīn diànnǎo, zài shūfāng li. I bought a new computer, it’s in the study.

fāngjiān I bought a new computer, it’s in the room.

zhè I bought a new computer, it’s here.

nà I bought a new computer, it’s there.

gōngsī I bought a new computer, it’s at the company.

chǎng (→) I bought a new computer, it’s at the factory.

túshūguǎn (→) I bought a new computer, it’s in the library.

bàngōngshì I bought a new computer, it’s in the office.
shūfáng I bought a new computer, it’s in the study.

3. Kāiguān zài pángbiān. The switch is on the side.

när. The switch is there.

zuŏbian. The switch is on the left.

zhèr. The switch is here.

yòubian. The switch is on the right.

xiàbian. The switch is on the bottom.

wàibian. The switch is on the outside.

shàngbian. The switch is on top.

qiánbian. The switch is in the front.

nèibian. The switch is over there.

lìbian. The switch is on the inside.
hòubian.  The switch is in the back.

dīxia.  The switch is on the bottom.

pángbiān.  The switch is on the side.

4. Shǐyòng shŏucè zài shūjià shang.  The instruction manual is on the bookshelf.

zhuōzi  The instruction manual is on the table.

yĭzi  The instruction manual is on the chair.

bēibāo  The instruction manual is on top of the backpack.

dàizī  The instruction manual is on top of the bag.

shūjià  The instruction manual is on the bookshelf.
5. Bēizi zuǒbian de nèige shūjiàshang. The cup is on the bookcase to your left.

yòubian The cup is on the bookcase to your right.

qiánmian The cup is on the bookcase in front of you.

hòumian The cup is on the bookcase behind you.

pángbiān The cup is on the bookcase next to you.

zuǒbian The cup is on the bookcase to your left.

6. Zhuōzi dīxia shì shémmé dōngxi a? What is that under the table?

Yīzishang What is that on the chair?

Shūjiàshang What is that on the bookcase?
| 國外 | 什麼是那張圖書館外的？ |
| 四家 | 什麼是那張家門前的？ |
| 宿舍 | 什麼是那張宿舍後的？ |
| 食堂 | 什麼是那張食堂左邊的？ |
| 桌子 | 什麼是那張桌子下的？ |

7. 你不要管他！
Don’t worry about it!

我！
Don’t concern yourself with me!

我們！
Leave us alone!

我們的狗！
Leave our dog alone!
tāmen!  Don’t concern yourself with them!

ta!  Don’t worry about it!

8. Qián zài qiánmian.  The money is in front of the cup.

hòumian.  The money is behind the cup.

lǐmiàn.  The money is inside the cup.

wàimian.  The money is outside of the cup.

shàngmian.  The money is on top of the cup.

xiàmian.  The money is under the cup.

zuǒbianr.  The money is to the left of the cup.

yòubianr.  The money is to the right of the cup.
pángbiān. The money is next to the cup.

qiánmian. The money is in front of the cup.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 6, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Shūshu, nǐ hǎo! Uncle, how are you?

   Āyí Auntie, how are you?

   Xiăo dìdi Little brother, how are you?

   Xiăo mèimei Little sister, how are you?

   Xiăo péngyou Little friend, how are you?

   Bàba Dad, how are you?
Māma  Mom, how are you?

Shūshu  Uncle, how are you?

2. Nǐ xiǎoxué le ba? I suppose you’re already attending elementary school?

chūzhōng  I suppose you’re already attending junior middle school?

gāozhōng  I suppose you’re already attending high school?

zhōngxué  I suppose you’re already attending middle school?

dàxué  I suppose you’re already attending college?

xiǎoxué  I suppose you’re already attending elementary school?

3. Nǐ dàxué jīniánjí? What year are you in college?
xiǎoxué  What year are you in elementary school?

chūzhōng  What year are you in middle school?

gāozhōng  What year are you in high school?

dàxué  What year are you in college?

4. Wǒ didì yījīng shàng xiǎoxué yīniánjí le. My younger brother is already in the first grade.

èrniánjí  My younger brother is already in the second grade.

sānniánjí  My younger brother is already in the third grade.

sìniánjí  My younger brother is already in the fourth grade.

wǔniánjí  My younger brother is already in the fifth grade.

liùniánjí  My younger brother is already in the sixth grade.
yīniánjì  My younger brother is already in the first grade.

5. Wŏ mèimei shàng chū yī le. My younger sister is in the first year of junior middle school.
   èr  My younger sister is in the second year of junior middle school.
   sān My younger sister is in the third year of junior middle school.
   yī  My younger sister is in the first year of junior middle school.

6. Wŏ gēge shàng gāo yī le. My older brother is in his sophomore year of high school.
   èr  My older brother is in his junior year of high school.
   sān My older brother is in his senior year of high school.
   yī  My older brother is in his sophomore year of high school.
7. Wǒ jiějie yǐjīng shàng dà yī le. My older sister is already a first-year student in college.

èr My older sister is already a sophomore in college.

sān My older sister is already a junior in college.

sì My older sister is already a senior in college.

yī My older sister is already a first-year student in college.

8. Zhè shì wǒ sònggei nǐ de xiǎo lǐwù. This is a little present I’m giving you.

gǒu. This is a little dog I’m giving you.

dōngxi. This is a little thing I’m giving you.

bēizi. This is a little cup I’m giving you.
yĭzi. This is a little chair I’m giving you.

shūjià. This is a little bookcase I’m giving you.

lĭwù. This is a little present I’m giving you.

9. Tāmen màide zhēn hăng hăochī. The candy they sell is really delicious.

hĕn hăochī. The candy they sell is delicious.

tĭng hăochī. The candy they sell is quite delicious.

tĭng hăochīde. The candy they sell is quite delicious.

tài hăochīle. The candy they sell is absolutely delicious.

bú tài hăochī. The candy they sell doesn’t taste very good.
bù hǎochī. The candy they sell doesn’t taste good.

hěn bù hǎochī. The candy they sell tastes bad.

tài bù hǎochíle. The candy they sell tastes awful.

zhēn hǎochī. The candy they sell is really delicious.

10. Tā shuō nǐde hěn nánpéngyou hǎokàn. very handsome.

tīng hǎokàn. quite handsome.

tīng hǎokàn. She said your boyfriend is incredibly handsome.

bú tài hǎokàn. very handsome.
She said your boyfriend is not handsome.

She said your boyfriend is ugly.

She said your boyfriend is very ugly.

She said your boyfriend is very handsome.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 6, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.


Jiǔjīnshān Old Lin grew up in San Francisco.
Běijīng  Old Lin grew up in Beijing.

Tiānjīn  Old Lin grew up in Tianjin.

Guǎngzhōu  Old Lin grew up in Guangzhou.

Shànghǎi  Old Lin grew up in Shanghai.

Chéngdū  Old Lin grew up in Chengdu.

năr  Where did Old Lin grow up?

Niǔyuē  Old Lin grew up in New York.

2. Nǐ shí rén?  náli  Where are you from?

Tā  Where is she from?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Where</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lǎo Gāo</td>
<td>Where is Old Gao from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xiǎo Wáng</td>
<td>Where is Little Wang from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bái Xiáojie</td>
<td>Where is Miss Bai from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wú Xiānhsheng</td>
<td>Where is Mr. Wu from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xiè Tàitai</td>
<td>Where is Mrs. Xie from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chén Lǎoshī</td>
<td>Where is Professor Chen from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hóu Xiàozhāng</td>
<td>Where is Principal Hou from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nǐ</td>
<td>Where are you from?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Nǐ kànqilai hĕn niánqīng! You look very young!

   lăo!     You look very old!

   gāo!     You look very tall!
ǎi! You look very short!

kùn! You look very sleepy!

lèi! You look very tired!

máng! You look very busy!

niánqīng! You look very young!

4. Tā hái bú dào sānshí ba? I suppose he must be under 30.

èrshí I suppose he must be under 20.

sìshí I suppose he must be under 40.

sānshiwǔ I suppose he must be under 35.

èrshiwǔ I suppose he must be under 25.

èrshiyī I suppose he must be under 21.

sānshí I suppose he must be under 30.
5. Nǐ jiēhūnle ma? Are you married?

Tā Is she married?

Lǎo Zhāng Is Old Zhang married?

Xiǎo Lǐ Is Little Li married?

Sūn Xiānsheng Is Mr. Sun married?

Luó Xiáojie Is Ms. Luo married?

Mǎ Tàitai Is Mrs. Ma married?

Shī Lǎoshī Is Teacher Shi married?

Nǐ Are you married?

6. Tā yǐjīng jiēhūn le. She is already married.

Tā mèimei Her younger sister is already married.
Tā dìdi  Her younger brother is already married.

Wǒ gēge  My older brother is already married.

Wǒ jiějie  My older sister is already married.

Kē Xiānsheng  Mr. Ke is already married.

Lǐn Tàitai  Mrs. Lin is already married.

Tā  She is already married.

7. Wǒ hái méi jiéhūn. I’m not married yet.

Shéi  ? Who is not married yet?

Wáng Xiáojie  Miss Wang is not married yet.

Lǎo Chén  . Old Chen is not married yet.
Little Bai is not married yet.

Mr. Shi is not married yet.

She is not married yet.

I’m not married yet.

They have one son and one daughter.

They have two sons and two daughters.

They have three sons and three daughters.

They have four sons and four daughters.

How many sons and daughters do they have?

They have one son and one daughter.
9. Nǐ zěmmé zài zhělǐ kěyì shuǐjiào ne? How can you sleep here?

zài zhělǐ chīfàn How can you eat here?

zài zhělǐ xiūxi How can you rest here?

chángcháng tǎokè How can you frequently skip class?

xīhuan tā How can you like her?

shuō tā hǎokàn How can you say that he is handsome?

zài zhělǐ shuǐjiào How can you sleep here?

10. Tā jié guǒ liúcì hūn. She has married 6 times.

lí hūn. She has been divorced 6 times.

bān jiā. She has moved 6 times.
kāi mén. She has opened the door 6 times.

guān mén. She has closed the door 6 times.

huí guó. She has returned to her country 6 times.

huí jiā. She went home 6 times.

jié hūn. She has married 6 times.

11. Qīng wèn, “pàng” shì shémmé yìsi? Excuse me, what is the meaning of pàng?

“lóu” Excuse me, what is the meaning of lóu?

“jīchǎng” Excuse me, what is the meaning of jīchǎng?

“yǔ” Excuse me, what is the meaning of yǔ?

“xīnxiān” Excuse me, what is the meaning of xīnxiān?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Character</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“gŏu”</td>
<td>Excuse me, what is the meaning of gŏu?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“táng”</td>
<td>Excuse me, what is the meaning of táng?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“pàng”</td>
<td>Excuse me, what is the meaning of pàng?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Duibuqī, wŏ bù “pàng” shi shémmeyísi. Excuse me, I don’t know what pàng means.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Character</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“péngyou”</td>
<td>Excuse me, I don’t know what péngyou means.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“qìchē”</td>
<td>Excuse me, I don’t know what qìchē means.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“sījī”</td>
<td>Excuse me, I don’t know what sījī means.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“táifēng”</td>
<td>Excuse me, I don’t know what táifēng means.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
“fēng” Excuse me, I don’t know what fēng means.

“màn” Excuse me, I don’t know what màn means.

“pàng” Excuse me, I don’t know what pàng means.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 6, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Wǒ nǚ’ér hái méiyou shàngxué. My daughter is not in school yet.
   
   jiéhūn. My daughter is not married yet.

   xiàbān. My daughter is not off from work yet.
gōngzuò. My daughter is not working yet.

chīfàn. My daughter has not eaten yet.

shuǐjiào. My daughter has not slept yet.

huíjiā. My daughter has not returned home yet.

shàngxué. My daughter is not in school yet.

2. Tāde érzi jiǔge yuè dà. Her son is 9 months old.

liùge yuè Her son is 6 months old.

liăngge yuè Her son is 2 months old.

yíge yuè Her son is 1 month old.

yísùi Her son is a year old.

liăngsuì Her son is 2 years old.
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sānsuì</td>
<td>Her son is 3 years old.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiūge yuè</td>
<td>Her son is 9 months old.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wǒ Měiguō Zài Mĕiguo Dàshīguān</td>
<td>My aunt works at the U.S. Embassy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. āyí zài Tái Xiéhuì shàngbān.</td>
<td>My aunt works at the American Institute in Taiwan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āyí zài Xībĕi Hángkōng Gōngsī</td>
<td>My aunt works at Northwest Airlines.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bĕijīng Dàxué Túshūguān</td>
<td>My aunt works at the Peking University library.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>píxié chăng</td>
<td>My aunt works at a shoe factory.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
My aunt works at the Taipei American School.

My aunt works at the American Institute in Taiwan.

Instructor Bai teaches at Taipei American School.

Instructor Bai teaches at the elementary school.

Instructor Bai teaches at the junior middle school.

Instructor Bai teaches at the high school.

Instructor Bai teaches at the university.

Instructor Bai teaches at Peking University.
Nándà  Instructor Bai teaches at Nanjing University.

nǎr  Where does Instructor Bai teach?

Táiběi  Instructor Bai teaches at Taipei American School.

Měiguó Xuéxiào

Yǐnwei háizi tā zhǐ néng Because the child is still young, she can only work half-days.

hái méiyǒu Because the child is still young, he is not in school yet.

hái zài Because the child is still young, she is still sleeping.

bù néng Because the child is still young, he cannot go to school.

wǒmen bù Because the child is still young, we cannot move.
tā zhǐ néng Because the child is still
gōngzuò young, she can only work
bàntiān. half-days.

Wǒ 因为
méiyou 因为
6. méiyou 6. 不要
suǒyǐ 所以
bù 不
néng 能
dào 去
Běijīng 北京
qù. 去.

Wǒ 因为
méiyou 因为
6. méiyou 6. 不要
suǒyǐ 所以
bù 不
néng 能
dào 去
Zhōngguó 中国
qù. 去.

bù 不
néng 不能
mǎi 买
bēizi 杯子.

wǒ 我
yīnwei 因为
méiyou 没有
qián 钱

wǒ 我
yīnwei 因为
méiyou 没有
qián 钱

bù 不能
néng 能
mǎi 买
bēizi 杯子.

bù 不
néng 不能
xué 学
Zhōngwén 中文

bù 不
néng 不能
dào 到
Xiānggǎng 香港
qù. 去.

bù 不
néng 不能
dào 到
Běijīng 北京
qù. 去.

bù 不
néng 不能
dào 到
Zhōngguó 中国
qù. 去.

bù 不
néng 不能
dào 到
Fǎguó 法国
qù. 去.

bù 不
néng 不能
dào 到
Hong Kong 香港
qù. 去.

děi 需要
gōngzuò 工作.

Because I don’t have any
money, I can’t go to Beijing.

Because I don’t have any
money, I can’t go to China.

Because I don’t have any
money, I can’t buy the cup.

Because I don’t have any
money, I can’t study
Chinese.

Because I don’t have any
money, I can’t go to France.

Because I don’t have any
money, I can’t go to Hong Kong.

Because I don’t have any
money, I have to work.
bù néng dào Because I don’t have any
Běijīng qù money, I can’t go to Beijing.

7. Wǒ shūshu měitiān sìdiǎn xiàbān. My uncle gets off from work
měitiān sìdiǎn bān at 4:00 every day.

sìdiǎn My uncle gets off from work
bān at 4:30 every day.

wǔdiǎn My uncle gets off from work
yīkè at 5:00 every day.

wǔdiǎn My uncle gets off from work
sānkè at 5:15 every day.

wǔdiǎn My uncle gets off from work
sānkè at 5:45 every day.

liùdiǎn My uncle gets off from work

jǐdiǎn ? When does my uncle get off
jǐdiǎn from work every day?

sìdiǎn My uncle gets off from work
sìdiǎn at 4:00 every day.
8. Nǐ wèishènme máng? Why are you so busy?

lèi? Why are you so tired?

kùn? Why are you so sleepy?

xǐhuan tā? Why do you like him so much?

xǐhuan shuìjiào? Why do you like to sleep so much?

xǐhuan qù Běijīng? Why do you like to go to Beijing so much?

gāo? Why are you so tall?

máng? Why are you so busy?

9. Tā wèishènme zhōngwén hěn nán xué? Why does he say that Chinese is very difficult to learn?

gōngzuò hěn róngyì? Why does he say that the job is very easy?
Běijīng hěn yŏu yìsi? Why does he say that Beijing is very interesting?

gōngzuò méi yìsi? Why does he say that the job is not interesting?

lăoshī hĕn bù hăo? Why does he say that the instructor is very bad?

tā bù gāoxìng? Why does he say that he’s unhappy?

yĭzi hĕn guì? Why does he say that the chair is very expensive?

Zhōngwén hĕn nán xué? Why does he say that Chinese is very difficult to learn?

10. Tā zài Xībĕi Hángkōng Gōngsī jiăo Yīngwén. She teaches English at Northwest Airlines.

Xī’nán. She teaches English at Southwest Airlines.
| Dōngběi | She teaches English at Northeast Airlines. |
| Dōngnán | She teaches English at Southeast Airlines. |
| něijiā | At which airline company does she teach English? |
| Xīběi | She teaches English at Northwest Airlines. |

Nǐ shuōde nèige 11. difang zài dōngběi. Zhōngguode | The place you mentioned is in northeastern China. |
| dōngbiān. | The place you mentioned is in eastern China. |
| nánbiān. | The place you mentioned is in southern China. |
| xībiān. | The place you mentioned is in western China. |
The place you mentioned is in northern China.

The place you mentioned is in northeastern China.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 6, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Nǐ yǒu xiōngdì jiěmèi? Do you have any siblings?
   méiyǒu jiěmèi? Do you have any brothers?
   xiōngdì? Do you have any sisters?
   jiěmèi? Do you have any older brothers?
   gēge? Do you have any younger brothers?
   dìdì?
jiějie? Do you have any older sisters?

mèimei? Do you have any younger sisters?

xiōngdì jiěmèi? Do you have any siblings?

2. Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng lào dà. I’m the oldest in my family.

èr. I’m the second oldest in my family.

sān. I’m the third oldest in my family.

sì. I’m the fourth oldest in my family.

wǔ. I’m the fifth oldest in my family.

dà. I’m the oldest in my family.
3. Nǐ fùmǔ yě zhùzai Táiběi ma?  Do your parents also live in Taipei?

zūfù  Does your paternal grandfather also live in Taipei?

zŭmŭ  Does your paternal grandmother also live in Taipei?

wàizūfù  Does your maternal grandfather also live in Taipei?

wàizŭmŭ  Does your maternal grandmother also live in Taipei?

fùqin  Does your father also live in Taipei?

mŭqin  Does your mother also live in Taipei?

fŭmŭ  Do your parents also live in Taipei?

xiăodì  My youngest brother is studying in England.
dàgē  My oldest brother is studying in England.
dài jiě  My oldest sister is studying in England.
dà dì di  My older younger brother is studying in England.
dà mèi  My older younger sister is studying in England.
xiăo mèi  My youngest sister is studying in England.

5. Wŏ yímín Àozhōu le. My younger brother immigrated to Australia.

Měiguō My younger brother immigrated to America.

Măláixīyà My younger brother immigrated to Malaysia.
Yīnghuò  My younger brother immigrated to England.

Jiā’nádà  My younger brother immigrated to Canada.

Rìběn  My younger brother immigrated to Japan.

Déguo  My younger brother immigrated to Germany.

Fāguo  My younger brother immigrated to France.

Àozhōu  My younger brother immigrated to Australia.


nǐde míngzi  I forgot your name.

qù shítáng chīfàn  I forgot to go to the cafeteria to eat.
qù tǔshūguǎn I forgot to go to the library to study.

jièshào wǒde 我的 roommate.

tóngwū 我的 roommate.

huí sūshè xiūxi 我忘了回宿舍休息。

ziwǒ jièshào 我忘了介绍自己。

7. Tā màile chē le. She sold the car.

yīzi 她卖了椅子.

zhuōzi 她卖了桌子.

bēizi 她卖了杯子.

bēibāo 她卖了背包.

diànnăo 她卖了电脑.

shūjià 她卖了书架.
chē She sold the car.

8. Qǐng nǐ gěi yīzhāng míngpiàn. Please give me a name card.
   yīdiǎnr fàn. Please give me a little rice.
   wǒde gōngshìbāo. Please give me my briefcase.
   yīdiǎnr qián. Please give me a little money.
   nǐde dìzhǐ. Please give me your address.
   wǒde píxié. Please give me my leather shoes.
   yīzhāng míngpiàn. Please give me a name card.

9. Yīhòu yǒu jiē huì zài liáo ba! Let’s chat again if we have a chance in the future!
lái  Let’s come again if we have a chance in the future!

qù  Let’s go again if we have a chance in the future!

mǎi  Let’s buy some again if we have a chance in the future!

shuō  Let’s talk about it again if we have a chance in the future!

chī  Let’s eat it again if we have a chance in the future!

wèn  Let’s ask again if we have a chance in the future!

liáo  Let’s chat again if we have a chance in the future!

Wǒ hěn xīhuan péngyou liáotiān. I very much like to chat with friends.
rén  I very much like to chat with people.
tóngxué  I very much like to chat with classmates.
tóngwū  I very much like to chat with my roommate.
tóngshì  I very much like to chat with colleagues.
Xiăo Wáng  I very much like to chat with Little Wang.
Xiăo Huang  I very much like to chat with Little Huang.
nǐmen  I very much like to chat with you guys.
wŏ didi  I very much like to chat with my younger brother.
wŏ nǚpéngyou  I very much like to chat with my girlfriend.
péngyou  I very much like to chat with friends.
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 7, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Biăojiĕ, nĭ hăo a? (wa) Cousin, how are you?
   nĭmen jiā dōu yŏu shémme rén na) Cousin, who all is there in your family?
   nĭ zuijin zěmmeyàng nga) Cousin, how have you been recently?
   nĭmen jiā zhùzai năr ra) Cousin, where does your family live?
   nĭ wèishemme bú qù ya) Cousin, why don’t you go?
   nĭ hăo wa) Cousin, how are you?

300
2. Wǒ hé nǐ biǎojiěfu gōngchǎng gōngzuò.
   dōu zài
   Wǒ work at the factory with your cousin’s husband.

   biǎojiě
   I work at the factory with your cousin.

   dàiğē
   I work at the factory with your oldest brother.

   dàijiē
   I work at the factory with your oldest sister.

   shūshu
   I work at the factory with your uncle.

   āyí
   I work at the factory with your aunt.

   biǎojiěfu
   I work at the factory with your cousin’s husband.

3. Tā zài yìjiā màoyì gōngsī She used to work at a trading company.

   yuánlái gōngzuò.
   She used to be a teacher.

   shī yíwèi làoshī.
zhùzai wǒ jiā pángbiān. She used to live next to me.

zài Xībĕi Hángkōng Gōngsī gōngzuò. She used to work for Northwest Airlines.

chángcháng lái zhèr chīfàn. She used to come here to eat very often.

zài dàxué jīào Zhōngwén. She used to teach Chinese in college.

chángcháng chídào. She used to be late very often.

zài yìjiā mào yì gōngsī gōngzuò. She used to work at a trading company.

Wǒ bàba yīnwèi shēnti bú tài hǎo, suóyí găihángle. Since my father’s health hasn’t been too good, he changed jobs.

lăobăn bù hăo Since his boss is no good, my father changed jobs.
Since going to work wasn’t easy for my father, he changed jobs.

Since it was very hard for my father to come home, he changed jobs.

Since my father’s job was too busy, he changed jobs.

Since my father’s business wasn’t doing too well, he changed jobs.

Since my father’s health hasn’t been too good, he changed jobs.

He used to do business in New York.

He used to serve in the foreign ministry.
zài yòu’éryuán. He used to work at a kindergarten.

zài dàxué jiāoshū. He used to teach at a college.

zài túshūguăn. He used to work at a library.

hé wǒ zài gōngsī. He used to work with me at a company.

shi Zhōngwén. He used to be a Chinese teacher.

zài Niǔyuē zuò. He used to do business in New York.

6. Tāmen jiā liǎng kǒu rén. There are two people in their family.

sān. There are three people in their family.

sì. There are four people in their family.
wǔ  There are five people in their family.

liù  There are six people in their family.

qī  There are seven people in their family.

jǐ ? How many people are in their family?

liǎng  There are two people in their family.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 7, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Nín huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma? Do you speak Chinese?

    Pǔtōnghuà  Do you speak Mandarin?
Yīngyǔ  Do you speak English?
Fǎyǔ  Do you speak French?
Déyǔ  Do you speak German?
Xībānyáyǔ  Do you speak Spanish?
Riyǔ  Do you speak Japanese?
Zhōngguo huà  Do you speak Chinese?

2. Nǐ huì bu shuō Zhōngguo huà?  Do you know how to speak Chinese?

xiě Zhōngguo zi?  Do you know how to write Chinese characters?

shuō Yīngwén?  Do you know how to speak English?

kāimén?  Do you know how to open the door?
guānmén? Do you know how to close the door?

shuō Zhōngguō huà? Do you know how to speak Chinese?

3. Nǐ shuō de bú cuò ma! You speak quite well!

    xiě You write quite well!

    zuò You do it quite well!

    xué You learned quite well!

    bàn You did it quite well!

    cāi You guess quite well!

    shuō You speak quite well!

4. Tā shuō de bú cuò. He speaks quite well.

    hái hǎo. He speaks pretty well.
hái kéyi. He speaks pretty well.

bījiào hăo. He speaks relatively well.

hĕn hăo. He speaks well.

tīng hăo. He speaks quite well.

tīng hăode. He speaks quite well.

tài hăole. He speaks very well.

kĕ hăo ne. He speaks really well.

zhēn hăo. He speaks really well.

bú tài hăo. He doesn’t speak very well.

bù hăo. He speaks badly.

hĕn bù hăo. He speaks very badly.

bú cuò. He speaks quite well.
5. Nǐ yào xué jīxù Zhōngwén ma? Are you going to continue to study Chinese?

zài nàr gōngzuò Are you going to continue to work there?

jiāoshū Are you going to continue to teach?

shuǐjiāo Are you going to continue to sleep?

shàngxué Are you going to continue to attend school?

liáotiān Do you want to continue chatting?

xué Zhōngwén Are you going to continue to study Chinese?


Hàn zì. I know several hundred Chinese characters.
tóngxué. I know several hundred classmates.

rán. I know several hundred people.

Zhōngguo rán. I know several hundred Chinese people.

Zhōngguo zì. I know several hundred Chinese characters.

7. Wǒ zhī yǒu jīkuài qián. I have only a few dollars.

jīfēn zhōng. I have only a few minutes.

jīge péngyou. I have only a few friends.

jībā yǐzi. I have only a few chairs.

jīzhāng zhuōzi. I have only a few tables.

jītái diànnǎo. I have only a few computers.

jīmáo qián. I have only a few dimes.
jīfēn qián. I have only a few cents.

jīkuài qián. I have only a few dollars.

8. Yǒude wǒ huì, wǒ bú huì. Some I can write, others I can’t.

rènshì wǒ rènshì. Some I recognize, others I don’t recognize.

méi lái. Some came, others didn’t come.

méi qù. Some went, others didn’t go.

bù hào kàn. Some are pretty, others aren’t pretty.

hǎokàn. Some are pretty, others aren’t pretty.

bù hào chī. Some are delicious, others aren’t delicious.

wǒ yào. Some I want, others I don’t want.

méi mǎi. Some I bought, others I didn’t buy.
wǒ huì    wǒ    bú  Some I can write, others I
xīě        hui.    can’t write.

Wǒ       kěshi
9. yīqián huí     xiànzài
shuō        quán
yidianr    wàngle.

I used to know how to
speak a little Spanish, but
now I’ve forgotten all.

Zhōngguo
huà

I used to know how to
speak a little Chinese, but
now I’ve forgotten all.

Yīngyǔ

I used to know how to
speak a little English, but
now I’ve forgotten all.

Fǎyǔ

I used to know how to
speak a little French, but
now I’ve forgotten all.

Déyǔ

I used to know how to
speak a little German, but
now I’ve forgotten all.

Pǔtōnghuà

I used to know how to
speak a little Mandarin,
but now I’ve forgotten all.
I used to know how to speak a little Japanese, but now I’ve forgotten all.

I used to know how to speak a little Chinese, but now I’ve forgotten all.

I used to know how to speak a little Spanish, but now I’ve forgotten all.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 7, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Nǐ shì shémmé shíhou dào Běijīng de? When did you arrive in Beijing?

   Táiběi When did you arrive in Taipei?
xuéxiào  When did you arrive at the school?

jiā  When did you arrive at home?

zhèr  When did you arrive here?

nàr  When did you arrive there?

Běijīng  When did you arrive in Beijing?

2. Wǒ jīnnián èr yuèfèn  I arrived in February of this year.

jīnnián sān yuèfèn  I arrived in March of this year.

qùnián sān yuèfèn  I arrived in March of last year.

qùnián shíyī yuèfèn  I arrived in November of last year.
qiánnián shíyī yuèfen I arrived in November the year before last.

qiánnián èr yuèfen I arrived in February the year before last.

jīnnián èr yuèfen I arrived in February of this year.

3. Tā yíge rén láide. She came alone.

hé tā àirén yiqǐ She came together with her spouse.

gēn wŏ bàba yiqǐ She came together with my father.

shémme shíhou ?What time did she come?

zuótiān She came yesterday.

zuò shémme By what means of transportation did she come?
zuò huǒchē . She came by train.

hé shéi yìqǐ ? With whom did she come together?

yíge rén . She came alone.

4. Nǐ shì shémmexuéde shíhou Zhōngwén? When did you learn Chinese?

jiéde hūn? When did you get married?

líde hūn? When did you get divorced?

chīde wǎnfàn? When did you have dinner?

shuǐde jiào? When did you go to sleep?

zuòde huǒchē? When did you take the train?

xiàde bān? When did you get off from work?
xuéde  When did you learn
Zhōngwén?  Chinese?

5. Hòulái  yòu le yíduàn Later I studied for a
zài Táiwān xué shíjiān. while in Taiwan.

gōngzuò  Later I worked for a while in Taiwan.

zhù  Later I lived for a while in Taiwan.

mài  Later I sold them for a while in Taiwan.

jiāo  Later I taught for a while in Taiwan.

fúwù  Later I served for a while in Taiwan.

xué  Later I studied for a while in Taiwan.
6. Nánguài jiǎngde hǎo! No wonder you speak Chinese so well!

nǐde Riyū jiǎngde zhèmme hǎo! No wonder you speak Japanese so well!

nǐde Hànzi xiěde nèmme hǎokàn! No wonder you write Chinese characters so beautifully!

nǐ nèmme bù xǐhuan ta! No wonder you dislike her so much!

tā nèmme bù xǐhuan nǐ! No wonder he dislikes you so much!

nǐ shuì zhèmme duō jiào! No wonder you sleep so much!

nǐ zhèmme xǐhuan jiāoshū! No wonder you like teaching so much!

nǐde Hányǔ jiǎngde zhèmme hǎo! No wonder you speak Chinese so well!
7. Yǒude shíhou tā huà jiǎng de tài duō. Sometimes, she talks too much.

tā fàn chī de tài duō. Sometimes, she eats too much.

tā fàn dōu bù chī. Sometimes, she doesn’t even eat.

tā lǐwù sòng de tài shǎo. Sometimes, she gives too few gifts.

tā zì xiě de hěn bù hǎo kàn. Sometimes, she writes very ugly characters.

tā huà jiǎng de tài duō. Sometimes, she talks too much.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 7, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Mrs. Gao is from</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tianjin</td>
<td>Mrs. Gao is from Tianjin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beijing</td>
<td>Mrs. Gao is from Beijing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taipei</td>
<td>Mrs. Gao is from Taipei.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York</td>
<td>Mrs. Gao is from New York.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>Mrs. Gao is from Hong Kong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>Mrs. Gao is from San Francisco.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where is Mrs. Gao from? Tianjin.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguó huà</td>
<td>You speak Chinese very well!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pǔtōnghuà</td>
<td>You speak Mandarin very well!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hányǔ</td>
<td>You speak Chinese very well!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fǎyǔ</td>
<td>You speak French very well!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Déyǔ</td>
<td>You speak German very well!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yīngyǔ</td>
<td>You speak English very well!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riyǔ</td>
<td>You speak Japanese very well!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xībānyáyǔ</td>
<td>You speak Spanish very well!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguó huà</td>
<td>You speak Chinese very well!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. jiā zài Xī’ān. Nǐ tíngshuōguō ma?

My home is in Xian. Have you ever heard of it?

Guǎngzhōu

My home is in Guangzhou. Have you ever heard of it?

Guiyáng

My home is in Guiyang. Have you ever heard of it?

Luòyáng

My home is in Luoyang. Have you ever heard of it?

Kūnmíng

My home is in Kunming. Have you ever heard of it?

Gāoxióng

My home is in Gaoxiong. Have you ever heard of it?

Chéngdū

My home is in Chengdu. Have you ever heard of it?

Xī’ān

My home is in Xian. Have you ever heard of it?

Xǐāo Chén líhūnle. I heard Little Chen got divorced.

Bái Xiānsheng láile. I heard Mr. Bai came.

Zhāng Xiānsheng zǒule. I heard Mr. Zhang left.

Lǎo Chén jiāo zhōngxué le. I heard Old Chen is teaching middle school now.

nǐ zǔmǔ xué diànnăo le. I heard your grandmother is learning how to use computers.

tā shēnti zuìjìn hĕn chà. I heard his health has been very bad recently.

Xǐāo Wáng jiéhūnle. I heard Little Wang got married.
Lái zài shémmé
5. Měiguó dānwèi zhīqián, nǐ gōngzuò?
Before coming to the U.S., where did you work?

zài năr jiāoshū? Before coming to the U.S., where did you teach?

Yīngwén xuéle Before coming to the U.S., for duō cháng how long had you studied shíjiān? English?

zhùzai shémmé Before coming to the U.S., difang? where did you live?

qùguo shémmé Before coming to the U.S., difang? what places had you been to?

hui shuō Before coming to the U.S., did Yīngyǔ ma? you know how to speak English?

zài shémmé Before coming to the U.S., difang xuéxí? where did you study?

zài shémmé Before coming to the U.S., dānwèi gōngzuò? where did you work?
Yíge yīqián, wǒmen hái zài Zhōngguo. A month ago, we were still in China.

tā hái méiyou lái. A month ago, he still hadn’t come.

tāmen hái bú huì shuō Hányǔ. A month ago, they didn’t yet know how to speak Chinese.

wǒmen hái bú huì xiĕ Zhōngguo zì. A month ago, we still couldn’t write Chinese characters.

wǒmen hái zhùzai Měiguó. A month ago, we were still living in the U.S.

tā hái méiyou gōngzuò. A month ago, she didn’t yet have a job.

wǒmen hái zài Zhōngguo. A month ago, we were still in China.

Wǒ dàxué jiăole jīn nián. After graduating from college, I taught for several years.
After graduating from college, I worked at a trading company.

After graduating from college, I lived in China for two years.

After graduating from college, I continued to study Chinese.

After graduating from college, I don’t want to work.

After graduating from college, I worked at a library.

After graduating from college, I taught for several years.

After graduating from college, what do you want to do?

After graduating from college, do you want to teach?
yào qù Zhōngguó ma? After graduating from college, do you want to go to China?

yǒu gōngzuò ma? After graduating from college, will you have a job?

jìxù xué Zhōngwén ma? After graduating from college, will you continue to study Chinese?

hái zhù zhèr ma? After graduating from college, will you still live here?

xiǎng qù nār? After graduating from college, where do you want to go?

xiǎng zuò shénme? After graduating from college, what do you want to do?

Wǒ juédìng shēnqǐng qù yánjiūshēng Zhōngguó niàn liúxué. I decided to apply to go to graduate school in China.

I decided to apply to go study in China.
xué Zhōngwén. I decided to apply to go learn Chinese in China.

zuò mǎimài. I decided to apply to go do business in China.

jiāo Yīngyǔ. I decided to apply to go teach English in China.

gōngzuò jǐnián. I decided to apply to go and work for several years in China.

niàn yánjiūshēng. I decided to apply to go to yánjiūshēng. graduate school in China.

10. Qǐng nǐ zhèiyàng xiě. Please write it this way.

shuō. Please say it this way.

wèn. Please ask it like this.

chī. Please eat it this way.

kàn. Please look at it this way.
gěi. Please give it like this.

jiāo. Please teach it this way.

xiě. Please write it this way.

11. Xiăo Bái, nǐ bié nèiyangr shuō. Little Bai, don’t say it that way.

zuò. Little Bai, don’t do it like that.

bàn. Little Bai, don’t handle it that way.

chēnghu Little Bai, don’t address her that way.

gă. Little Bai, don’t study that way.

mài. Little Bai, don’t sell it that way.

xiăng. Little Bai, don’t think about it like that.
Little Bai, don’t say it that way.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 8, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Làojià, Běijīng zěmmeExcuse me, how do I get to qū Fàndiàn zǒu? the Beijing Hotel?

   Tiān’ānmén Excuse me, how do I get to Tiananmen?

   Ribēn Dāshīguǎn Excuse me, how do I get to the Japanese Embassy?

   Táiběi Měiguó Xuéxiào Excuse me, how do I get to Taipei American School?

   Chǎng Chéng Fàndiàn Excuse me, how do I get to the Great Wall Hotel?
Hépíng Dōng Lù  Excuse me, how do I get to Hoping East Road?

Běijīng Fàndiàn  Excuse me, how do I get to the Beijing Hotel?

2. Qǐng nín yìzhí wàng qián zǒu. Please walk straight ahead.

dōng Please walk straight ahead towards the east.
nán Please walk straight ahead towards the south.
xī Please walk straight ahead towards the west.

běi Please walk straight ahead towards the north.

hòu Please walk straight ahead in the opposite direction.

zuǒ Please walk straight ahead to the left.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>方式</th>
<th>地点</th>
<th>中文</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>后面</td>
<td>天安门</td>
<td>比天安门的地方。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>长城</td>
<td>长城饭店</td>
<td>比长城饭店的地方。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>北京</td>
<td>北京饭店</td>
<td>比北京饭店的地方。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>贸易公司</td>
<td>贸易公司</td>
<td>比贸易公司的地方。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>北大</td>
<td>北大</td>
<td>比北大的地方。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>德国</td>
<td>德国大使馆</td>
<td>比德国大使馆的地方。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>鞋厂</td>
<td>鞋厂</td>
<td>比鞋厂的地方。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tiān’ānmén It’s right after Tiananmen.

Běijīng
4. Fàndiàn zhèr lí hěn yuǎn ma?

nǐ jiā Is the Beijing Hotel very far from your home?

nàr Is the Beijing Hotel very far from there?

nǐde gōngsī Is the Beijing Hotel very far from your company?

wŏmende xuéxiào Is the Beijing Hotel very far from our school?

Mĕiguo Dāshīguān Is the Beijing Hotel very far from the American Embassy?

Tiān’ānmén Is the Beijing Hotel very far from Tiananmen?

zhèr Is the Beijing Hotel very far from here?
5. Tiān’ānmén  lì zhèr yuǎn Is Tiananmen far from here?

Běidà  Is Peking University far from here?

Táidà  Is Taiwan University far from here?

Nǐ jiā  Is your home far from here?

Nǐde sùshè  Is your dormitory far from here?

Shítáng  Is the cafeteria far from here?

Fāguo Wénhuà Zhōngxīn  Is the French Cultural Center far from here?

Tiān’ānmén  Is Tiananmen far from here?

6. Wǒ jiā lí zhèr  hěn jìn. My home is very close to here.
bĭjiào jin.  My home is relatively close to here.

bú jìn.  My home is not close to here.

bĭjiào yuăn.  My home is relatively far from here.

zhēn yuăn.  My home is really far from here.

tài yuănle.  My home is too far from here.

bú tài yuăn.  My home is not too far from here.

shízài tài yuănle.  My home is truly too far from here.

hĕn jìn.  My home is very close to here.

7. Zŏulûde huà, èrshifēn dàgài yào zhōng.  If you walk, it will probably take 20 minutes.

bàn’ge zhōngtóu.  If you walk, it will probably take half an hour.
If you walk, it will probably take one and a half hours.

If you walk, it will probably take one day.

If you walk, it will probably take two days.

If you walk, it will probably take a quarter of an hour.

If you walk, it will probably take 20 minutes.

If you walk, it will probably take 2 to 3 hours.

If you take a train, it will probably take 2 to 3 hours.

If you take a bus, it will probably take 2 to 3 hours.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Time Unit</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dădī</td>
<td>If you take a taxi, it will probably take 2 to 3 hours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zōulù</td>
<td>If you walk, it will probably take 2 to 3 hours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wǒ děngle</td>
<td>I waited for about 20 minutes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>èrshǐfēn zhōng zuǒyòu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liăngge zhōngtóu</td>
<td>I waited for about two hours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāntiān</td>
<td>I waited for about three days.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yíge xīnqī</td>
<td>I waited for about a week.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yíge zhōngtóu</td>
<td>I waited for about an hour.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shífēn zhōng</td>
<td>I waited for about ten minutes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
èrshí fēn zhōng I waited for about 20 minutes.

10. Nín dǎ ge dī kuài. If you took a taxi, it would be faster.

hǎo. If you took a taxi, it would be better.

guì. If you took a taxi, it would be more expensive.

piányi. If you took a taxi, it would be cheaper.

méi yìsi. If you took a taxi, it would be even less interesting.

yǒu yìsi. If you took a taxi, it would be more interesting.

kuài. If you took a taxi, it would be faster.

11. Zuò chē de huà, wǔ fēn jiù dàole. If you take a bus, you’ll be there in 5 minutes.
yīkè zhōng  If you take a bus, you’ll be there in 15 minutes.

shífēn zhōng  If you take a bus, you’ll be there in 10 minutes.

jǐfēn zhōng  If you take a bus, you’ll be there in a couple of minutes.

liǎngfēn zhōng  If you take a bus, you’ll be there in 2 minutes.

wǔfēn zhōng  If you take a bus, you’ll be there in 5 minutes.

12. Tāmen hǎoxiàng shì běifāng rén. Apparently, they are northerners.

nánfāng  Apparently, they are southerners.

Dōngfāng  Apparently, they are Asians.

Xīfāng  Apparently, they are Westerners.
běifāng Apparently, they are northerners.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 8, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. yíliàng chē qù</th>
<th>Wǒ yào yíliàng chē Shŏudū Jīchāng.</th>
<th>I need a car to go to Capital Airport.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bĕijīng Fândiàn.</td>
<td>Bĕijīng Fândiàn.</td>
<td>I need a car to go to the Beijing Hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cháng Chéng Fândiàn.</td>
<td>Cháng Chéng Fândiàn.</td>
<td>I need a car to go to the Great Wall Hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bĕiwài.</td>
<td>Bĕiwài.</td>
<td>I need a car to go to Beijing Foreign Studies University.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yŏuyì Bīnguān.</td>
<td>Yŏuyì Bīnguān.</td>
<td>I need a car to go to the Friendship Hotel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

340
Yīngguo dàshíguān. I need a car to go to the British Embassy.

Shǒudū Jīchāng. I need a car to go to Capital Airport.

2. Tāmen jiāli yǒu yī liàng qìchē xīn. They have a new car at home.

liǎng. They have two new cars at home.

sān. They have three new cars at home.

sì. They have four new cars at home.

wǔ. They have five new cars at home.

liù. They have six new cars at home.

qī. They have seven new cars at home.
How many new cars do they have at home?

They have a new car at home.

3. Tā shì wàiguo zhūānjīā. She is a foreign expert.

Zhōngwén She is a Chinese expert.

Yīngyǔ She is an English expert.

yǔyán She is a language expert.

liáotiān She is an expert in chatting.

wàiguo She is a foreign expert.

4. Tāde Zhōngwén wǒ yǐjīng wàngle. I already forgot his Chinese name.

xiěcuòle. His Chinese name is written incorrectly.

shì Wáng Jǐngshēng. His Chinese name is Wang Jingsheng.
nǐ zhīdào Do you know his Chinese name?

shi shémme. What is his Chinese name?

wǒ yǐjīng I already forgot his Chinese name.

5. Chēzi shífēn zhōng yīhòu jiù The car will be here in 10 minutes.

wūfēn zhōng The car will be here in 5 minutes.

yíkè zhōng The car will be here in 15 minutes.

bàn’ge zhōngtōu The car will be here in half an hour.

sānkè zhōng The car will be here in 45 minutes.

shífēn zhōng The car will be here in 10 minutes.
6. Nín zài zhuānjiā lóu ménkŏur děng Why don’t you wait at the entrance to the foreign experts’ building.

túshūguăn ménkŏur Why don’t you wait at the entrance to the library.

túshūguăn lîtou Why don’t you wait inside the library.

sùshè Why don’t you wait at the dormitory.

shítáng wàibian Why don’t you wait outside the cafeteria.

zhèr Why don’t you wait here.

nàr Why don’t you wait there.

zhuānjiā lóu ménkŏur Why don’t you wait at the entrance to the foreign experts’ building.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 8, Part 3: Substitution Drills
Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Qǐng nǐ gěi Wáng Xiānshēng dā diànhuà. Please give Mr. Wang a call.

   Bái Xiáojie Please give Miss Bai a call.

   Xiè Tàitai Please give Mrs. Xie a call.

   Chén Lǎoshī Please give Professor Chen a call.

   Lín Xiàozhāng Please give Principal Lin a call.

   Lăo Gāo Please give Old Gao a call.

   Xiăo Mă Please give Little Ma a call.
Wáng Xiānsheng

2. Tā bàn’ge xiǎoshí dāguo yīqián diànhuà. She called half an hour ago.
   yàoguo yíliàng chē. She asked for a car half an hour ago.
   shuiguō jiào. She slept half an hour ago.
   chīguō fàn. She ate half an hour ago.
   dāguō dī. She took a taxi half an hour ago.
   zuòguō huŏchē. She took a train half an hour ago.
   dāguō diànhuà. She called half an hour ago.

3. Tā zēmme dào xiànzài hái méi lái a? How come he hasn’t come yet?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bú huì</td>
<td>How come he doesn’t know how yet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bú qīchuáng</td>
<td>How come he isn’t up yet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méi zǒu</td>
<td>How come he hasn’t left yet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méi qù</td>
<td>How come he hasn’t gone yet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bú shuō</td>
<td>How come he hasn’t said it yet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méi lái</td>
<td>How come he hasn’t come yet?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Duibuqǐ, qǐng nín děng yihuir. Sorry, please wait a bit longer.

zuò  Sorry, please sit a bit longer.

kàn  Sorry, please watch a bit longer.
xiǎng  Sorry, please think a bit longer.

xiūxi  Sorry, please rest a bit longer.

děng  Sorry, please wait a bit longer.

5. Wǒ xiǎng tā yìhuǐr jiù huì dào.  I think he will be here in a short while.

lái.  I think he will come in a short while.

zǒu.  I think he will leave in a short while.

qù.  I think he will go in a short while.

shuō.  I think he will say it in a short while.

wèn.  I think he will ask in a short while.
I think he will give it in a short while.

I think he will be here in a short while.

Please try to hurry, O.K.?

Please open the door, O.K.?

Please close the door in a short while, O.K.?

Please send a car, O.K.?

Please wait for me, O.K.?

Please go to the dormitory, O.K.?

Please try to hurry, O.K.?
7. Wǒ kuài yào láibují le. I’m about to be late.
   chídào I’m about to be late.
   shàngkè I’m about to go to class.
   chīfàn I’m about to eat.
   xiàbān I’m about to get off from work.
   juédìng I’m about to decide.
   láibují I’m about to be late.

8. Wǒ mǎshàng tōngzhī sījī gǎndào. I’ll notify the driver immediately to hurry there as fast as possible.
   zǒu. I’ll notify the driver immediately to go as fast as possible.
   qù nǐ nàr. I’ll notify the driver immediately to go to your place as fast as possible.
qù. I’ll notify the driver immediately to go as fast as possible.

gāndào. I’ll notify the driver immediately to hurry there as fast as possible.

9. Wǒ jiǎng nián qù I decided to go to China to study next year.

jixù xuéxí I decided to continue to study Zhōngwén. Chinese.

bú qù nǐ jiā le. I decided not to go to your home.

míngtiān qù I decided to go to the cafeteria shìtáng chīfàn. tomorrow to eat.

zhùzài sùshè. I decided to live in a dormitory.

yímín Měiguó. I decided to immigrate to America.

míngtiān qù I decided to go to the library túshūguǎn xuéxí. tomorrow to study.
míngnián qù Zhōngguo liúxué. I decided to go to China next year to study abroad.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 8, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Jiù zhèliăngjiàn xíngli ma?
   Just these two pieces of luggage?
   zhèijijiàn Just these several pieces of luggage?
   nèijiàn Just that piece of luggage?
   nèiliăngjiàn Just those two pieces of luggage?
   nèisānjiàn Just those three pieces of luggage?
nèijījiàn  Just those several pieces of luggage?
zhèjiàn   Just this piece of luggage?
zhèliăngjiàn Just these two pieces of luggage?

Cóng zhèr dào jīchăng xūyào duōshǎo shíjiān?  How much time does it take to get from here to the airport?

nǐ jiā  How much time does it take to get from here to your home?

fàndiàn  How much time does it take to get from here to the hotel?

nàr   How much time does it take to get from here to there?
túshūguăn  How much time does it take to get from here to the library?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shítáng</td>
<td>How much time does it take to get from here to the cafeteria?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sùshè</td>
<td>How much time does it take to get from here to the dormitory?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīchāng</td>
<td>How much time does it take to get from here to the airport?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Wǒmen zhīhǎo huàn tiáo We have no choice but to change to a different route.

3. mìngtiān zài lái We have no choice but to come back tomorrow.

3. jìnkuài gǎndào We have no choice but to rush there as fast as possible.

3. mǎshàng zǒu We have no choice but to leave immediately.

3. hòutiān zài qù We have no choice but to go there again the day after tomorrow.
dădī qù.  We have no choice but to go by taxi.

zuò  We have no choice but to take the
huŏchē.  train.

huàn  tiáò We have no choice but to change to a
biéde lù.  different route.

4. Zhèitiáó  lù
        dǔchēle  . There is a traffic jam on this road.

Nèitiáó  . There is a traffic jam on that road.

Zhèiliăngtiáó  . There are traffic jams on these two
   roads.

Nèiliăngtiáó  . There are traffic jams on those two
   roads.

Nèitiáó  ? On which road are there traffic
   jams?

Zhèitiáó  . There is a traffic jam on this road.

sānshí kuài Just give me thirty dollars in change.

wǔ kuài Just give me five dollars in change.

shíqī kuài Just give me seventeen dollars in change.

liǎng máo Just give me twenty cents in change.

shí kuài Just give me ten dollars in change.

èrshí kuài Just give me twenty dollars in change.

Wǒ děng nǐ děngle hǎo jiǔ, zǒu zuíhòu wǒ le. I waited for you for a very long time; finally, I left.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>词语</th>
<th>意思</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>去吃饭</td>
<td>我等了你很长时间；最后，我去了吃饭。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不等</td>
<td>我等了你很长时间；最后，我停止了等待。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>回家</td>
<td>我等了你很长时间；最后，我回家了。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>返宿舍</td>
<td>我等了你很长时间；最后，我回到了宿舍。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>打电话</td>
<td>我等了你很长时间；最后，我打了电话。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>走</td>
<td>我等了你很长时间；最后，我走了。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 9, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Wǒ bù shì, wǒ yě bù I’m not from here, I’m not very běndì rén tài qīngchu. clear about it either.

   Wǒ shì diyícì lái zhěr This is my first time here, I’m not very clear about it either.

   Wǒ shì wàiguò rén I’m a foreigner, I’m not very clear about it either.

   Wǒ bù shì jiāotōngjǐng I’m not a traffic policeman, I’m not very clear about it either.

   Nǐ bù tài qīngchu You’re not very clear about it, I’m not very clear about it either.

   Wǒ bù shì běndì rén I’m not a local, I’m not very clear about it either.
Nàr yīwèi jiāotōngjǐng, nín qù wèn tā ba. There is a traffic policeman over there, why don’t you go ask him.

jiāotōngjǐng There is a traffic policeman over there, why don’t you go ask him.

jǐngchá There is a policeman over there, why don’t you go ask her.

xiǎoxué xiàozhāng There’s an elementary school principal over there, why don’t you go ask her.

xiǎoxué xiàozhāng There’s an elementary school principal over there, why don’t you go ask her.

wàijiāoguān There is a diplomat over there, why don’t you go ask him.

běndì rén There is a local resident over there, why don’t you go ask her.

zhōngxué lăoshī There is a high school teacher over there, why don’t you go ask her.

zhōngxué lăoshī There is a high school teacher over there, why don’t you go ask her.

jiāotōngjǐng There is a traffic policeman over there, why don’t you go ask him.

jiāotōngjǐng There is a traffic policeman over there, why don’t you go ask him.


nán  After passing the second traffic light, turn south.

zuǒ  After passing the second traffic light, turn left.

yòu  After passing the second traffic light, turn right.

běi After passing the second traffic light, turn north.

4. Zài xiàyíge lùkǒu wàng zuǒ zhuăn. Turn left at the next intersection.

yòu  Turn right at the next intersection.

dōng  Turn east at the next intersection.

xī   Turn west at the next intersection.

zuǒ  Turn left at the next intersection.
5. Bú yòng xiè. There’s no need to thank me.

shuō. There’s no need to say it.

qù. There’s no need to go.

gěi qián. There’s no need to pay.

zhāoqián. There’s no need to give change.

zōule. There’s no need to leave.

dădī. There’s no need to take a taxi.

xiè. There’s no need to thank me.

6. Lăobăn, nĭmen yǒu hóng de? Excuse me, do you have red ones?

lǜ Excuse me, do you have green ones?

lán Excuse me, do you have blue ones?
Excuse me, do you have black ones?

Excuse me, do you have white ones?

Excuse me, do you have yellow ones?

Excuse me, do you have red ones?

I like brown-colored ones.

I like purple-colored ones.

I like brown-colored ones.

I like gray-colored ones.

I like orange-colored ones.

I like brown-colored ones.

To Download the audio files, please click here.
Unit 9, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Qing 1. wèn, qù</th>
<th>Yíhényuán zuò jīlù chē?</th>
<th>Excuse me, what bus do I take to go to the Summer Palace?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tiān’ānmén</td>
<td></td>
<td>Excuse me, what bus do I take to go to Tiananmen?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cháng Chéng Fàndiàn</td>
<td></td>
<td>Excuse me, what bus do I take to go to the Great Wall Hotel?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bēijīng Fàndiàn</td>
<td></td>
<td>Excuse me, what bus do I take to go to the Beijing Hotel?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dòngwùyuán</td>
<td></td>
<td>Excuse me, what bus do I take to go to the zoo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīchāng</td>
<td></td>
<td>Excuse me, what bus do I take to go to the airport?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Sentence</td>
<td>Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Yíhéyuán, Excuse me, what bus do I take to go to the Summer Palace?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Nǐ xiān 2. gōnggōng ránhòu zuò qichē, huàn diànchē. You take a bus first, then change to a trolley.</td>
<td>You take a bus first, then change to a trolley.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Tā yīngdāng zhōngdiǎn zuòdao zhàn. She should take it to the last stop.</td>
<td>You take a bus first, then change to a trolley.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>xiàyízhàn. She should take it to the next stop.</td>
<td>You take a bus first, then change to a trolley.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dòngwùyuán. She should take it to Zoo.

Tiān’ānmén. She should take it to Tiananmen.

Běijīng Fàndiàn. She should take it to the Beijing Hotel.

Yīhéyuán. She should take it to the Summer Palace.

Běijīng Dàxué. She should take it to Peking University.

när? Where should she get off?

zhōngdiǎn zhàn. She should take it to the last stop.

Shíjiān 4. zǎo, nǐ hái dào ménkŏuér bú bì xiān ménkŏuděng. It’s still early, for now you don’t need to wait at the entrance.

qīchuáng. It’s still early, for now you don’t need to get out of bed.
zhèmme   It’s still early, for now you don’t
zǎo qù. need to go so early.

shuō   It’s still early, for now you don’t
láibují. need to say you’re not going to
        make it.

qù nàr It’s still early, for now you don’t
dĕng. need to go there to wait.

dào   It’s still early, for now you don’t
ménkŏur need to wait at the entrance.
dĕng.

5. Tāmen jiā    They keep a cat in their home.
yāngle yĭzhī māo.

liăngzhī gŏu. They keep two dogs in their
home.

jĭzhī xiăo They keep several little birds in
niăo. their home.

jĭtiáo yú. They keep several fish in their
home.
shémme  What animals do they keep in
dòngwù?  their home?

yìzhī māo.  They keep a cat in their home.

Diànhē  wǒ  méi  I’ve never taken a tram,
6. zuòguo,  kěshì  wǒ huǒchē.  but I have taken a train.
zuòguo
gōnggòng I’ve never taken a tram,
qíchē.  but I have taken the bus.

qíchē.  I’ve never taken a tram,
but I have taken a car.

chūzū I’ve never taken a tram,
qíchē.  but I have taken a taxi.

huǒchē.  I’ve never taken a tram,
but I have taken a train.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 9, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence
using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with
the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Yi</td>
<td>Yì zhāng piào duōshǎo qián? How much for a ticket?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liăng How much for two tickets?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sān How much for three tickets?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sì How much for four tickets?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wǔ How much for five tickets?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yì How much for a ticket?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Yìzhāng dào</td>
<td>Dòngwùyuánr de. One ticket to Zoo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yīhéyuán One ticket to Summer Palace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Běijīng Fàndiàn One ticket to Beijing Hotel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cháng Chéng Fàndiàn One ticket to the Great Wall Hotel.

jīchǎng One ticket to the airport stop.

Dòngwùyuánr One ticket to Zoo.


gānggāng I just got on.

wǔfēn zhōng yīqián I got on five minutes ago.

shīfēn zhōng yīqián I got on ten minutes ago.

shàng yízhàn I got on at the last stop.

gāng I just got on.
4. Dàole máfăn nín
Dòngwùyuánr jiào wǒ yixiar.
Please call me when we get to the Zoo stop.

Dàole Yínhéyuán
Please call me when we get to the Summer Palace stop.

Tā dà diànhuà
Please call me when she calls.

Wǒ māma láile
Please call me when my mom comes.

Shídiǎn zhōng
Please call me when it’s ten o’clock.

Dàole Dòngwùyuánr
Please call me when we get to the Zoo stop.

Tāmen màide bù hǎochī
Not only are the things they sell expensive, they are also bad tasting.

bú zuòde bù hǎo.
Not only are the things they sell expensive, they are also poorly made.

bú guì, érqǐē
bù hàokàn. Not only are the things they sell expensive, they are also ugly.

hěn chà. Not only are the things they sell expensive, they are also very low in quality.

hěn xiǎo. Not only are the things they sell expensive, they are also very small.

zuòde bù hǎo. Not only are the things they sell expensive, they are also poorly made.

6. Nǐ nèmme bèn a? How come you are so stupid?

máng How come you are so busy?

kùn How come you are so sleepy?

lèi How come you are so tired?

zāng How come you are so dirty?
cōngming  How come you are so smart?

yònggōng  How come you are so diligent?

bèn  How come you are so stupid?

7. Nǐde fángjiān shízài tài luàn le! Your room is really too messy!

zāng  Your room is really too dirty!

gānjìng  Your room is really too clean!

zhĕngqí  Your room is really too neat!

xiāo  Your room is really too small!

luàn  Your room is really too messy!

To Download the audio files, please click here.
Unit 9, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

**1.** Zăozhe ne. Hái yŏu sizhàn.  
It’s still early. There are still four stops.

   *shífēn* It’s still early. There are still ten minutes.

   *rén méi* It’s still early. There are still people who haven’t come.

   *shíjiān.* It’s still early. There is still time.

   *jǐzhàn.* It’s still early. There are still several stops.

   *sizhàn.* It’s still early. There are still four stops.

**2.** Dào shíhou wŏ jiào nín.  
When the time comes, I’ll call you.
wǒ qù zhǎo nǐ. When the time comes, I’ll go find you.

nǐ jiù zhīdaole. When the time comes, you’ll know.

wǒ gěi nǐ dā diànhuà. When the time comes, I’ll give you a phone call.

tā huì jiào nín. When the time comes, she’ll call you.

wǒ jiào nín. When the time comes, I’ll call you.

3. Nín gāi zhǔnbèi xiàchē le. You should prepare to get off the bus.

shàngkè You should prepare to go to class.

huíjiā You should prepare to go home.

jiǎnghuà You should get ready to speak.

zǒu You should prepare to leave.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chīfàn</td>
<td>You should get ready to eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuǐjiào</td>
<td>You should get ready to sleep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bānjiā</td>
<td>You should get ready to move.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎiháng</td>
<td>You should get ready to change your line of work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huíguó</td>
<td>You should get ready to return to your country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiéhūn</td>
<td>You should prepare to get married.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qǐchuáng</td>
<td>You should prepare to get up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shàngbānr</td>
<td>You should prepare to go to work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shēnqǐng</td>
<td>You should get ready to apply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shàngchē</td>
<td>You should prepare to get on the bus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You should prepare to get off the bus.

4. Wǒde piào zhāobuzháole! I can’t find my ticket!

chēpiào I can’t find my bus ticket!

yuèpiào I can’t find my monthly ticket!

gǒu I can’t find my dog!

māo I can’t find my cat!

dōngxi I can’t find my things!

qián I can’t find my money!

dàizi I can’t find my bag!

bēibāo I can’t find my back pack!

xíngli I can’t find my luggage!
mingpiàn  I can’t find my name cards!

piào   I can’t find my ticket!

5. Nǐ zhǎo dedào ma? Can you find it?

mǎi    Can you buy one?

tīng   Can you hear?

kàn    Can you see?

zhǎo   Can you find it?

6. Nǐ zhǎo dedào zhǎo budào? Can you find it or not?

mǎi    mǎi    Can you buy one or not?

tīng   tīng   Can you hear or not?

kàn    kàn    Can you see or not?

zhǎo   zhǎo   Can you find it or not?
7. Hái hǎo, wǒ zhǎo dàole. At least I found it.

mǎi     At least I bought one.
tīng    At least I heard it.
kàn     At least I saw it.
zhǎo    At least I found it.

8. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ zhǎo budào. Sorry, I really can’t find it.

mǎi     Sorry, I really can’t buy one.
tīng    Sorry, I really can’t hear.
kàn     Sorry, I really can’t see.
zhǎo    Sorry, I really can’t find it.

9. Wǒ jìde nín mǎiguo piào le. I remember you bought a ticket.
yǐqián láíguo. I remember you came here before.

gāng shàngchē. I remember you just got on.

hái yào qù I remember you still want to go
Měiguó. to America.

jiào shémme míngzi. I remember what your name is.

shi shéi. I remember who you are.

yào qù I remember you want to go to the
dòngwùyuán. zoo.

mǎiguó piào le. I remember you bought a ticket.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 10, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.
1. **Tiānqì yùbào shuō huì xiàyǔ.** The weather forecast calls for rain.

   **dāléi.** The weather forecast calls for thunder.

   **biànchéng yīntiān.** The weather forecast says it will become overcast.

   **biànchéng qíngtiān.** The weather forecast says it will become clear.

   **yuè lái yuè ré.** The weather forecast says it will get hotter and hotter.

   **yuè lái yuè hǎo.** The weather forecast says it will get better and better.

   **xiàyǔ.** The weather forecast calls for rain.

2. **Shàngwǔ shí huì** In the morning it will be clear, but **qíngtiān,** **biànchéng** it will turn overcast in the **xiàwǔ yīntiān.** afternoon.
In the morning it will be clear, but it will rain in the afternoon.

In the morning it will be clear, but it will thunder in the afternoon.

In the morning it will be clear, but it will get hotter and hotter in the afternoon.

In the morning it will be clear, but it will no longer be clear in the afternoon.

In the morning it will be clear, but it will turn overcast in the afternoon.

It’s possible it will turn overcast.

It’s possible it will turn clear.

It’s possible it will rain.
hui dalei. It’S possible there will be thunder.

wo jiu bu qule. It’S possible I won’T go then.

ta bu xiang laile. It’S possible she doesn’T want to come anymore.

ni wangle ba. Maybe you forgot.

hui biancheng yintian. It’S possible it will turn overcast.

kai shi hui yue yue. Starting tomorrow, it will get hotter and hotter.

4. Cong mingtian yue lai rere. Starting the day after tomorrow, it will get hotter and hotter.

hou tian

xiage

xinqi

xi starting next week, it will get hotter and hotter.

xinqi

xi starting next week, it will get hotter and hotter.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Text</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xiàge lìbài</td>
<td>Starting next week, it will get hotter and hotter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià lìbài</td>
<td>Starting next week, it will get hotter and hotter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàge yuè</td>
<td>Starting next month, it will get hotter and hotter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siyuè shíhào</td>
<td>Starting April 10th, it will get hotter and hotter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>míngtiān</td>
<td>Starting tomorrow, it will get hotter and hotter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nǐde Zhōngguo 5. zi xiěde yuè lái hǎo yuè le</td>
<td>You’re writing your Chinese characters better and better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hǎokàn</td>
<td>You’re writing your Chinese characters so they look nicer and nicer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chà</td>
<td>You’re writing your Chinese characters worse and worse.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
luàn  You’re writing your Chinese characters messier and messier.

zhěngqí  You’re writing your Chinese characters neater and neater.

xiǎo  You’re writing your Chinese characters smaller and smaller.

da  You’re writing your Chinese characters bigger and bigger.

hǎo  You’re writing your Chinese characters better and better.

6. Wǒ yuè lái  I’m increasingly disliking
    yuè bù xīhuan ta. him.

bù xiǎng qùle.  I’m increasingly not wanting
to go.

xiǎng chīfàn.  I more and more want to eat.

bù xīhuanI more and more dislike the
    xīhuan shìtáng. cafeteria.
我想去动物园更多。

我不喜欢他。

那同学最好。

那同学最差。

那同学最聪明。

那同学最笨。

那同学最勤奋。

那同学最懒。

那同学最快。

那同学最慢。

那同学最高。
ăi. That classmate is the shortest.

zāng. That classmate is the dirtiest.

gānjìng. That classmate is the cleanest.

pàng. That classmate is the fattest.

shòu. That classmate is the thinnest.

qīng. That classmate is the lightest.

zhòng. That classmate is the heaviest.

yǒu yìsi. That classmate is the most interesting.

yǒu nàixīn. That classmate has the most patience.

hǎo. That classmate is the best.

Jīntiān dù, zuì dī 8. zuì èrshībā wěndù èrshīsì dù. The highest temperature today is
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wēndù</td>
<td>28°, the lowest temperature is 24°.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shíwǔ</td>
<td>The highest temperature today is 15°, the lowest temperature is 10°.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shí</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sānshí</td>
<td>The highest temperature today is 30°, the lowest temperature is 25°.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>èrshiwǔ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liùshí</td>
<td>The highest temperature today is 60°, the lowest temperature is 50°.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wūshí</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīshiqī</td>
<td>The highest temperature today is 77°, the lowest temperature is 70°.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīshí</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yībǎi</td>
<td>The highest temperature today is 100°, the lowest temperature is 85°.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāshiwǔ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

387
èrshìbā èrshìsì

The highest temperature today is 28°, the lowest temperature is 24°.

Shì
9. bu
shi

yào xiàyǔ le? Is it going to rain?
yào dǎlèi le? Is there going to be thunder?
yào biànhéng qíngtiān le? Is it going to turn clear?
yào biànhéng yīntiān le? Is it going to become overcast?
nǐ yào zōule? Are you going to leave?
tā bù gāoxíongle? Did he get mad?
wō méi gěi nǐ dā diànhuà? Did I not call you?
nǐ yǒu shì yào Do you have something you wanted zhǎo wǒ? to find me to talk about?

yào xiàyǔ le? Is it going to rain?

Suǒyì tiānqì yùbào bù Therefore, weather forecasts are shuō, yídīng zhūn. not necessarily accurate.

tā jiāngde huà bù Therefore, what she says is not yídīng dui. necessarily correct.

tā bú shì yīge Therefore, he is not a good hǎo rén. person.

wǒ míngtiān jiù Therefore, I won’t be coming bù lái le. tomorrow.

qíngtiān gèng Therefore, clear days are better. hǎo.

nèijīā fândiàn bù Therefore, that hotel is not very zēmmeyàng. good.

tiānqì yùbào bù Therefore, weather forecasts are yídīng zhūn. not necessarily accurate.
11. Zhè shì zhī tiānqì yùbào ér yī. This is only a weather forecast.

yíge wánxiào This is only a joke.

yíge xiàohuār This is only a joke.

wǒ cāide This is only what I’m guessing.

wǒde xīwàng This is only my hope.

tiānqì yùbào This is only a weather forecast.

12. Wǒ yǒu zhǐ yīkuài qián ér yī. I only have a dollar.

yīmáo qián I only have ten cents.

shífēn zhōng I only have 10 minutes.

yíge zhōngtóu I only have an hour.
yíge péngyou  I only have one friend.

zhèiyíge háizi  I only have this one child.

nèiyíge gōngshibāo  I only have that one briefcase.

yíkuài qián  I only have a dollar.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 10, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Běijīngde tiānqi bù cuò ma!  The weather in Beijing is not bad, you know!

   Nǐde Zhōngguo zì xiěde bù cuò  You write Chinese very well, you know!

   Nǐde Zhōngguo huà jiāngde hěn hǎo  You speak Chinese very well, you know!
Tā méi xué  He didn’t learn any, you know!

Xuéxí Zhōngwén hěn yŏu yìsi  Learning Chinese is very interesting, you know!

Běijīngde tiānqi bú cuò  The weather in Beijing is not bad, you know!

2. Bù/Bú lĕng yĕ bù/bú rè.  Neither cold nor hot.

duō  shăo.  Neither many nor few.

guì  piányi.  Neither expensive nor cheap.

gāo  āi.  Neither tall nor short.

pàng  shòu.  Neither fat nor thin.

dà  xiăo.  Neither big nor small.

nán  róngyi.  Neither difficult nor easy.

lĕng  rè.  Neither cold nor hot.
3. 秋 而 且 还 可以。It’s the fall that’s fairly good.

dōngtiān It’s the winter that’s fairly good.

chūntiān It’s the spring that’s fairly good.

xiàtiān It’s the summer that’s fairly good.

Xiăo Wáng It’s Little Wang who’s doing O.K.

jīnnián It’s this year that’s fairly good.

qùnián It was last year that was fairly good.

qiūtiān It’s the fall that’s fairly good.

4. Zúi jìn rè de 而 热 de 要 si. Recently, it’s been incredibly hot.

lěng Recently, it’s been incredibly cold.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ɡān</td>
<td>Recently, it’s been incredibly dry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mánɡ</td>
<td>Recently, I’ve been incredibly busy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lèi</td>
<td>Recently, I’ve been incredibly tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kùn</td>
<td>Recently, I’ve been incredibly sleepy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǎn</td>
<td>Recently, I’ve been incredibly lazy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zānɡ</td>
<td>Recently, it’s been incredibly dirty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luàn</td>
<td>Recently, it’s been incredibly messy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnzhānɡ</td>
<td>Recently, I’ve been incredibly nervous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rè</td>
<td>Recently, it’s been incredibly hot.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Zhèrde tiānqì yòu gān yòu lĕng. The weather here is both dry and cold.

gān rè. The weather here is both dry and hot.

gān lĕng. The weather here is both dry and cold.

6. Zhèrde shēnghuó yòu máng yòu jĭnzhāng. Life here is both busy and intense.

máng lèi. Life here is both busy and tiring.

nán máng. Life here is both hard and busy.

jĭnzhāng bù hăo. Life here is both intense and bad.

méi yìsi máng. Life here is both uninteresting and busy.
hǎo yǒu yìsi. Life here is both good and interesting.

máng jǐnzhāng. Life here is both busy and intense.

7. Zhèige difang xìàxuě. It seldom snows in this place.
  hěn shǎo

xìàyǔ. It seldom rains in this place.

dāléi. There is seldom thunder in this place.

chū tàiyáng. The sun seldom comes out in this place.

yǒu wàiguó rén. There are seldom foreigners in this place.

kàndedào In this place you seldom see Zhōngguó rén. Chinese people.

yǒu huŏchē. This place seldom has trains.
kàndedào qìchē. In this place you seldom see cars.

xiàxuĕ. It seldom snows in this place.

bú shì fēngshā tài dà hǎole. If there weren’t so much wind and sand, it would be all right.

shi qíngtiān If it were clear, it would be all right.

piányi yìdiăn If it were a bit cheaper, then it would be good.

bú xiàyū If it didn’t rain, it would be all right.

bú xiàxuĕ If it didn’t snow, it would be all right.

nǐ yě néng lái If you also could come, it would be all right.
tā bù lái  If he doesn’t come, it would be all right.
nǐ néng dā diànhuà  If you can call, it would be all right.
néng yŏu gèng duōde qián  If we could have more money, it would be all right.
bú shì fēngshā tài dà  If there weren’t so much wind and sand, it would be all right.

Zhèmme wŏ láide zhèng shíshíhou le! Then I came at just the right time!
wŏ láide tài zăole! Then I came too early!
tā yīhòu bù láile! Then he won’t come again in the future!
tā yīhòu bù gēn nǐ wánr le! Then she won’t play with you again in the future!
nǐ míngtiān bù néng láile! Then you won’t be able to come tomorrow!

nǐmen shì hǎo péngyou a! Then you all are good friends!

chūntiān zuì shūfu! Then spring is the most comfortable!

nǐ bù xīhuan wǒ le! Then you don’t like me anymore!

wǒ láide zhèng shí shíhou le! Then I came at just the right time!

10. Tā zuì xīhuande jījié shì chūntiān. The season she likes most is spring.

xiàtiān. The season she likes most is summer.

qiūtiān. The season she likes most is autumn.

dōngtiān. The season she likes most is winter.
nēige jìjié? Which season does she like most?

The season she likes most is chūntiān. spring.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 10, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Hǎoxiàng shāchuāng piāojìn lái de yàngzi. It seems the fog floated in through the window screen.

   wù shì cóng de yàngzi. It seems the rain came in through the window screen.

   yǔ shì cóng shāchuāng jin lái. It seems the weather is going to be increasingly hot.
nǐmen shì hǎo péngyou  It seems you are good friends.

wù shì cóng shāchuāng piāojinlái  It seems the fog floated in through the window screen.

2. Zhèige difang dōngtiān zhèiyangzi. Winter here is often like this.

nèiyangzi.  Winter here is often like that.

zhèiyangr.  Winter here is often like this.

nèiyangr.  Winter here is often like that.

zhèiyangzi.  Winter here is often like this.

3. Qíshí, xiànzài jiù zài xiàyǔ. Actually, it’s raining now.

xià.  Actually, it’s raining now.
Actually, it’s snowing now.

Actually, it’s drizzling now.

Actually, it’s thundering now.

Actually, it’s raining now.

The school principal is eating.

The school principal is speaking.

The school principal is speaking.

The school principal is on the phone.

The school principal is writing.

The school principal is walking.
kāichē. The school principal is driving.

shuìjiào. The school principal is sleeping.

shàngkè. The school principal is in class.

jiāoshū. The school principal is teaching.

xiūxi. The school principal is resting.

xuéxí. The school principal is studying.

liáotiān. The school principal is chatting.

qǐchuáng. The school principal is getting up from bed.

zuò mǎimài. The school principal is doing business.

shuō xiàohua. The school principal is telling a joke.

chīfàn. The school principal is eating.
5. 这次来，天天都下雨。This time I came, it’s been raining every day.

下雪。This time I came, it’s been snowing every day.

出来。This time I came, the sun has been out every day.

很累。This time I came, I’ve been tired every day.

很忙。This time I came, I’ve been busy every day.

很困。This time I came, I’ve been sleepy every day.

休息不好。This time I came, I haven’t rested well every day.

下雪。This time I came, it’s been raining every day.

6. 老黄天天都到天津去。Old Huang goes to Tianjin every day.
Old Huang goes to Tianjin every month.

Old Huang goes to Tianjin every year.

Old Huang goes to Tianjin every day.


hui. Everybody knows how.

shuō. Everybody says it.

wèn. Everybody asks.

mǎi. Everybody buys them.

chī. Everybody eats it.

dōng. Everybody understands.

shēnqǐng. Everybody applies.
Everybody will die.

Everybody has hope.

Everybody has fun.

Everybody wants to.

Everybody likes it.

Everybody needs it.

Everybody has one.

Everybody carries them.

Everybody knows.

There is no way to go out today.

There is no way to drive today.
zuò  There is no way to take the train today.

huǒchē. There is no way to take the train today.

shuǐjiào. There is no way to sleep today.

xuéxí. There is no way to study today.

xiūxi. There is no way to rest today.

bānjiā. There is no way to move today.

huíjiā. There is no way to get home today.

shàngbān. There is no way to go to work today.

shàngxué. There is no way to attend school today.

táokè. There is no way to skip class today.

chūmén. There is no way to go out today.
There is absolutely no way I can go out.

There is absolutely no way I can tell you.

I have absolutely no money.

I have absolutely no friends.

I don’t have the slightest idea what you are saying.

I don’t have the slightest idea whom you are talking about.

I absolutely don’t want to eat there.

I don’t have any time at all to go have fun.

There is absolutely no way I can go out.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kōngpà</th>
<th>Xiăo Zheng yǐjīng</th>
<th>chūlái le.</th>
<th>I’m afraid that Little Zheng has already come out.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chūqu</td>
<td>I’m afraid that Little Zheng has already gone out.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jìnlái</td>
<td>I’m afraid that Little Zheng has already come in.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jìnqu</td>
<td>I’m afraid that Little Zheng has already gone in.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūlái</td>
<td>I’m afraid that Little Zheng has already come out.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 10, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

| Wǒ xiǎng | qù | I want to go visit the west wánr. coast with my classmates. |
| Wǒ xiǎng | qù | I want to go visit the west wánr. coast with my classmates. |
| Wǒ xiǎng | qù | I want to go visit the west wánr. coast with my classmates. |

409
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dōngàn</td>
<td>I want to go visit the east coast with my classmates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xībānyá</td>
<td>I want to go visit Spain with my classmates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xīnjiāpō</td>
<td>I want to go visit Singapore with my classmates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àodāliyà</td>
<td>I want to go visit Australia with my classmates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niūyuē</td>
<td>I want to go visit New York with my classmates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jiùjīnshān</td>
<td>I want to go visit San Francisco with my classmates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yīhéyuán</td>
<td>I want to go visit the Summer Palace with my classmates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xiāng Shān</td>
<td>I want to go visit Fragrant Hills with my classmates.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Yángmíng Shān  
I want to go visit Yangming Mountain with my classmates.

Xī’ān  
I want to go visit (the city of) Xian with my classmates.

xī’àn  
I want to go visit the west coast with my classmates.

2. Nàrde qihou hĕn gānzào. The climate there is dry.
   chóngshī. The climate there is humid.
   bù hăo. The climate there is bad.
   shūfu. The climate there is comfortable.
   gānzào. The climate there is dry.

3. Zhèige nèige bǐ hăo. This one is better than that one.
   zāng. This one is dirtier than that one.
dà. This one is bigger than that one.

xiǎo. This one is smaller than that one.

xīn. This one is newer than that one.

jiù. This one is older than that one.

cháng. This one is longer than that one.

héshì. This one is more appropriate than that one.

hóng. This one is redder than that one.

luàn. This one is messier than that one.

hǎo. This one is better than that one.

4. Xiǎo Lǐ bǐ Xiāo Zhāng gāo. Little Li is taller than Little Zhang.

āi. Little Li is shorter than Little Zhang.
Little Li is more nervous than Little Zhang.

Little Li is younger than Little Zhang.

Little Li is older than Little Zhang.

Little Li is more patient than Little Zhang.

Little Li likes to eat candy more than Little Zhang.

Little Li likes to chat more than Little Zhang.

Little Li likes to sleep more than Little Zhang.

Little Li likes cleanliness more than Little Zhang.

Little Li is better at having a good time than Little Zhang.
gāo. Little Li is taller than Little Zhang.

5. Wǒmen zhèrde dōngtiān bǐ Běijīng nuǎnhuo. Winter here is warmer than in Beijing.

gānzào. Winter here is drier than in Beijing.

cháoshī. Winter here is more humid than in Beijing.

shūfu. Winter here is more comfortable than in Beijing.

lěng. Winter here is colder than in Beijing.

cháng. Winter here is longer than in Beijing.

nuǎnhuo. Winter here is warmer than in Beijing.

6. Zhèige méiyou nèige nèmme hǎo. This one is not as good as that one.
This one is not as expensive as that one.

This one is not as cheap as that one.

This one is not as difficult as that one.

This one is not as easy as that one.

This one doesn’t smell as good as that one.

This one is not as big as that one.

This one is not as good as that one.

Old Sun is not as smart as Little Li.

Old Sun is not as stupid as Little Li.
kē’ài. Old Sun is not as cute as Little Li.

yōnggōng. Old Sun is not as diligent as Little Li.

lăn. Old Sun is not as lazy as Little Li.

xiăoxīn. Old Sun is not as careful as Little Li.

nánguò. Old Sun is not as sad as Little Li.

xīhuan xuéxí. Old Sun does not like to study as much as Little Li.

ài wánr. Old Sun does not like to have fun as much as Little Li.

cōngming. Old Sun is not as smart as Little Li.

8. Měiguó de dōngàn méiyǒu zhèr zhèméme gānzào. The U.S. east coast is not as dry as here.
cháoshī. The U.S. east coast is not as humid as here.

rè. The U.S. east coast is not as hot as here.

lěng. The U.S. east coast is not as cold as here.

shūfu. The U.S. east coast is not as comfortable as here.

nuǎnhuo. The U.S. east coast is not as warm as here.

liángkuai. The U.S. east coast is not as cool as here.

gānzào. The U.S. east coast is not as dry as here.

Nǐ xiànzài Běijīngde le? I suppose you’re used to Beijing’s climate now?

dàxué de I suppose you’re used to college life now?
shìtángde I suppose you’re used to
fàn cafeteria food now?

zhèrde I suppose you’re used to the
tiānqì weather here now?

tiāntiān I suppose you’re used to going
shàngkè to class every day now?

hěn wăn I suppose you’re used to
shuìjiào sleeping very late now?

Bĕijīngde I suppose you’re used to
qihou Beijing’s climate now?

10. Wǒ gāng bú tái When I first came, I wasn’t
lái de shíhou shiyìng. very well adjusted.

bù xīhuan When I first came, I didn’t
zhèr. like it here.

méiyou When I first came, I didn’t
péngyou. have any friends.

bú huì shuō When I first came, I didn’t
Yīngyǔ. speak English.
When I first came, I wasn’t used to things at all.

When I first came, I wasn’t very well adjusted.

I was still very young when my father died.

I was still very young when my father moved to America.

I was still very young when my father went abroad to study in Canada.

I was still very young when my mom and dad got divorced.

I was still very young when my father graduated from college.

I was still very young when my father worked there.
zài nàr jiāoshū I was still very young when my father taught there.

sǐ I was still very young when my father died.

12. Xī’àn de fēngjǐng hěn měi! The scenery on the west coast is beautiful!

bàng! The scenery on the west coast is great!

hǎokàn! The scenery on the west coast is very pretty!

bú cuò! The scenery on the west coast is not bad at all!

bù hǎo! The scenery on the west coast is very bad!

chà! The scenery on the west coast is lacking!

měi! The scenery on the west coast is beautiful!
13. **Jīntiān zĕmme yòu xiàyǔ?** How come it’s raining again today?

**dāléi?** How come there is thunder again today?

**yŏu wù?** How come there’s fog again today?

**yŏu fēngshā?** How come there’s blowing sand again today?

**xiàxuě?** How come it’s snowing again today?

**shi yīntiān?** How come it’s cloudy again today?

**xiàyǔ?** How come it’s raining again today?
3. Transformation and Response Drills

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 1, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add the final particle a to the following greetings and questions to make them softer and more colloquial.

Nǐ hǎo!       Nǐ hǎo a?

“How are you?”       “How are you?”

Wāng Jīngshēng, nǐ hǎo!       Wāng Jīngshēng, nǐ hǎo a!

“Wang Jingsheng, how are you?”       “Wang Jingsheng, how are you?”

Nǐ dào năr qù?       Nǐ dào năr qù a?

“Where are you going?”       “Where are you going?”

Kē Léi’ēn dào năr qù bàn shì a?       Kē Léi’ēn dào năr qù bàn shì a?
“Where is Ke Leien going to take care of things?”

2. Use ne to abbreviate the question about the second person.

“Where is Ke Leien going to take care of things?”

Wǒ huí sùshè. Nǐ dào năr qù? Wǒ huí sùshè. Nǐ ne?

“I’m going back to the dormitory. Where are you going?”


“I’m going to go take care of some stuff. Where are you going?”

Wǒ qù shítáng. Nǐ dào năr qù? Wǒ qù shítáng. Nǐ ne?

“I’m going to the cafeteria. Where are you going?”

Wǒ qù túshūguăn. Nǐ dào năr qù? Wǒ qù túshūguăn. Nǐ ne?
“I’m going to the library. Where are you going?”

And you?

3. You will hear a statement about somebody who is going to do something. Repeat the statement and, using the adverb yě “also, too,” add a comment to the effect that you are going to do the same thing as the person being talked about.

Kē Léi’ēn huí sùshè.

Kē Léi’ēn huí sùshè, wǒ yě huí sùshè.

“Ke Leien is returning to the dormitory.”

Wāng Jīngshēng qù shítáng.

Wāng Jīngshēng qù shítáng, wǒ yě qù shítáng.

“Wang Jingsheng is going to the cafeteria, and I’m going to the cafeteria.”

Nĭ qù túshūguăn.

Nĭ qù túshūguăn, wǒ yě qù túshūguăn.

“You’re going to the library.”

“You’re going to the library, and I’m going to the library, too.”
You’re going to take care of some things, and I’m going to take care of some things, too.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 1, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add dōu to each sentence.

Wǒ bàba, māma hēn máng. Wǒ bàba, māma dōu hēn máng.

“My father and mother are both busy.”

Wǒ àirén, háizi qù Wǒ àirén, háizi dōu qù túshūguǎn.

“My spouse and children go to the library.”

Tāmen xiān zōule. Tāmen dōu xiān zōule.

“They left early.” “They all left early.”
Nǐ bàba, māma hĕn lèi. Nǐ bàba, māma dōu hĕn lèi.

“Your father and mother are both tired.”

2. Change the following statements into questions by adding the question particle ma.

Tāmen hĕn máng. Tāmen hĕn máng ma?

“They are busy.” “Are they very busy?”

Nǐ lèile. Nǐ lèile ma?

“You’ve gotten tired.” “Have you gotten tired?”

Tāmen qù túshūguăn. Tāmen qù túshūguăn ma?

“They’re going to the library.” “Are they going to the library?”

Tā huí sùshè. Tā huí sùshè ma?

“She’s going back to the dormitory.” “Is she going back to the dormitory?”
Wǒ àirén xiān zǒule.  
Wǒ àirén xiān zǒule ma?

“My spouse left already.”  
“Did my spouse leave already?”

Tā hái hăo.  
Tā hái hăo ma?

“He’s O.K.”  
“Is he O.K.?”

3. Create stative verb sentences with hěn using the subjects and stative verbs given you.

Nīmen, lèi.  
Nīmen hěn lèi.

“You (plural), tired.”“You are very tired.”

Tā, máng.  
Tā hěn máng.

“She, busy.”  
“She is very busy.”

Wǒ, hăo.  
Wǒ hěn hăo.

“I, good.”  
“I am doing very well.”

Nǐ, máng.  
Nǐ hěn máng.
“You, busy.”  “You are very busy.”

Tāmen, lèi.  Tāmen hěn lèi.

“They, tired.”  “They are very tired.”

4. Change the pronoun subject tā to the plural by adding -men.

Tā qù túshūguān.  Tāmen qù túshūguān.

“He’s going to the library.”  “They’re going to the library.”

Tā huí sūshè.  Tāmen huí sūshè.

“She’s going back to the dormitory.”  “They’re going back to the dormitory.”

Tā hěn máng.  Tāmen hěn máng.

“He is very busy.”  “They are very busy.”

Tā xiān zōule.  Tāmen xiān zōule.

“She left earlier.”  “They left earlier.”
Unit 1, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Change the following from the pattern NOUN + STATIVE VERB to the pattern STATIVE VERB USED AS AN ADJECTIVE + NOUN.

Gōngzuò hǎo.  Hǎo gōngzuò

“The job is good.”  “good job”

Háizi xiăo.  xiăo háizi

“The child is little.”  “little child”

Bàba hǎo.  hǎo bàба

“Father is good.”  “good father”

Shítáng hǎo.  hǎo shítáng

“The cafeteria is good.”  “good cafeteria”

Shìr xiăo.  xiăo shir
“The matter is small.” “small matter”

Yangzi lao. lao yangzi

“The appearance is old.” “old appearance, old way”

2. Transform the following verbs to the negative with \textit{bù}. Remember that before syllables in Tone Four, \textit{bù} changes from Tone Four to Tone Two to become \textit{bú}.

máng \quad \textit{bù máng} \quad “busy” “not busy”

jǐnzhāng \quad \textit{bù jǐnzhāng} \quad “nervous” “not nervous”

lèi \quad \textit{bú lèi} \quad “tired” “not tired”

xiǎo \quad \textit{bù xiǎo} \quad “little” “not little”
3. Change the following sentences into the negative by adding **bù** or **bú**.

**Wǒ huí sùshè.**

**Wǒ bù huí sùshè.**
“I’m going back to the dormitory.”

Tāmen hǎo ma?  Tāmen bù hǎo ma?

“Are they well?”

Nǐ háizi lèi ma?  Nǐ háizi bù lèi ma?

“Is your child tired?”

Nǐmen hěn máng.  Nǐmen bù hěn máng.

“You are very busy.”

Bàba qù gōngzuò.  Bàba bú qù gōngzuò.

“Father goes to work.”

Xuéxí Zhōngwén nán ma?  Xuéxí Zhōngwén bù nán ma?

“Is learning Chinese hard?”

4. Change the following statements into questions by using the positive-negative question pattern.
Tā qù.  Tā qù bu qù?

“She is going.”  “Is she going or not?”

Nǐ hěn kùn.  Nǐ kùn bu kùn?

“You are sleepy.”  “Are you sleepy or not?”

Tāmen hěn máng.  Tāmen máng bu máng?

“They are busy.”  “Are they busy or not?”

Bàba hěn lèi.  Bàba lèi bu lèi?

“Dad is tired.”  “Is Dad tired or not?”

Māma hěn gāo.  Māma gāo bu gāo?

“Mom is tall.”  “Is Mom tall or not?”

Tā hěn hăo.  Tā hăo bu hăo?

“He is good.”  “Is he good or not?”
Zhōngwén hěn nán. Zhōngwén nán bu nán?

“Chinese is hard.” “Is Chinese hard or not?”

5. Convert the following ma questions into positive-negative questions.

Nǐ zuìjìn hǎo ma? Nǐ zuìjìn hǎo bu hǎo?

“Have you been well “Have you been well recently or not?”

Tā qù túshūguǎn ma? Tā qù bu qù túshūguǎn?

“Does he go to the “Does he go to the library or not?”

Zhōngwén róngyi ma? Zhōngwén róngyi bu róngyi?

“Is Chinese easy?” “Is Chinese easy or not?”

Nǐ gōngzuò jǐnzhāng ma? Nǐ gōngzuò jǐnzhāng bu jǐnzhāng?

“Is your work intense?” “Is your work intense or not?”
Tā àirén āi ma? Tā àirén āi bu āi?

“Is her spouse short?” “Is her spouse short or not?”

Nǐmen qù shí táng ma? Nǐmen qù bu qù shí táng?

“Do you go to the cafeteria?” “Do you go to the cafeteria or not?”

6. First listen to each comment about Xiăo Wáng, then make a comment about yourself using bú tài.

Xiăo Wáng hĕn kùn. Wŏ bú tài kùn.

“Little Wang is very sleepy.” “I am not too sleepy.”

Xiăo Wáng hĕn lèi. Wŏ bú tài lèi.

“Little Wang is very tired.” “I am not too tired.”

Xiăo Wáng hĕn gāo. Wŏ bú tài gāo.

“Little Wang is very tall.” “I am not too tall.”

Xiăo Wáng zuijin hĕn hăo. Wŏ zuijin bú tài hăo.
“Little Wang has been very well “I have not been too well recently.”

Xiao Wang hen lao. Wǒ bu tai lao.

“Little Wang is very old.” “I am not too old.”

Xiao Wang gongzuo hen Wǒ gongzuo bu tai jinzhang. jinzhang.

“Little Wang is very nervous at work.” “I am not too nervous at work.”

7. Transform the following sentences from the hen + STATATIVE VERB pattern to the tīng...-de pattern.

Ta hên kun. Tā tīng kùnde.

“He is very sleepy.” “He is quite sleepy.”

Zhongwen hên nán. Zhōngwén tīng nán de.

“Chinese is very hard.” “Chinese is quite hard.”

Wǒ māma hên máng. Wǒ māma tīng mángde.
“My mother is very busy.”  “My mother is quite busy.”

Nǐ àirén hĕn āi.  Nǐ àirén tīng āide.

“Your spouse is very short.”  “Your spouse is quite short.”

Tā bàba hĕn lăo.  Tā bàba tīng lăode.

“Her father is very old.”  “Her father is quite old.”

Nǐ yàngzi hĕn jīnzhāng.  Nǐ yàngzi tīng jīnzhāngde.

“You look like you’re very nervous.”  “You look like you’re quite nervous.”

Tā zuìjìn gōngzuò hĕn lèi.  Tā zuìjìn gōngzuò tīng lèide.

“He is very tired from work lately.”  “He is quite tired from work lately.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 1, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add the surname and title of the wife to the husband’s surname and title.
Zhào Xiānsheng  Zhào Xiānsheng, Zhào Tàitai.

“Mr. Zhao”    “Mr. and Mrs. Zhao”

Gāo Xiānsheng  Gāo Xiānsheng, Gāo Tàitai.

“Mr. Gao”    “Mr. and Mrs. Gao”

Wáng Xiānsheng  Wáng Xiānsheng, Wáng Tàitai

“Mr. Wang”    “Mr. and Mrs. Wang”

Kē Xiānsheng  Kē Xiānsheng, Kē Tàitai

“Mr. Ke”    “Mr. and Mrs. Ke”

Lín Xiānsheng  Lín Xiānsheng, Lín Tàitai

“Mr. Lin”    “Mr. and Mrs. Lin”

Xiè Xiānsheng  Xiè Xiānsheng, Xiè Tàitai

“Mr. Xie”    “Mr. and Mrs. Xie”

2. Add the title Xiáojie to each of the following surnames.

438
Wáng  Wáng Xiáojie

“Wang” “Miss/Ms. Wang”

Lín  Lín Xiáojie

“Lin” “Miss/Ms. Lin”

Hé  Hé Xiáojie

“He” “Miss/Ms. He”

Xiè  Xiè Xiáojie

“Xie” “Miss/Ms. Xie”

Gāo  Gāo Xiáojie

“Gao” “Miss/Ms. Gao”

Zhào  Zhào Xiáojie

“Zhao” “Miss/Ms. Zhao”

3. Add the title Lǎoshī to each of the following surnames.
Lin Lin Lǎoshī

“Lin” “Teacher Lin”

Xiè Xiè Lǎoshī

“Xie” “Teacher Xie”

Gāo Gāo Lǎoshī

“Gao” “Teacher Gao”

Zhào Zhào Lǎoshī

“Zhao” “Teacher Zhao”

Hé Hé Lǎoshī

“He” “Teacher He”

Wáng Wáng Lǎoshī

“Wang” “Teacher Wang”
4. Add qǐng to the following sentences to create polite imperatives.

Nǐ qù shí táng. Qǐng nǐ qù shí táng.
“You go to the cafeteria.” “Please go to the cafeteria.”

Nǐ qù gōng zuò. Qǐng nǐ qù gōng zuò.
“You go work.” “Please go work.”

Tā huí sūshè. Qǐng tā huí sūshè.
“He goes back to the dormitory.” “Ask him to please go back to the dormitory.”

Nǐmen qù túshūguǎn bàn yìdiānr shì. Qǐng nǐmen qù túshūguǎn bàn yìdiānr shì.
“You go to the library and take care of some stuff.” “Please go to the library and take care of some stuff.”

Tāmen xiān zǒu. Qǐng tāmen xiān zǒu.
“They leave earlier.” “Ask them to please leave earlier.”
5. Add changed status le to the following sentences.

**Wǒ dĕi qù gōngzuò.**  
Wǒ dĕi qù gōngzuòle.

“I have to go to work.”  
“I have to go to work now.”

**Tā zĕmmeyàng?**  
Tā zĕmmeyàng le?

“How is he?”  
“What happened to him?”

**Tā xiān zŏu.**  
Tā xiān zŏule.

“She leaves earlier.”  
“She left earlier already.”

**Xiăo Lín qù shîtáng.**  
Xiăo Lín qù shîtáng le.

“Little Lin goes to the cafeteria.”  
“Little Lin went to the cafeteria.”

**Shéi bú qù?**  
Shéi bú qûle?

“Who is not going?”  
“Who is not going now?”

**Tāmen huí sùshè.**  
Tāmen huí sùshè le.
“They go back to the dormitory.”

“They went back to the dormitory.”

6. Add changed status le to the following questions ending in ma.

Tā māma hǎo ma? Tā māma hǎole ma?

“Is her mother well?” “Has her mother gotten well?”

Nǐ jǐnzhāng ma? Nǐ jǐnzhāngle ma?

“Are you nervous?” “Have you gotten nervous?”

Wǒmen kěyǐ huí sùshè ma? Wǒmen kěyǐ huí sùshè le ma?

“Can we go back to the dormitory?” “Can we go back to the dormitory now?”

Tā qù túshūguǎn bàn shì ma? Tā qù túshūguǎn bàn shì le ma?

“Is he going to the library to take care of some stuff?” “Has he gone to the library to take care of some stuff?”
Háizi kùn ma?  Háizi kùnle ma?

“Are the kids sleepy?”  “Have the kids gotten sleepy?”

Nĭmen qù shítáng ma?  Nĭmen qù shítáng le ma?

“Are you going to the“Have you gone to the
cafeteria?”  cafeteria?”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 2, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Respond to the following questions with an equative verb sentence beginning with shì.

Tā shì Měiguó rén ma?  Shì, tā shì Měiguó rén.

“Is she American?”  “Yes, she is American.”

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma? Shì, tā shì Zhōngguó rén.

“Is he Chinese?”  “Yes, he is Chinese.”

Tā shì Wáng Lăoshī ma? Shì, tā shì Wáng Lăoshī.
“Is she Teacher Wang?”  “Yes, she is Teacher Wang.”

Tā shì nǐ àirén ma?  Shì, tā shì wǒ àirén.

“Is he your spouse?”  “Yes, he is my spouse.”

Nǐ shì tā bàba ma?  Shì, wǒ shì tā bàba.

“Are you her father?”  “Yes, I am her father.”

Nǐ shì tā māma ma?  Shì, wǒ shì tā māma.

“Are you his mother?”  “Yes, I am his mother.”

2. Respond to the following questions with a negative equative verb sentence beginning with bú shì.

Nǐ shì Zhōngwén lăoshī Bú shì, wǒ bú shì Zhōngwén lăoshī.

“Are you a Chinese teacher?”  “No, I am not a Chinese teacher.”

Nǐ shì Lín Xiáojie ma?  Bú shì, wǒ bú shì Lín Xiáojie.
“Are you Ms. Lin?”  “No, I am not Ms. Lin.”


“Are you all Canadian?”  “No, we’re not Canadian.”

Tā shì Wáng Xiānsheng ma? Bú shì, tā bú shì Wáng Xiānsheng.

“Is he Mr. Wang?”  “No, he’s not Mr. Wang.”

3. Respond to the following questions either with an equative verb sentence beginning with Shì or with a negative equative verb sentence beginning with Bú shì, depending on the cue provided.

Tā shì nǐ bàba ma? (Shì.)  Shi, tā shì wǒ bàba.

“Is he your dad?” (“Yes.”)  “Yes, he is my dad.”

Tā shì nǐ māma ma? (Bú shì.)  Bú shì, tā bú shì wǒ māma.

“Is she your mom?” (“No.”)  “No, she’s not my mom.”
Qǐng wèn, nǐ shì Bái Lǎoshī Bú shì, wǒ bù shì Bái ma? (Bú shì.) Lǎoshī.

“Excuse me, are you Teacher Bai?” (Bú shì.) “No, I’m not Teacher Bai.”

Tā shì Huáyì Měiguó rén ma? (Shì.) Shi, tā shì Huáyì Měiguó rén.

“Is he an American of Chinese descent?” (Yes.) “Yes, he’s an American of Chinese descent.”

Nǐmen shì Táiwān rén ma? (Bú Bú shì, wǒmen bù shì shi.) Táiwān rén.

“Are you Taiwanese?” (No.) “No, we’re not Taiwanese.”

4. Transform the following statements into questions using shì bu shì.

Tā shì Riběn rén. Tā shì bu shì Riběn rén?

“He is Japanese.” “Is he Japanese?”

Nǐ shì tā àirén. Nǐ shì bu shì tā àirén?
“You are her spouse.”  “Are you her spouse?”

Nǐmen shì Xībānyá rén.  Nǐmen shì bu shì Xībānyá rén?

“You are Spanish.”  “Are you Spanish?”

Tā shì Wáng Xiáojie.  Tā shì bu shì Wáng Xiáojie?

“She is Miss Wang.”  “Is she Miss Wang?”

Nǐ zuìjìn hěn máng.  Nǐ zuìjìn shì bu shì hěn máng?

“You have been very busy recently.”  “Have you been very busy lately?”

Tā dào túshūguǎn qù.  Tā shì bu shì dào túshūguǎn qù?

“He is going to the library.”  “Is it the case that he’s going to the library?”

5. Answer the following questions about nationality using the cues provided.

Tā shì nēiguó rén? (Jiā’nádà rén)  Tā shì Jiā’nádà rén.
“What nationality is he?” “He’s Canadian.”

Nǐ àirén shì nèiguó rén? (Ribĕn rén) Tā shì Ribĕn rén.

“What nationality is your spouse?” “She’s Japanese.”

Nín shì nèiguó rén? (Mēiguó rén) Wǒ shì Mēiguó rén.

“What nationality are you?” “I’m American.”

Mǎ Xiáojie shì nèiguó rén? (Zhōngguó Mǎ Xiáojie shì rén) Zhōngguó rén.

“What nationality is Ms. Ma?” “Ms. Ma is Chinese.”

Xiăo Lín shì nèiguó rén? (Măláixīyà Xiăo Lín shì rén) Măláixīyà rén.

“What nationality is Little Lin?” “Little Lin is Malaysian.”

Nǐ lăoshī shì nèiguó rén? (Xīnjiăpō Wǒ lăoshī shì rén) Xīnjiăpō rén.
“What nationality is your teacher?” “My teacher is Singaporean.”

6. Respond to the following questions about someone’s name using the cues provided.

Tā jiào shémme míngzi? (Hé Zhìwén) Tā jiào Hé Zhìwén.

“What is his name?” “He is called He Zhiwen.”

Nǐ àirén jiào shémme míngzi? Wǒ àirén jiào Wáng Dàmíng.

“What is your spouse’s name?” “My spouse is called Wang Daming.”

Nǐ māma jiào shémme míngzi? Wǒ māma jiào Xiè Wéntíng.

“What is your mom’s name?” “My mom’s name is Xie Wenting.”

Nǐ bàba jiào shémme míngzi? Wǒ bàba jiào Zhào Guólì.

(Zhào Guólì)
“What is your dad’s name?”
“My dad’s name is Zhao Guoli.”

Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi? (give your own name)
Wǒ jiào...

“What is your name?”
“My name is...”

7. Negate the following sentences by placing a bù before the dōu.

Tāmen dōu shì Zhōngguó
Tāmen bù dōu shì Zhōngguó rén.

“They are all Chinese.”
“They are not all Chinese.”

Tāmen dōu hěn kùn.
Tāmen bù dōu hěn kùn.

“They are all very sleepy.”
“They are not all very sleepy.”

Wǒmen dōu huí sùshè.
Wǒmen bù dōu huí sùshè.

“We are all going back to the dorm.”
“We are not all going back to the dorm.”
Wǒmen dōu shi Huáyì Wǒmen bù dōu shi Huáyì Mĕiguo rén. Mĕiguo rén.

“We are all” “We are not all Chinese-Americans.” Chinese-Americans.”

Nǐmen dōu shi hăo háizi! Nǐmen bù dōu shi hăo háizi!

“You are all good children!” “You are not all good children!”

Dōu shi xiăo shì. Bù dōu shi xiăo shì.

“They are all small matters.” “They are not all small matters.”

8. Disagree with your interlocutor. Answer “It’s not THIS person, it’s THAT person!” etc.

Shì zhèige rén ma? Bú shì zhèige rén, shi nèige rén!

“Is it this person?” “It’s not this person, it’s that person!”

Shì zhèige háizi ma? Bú shì zhèige háizi, shi nèige háizi!
“Was it this kid?”  “It wasn’t this kid, it was that kid!”

Shì zhèiwèi lǎoshī ma?  Bú shì zhèiwèi lǎoshī, shì nèiwèi lǎoshī!

“Is it this teacher?”  “It isn’t this teacher, it’s that teacher!”

Shì zhèiwèi tóngxué Bú shì zhèiwèi tóngxué, shì nèiwèi tóngxué!

“Is it this “It isn’t this classmate, it’s that classmate!”

Shì zhèige míngzi ma?  Bú shì zhèige míngzi, shì nèige míngzi!

“Was it this name?”  “It wasn’t this name, it was that name!”

Shì zhèige sùshè ma?  Bú shì zhèige sùshè, shì nèige sùshè!

“Was it this “It wasn’t this dormitory, it was that dormitory!”

9. Respond to the questions with něi- “which?” by using nèi- “that.”
Shì něige rén?  Shì nèige rén!

“Which person was it?” “It was that person!”

Shì něige háizi?  Shì nèige háizi!

“Which child was it?” “It was that child!”

Shì něiwèi lăoshī?  Shì nèiwèi lăoshī!

“Which teacher is it?” “It’s that teacher!”

Shì něiwèi tóngxué?  Shì nèiwèi tóngxué!

“Which classmate is it?” “It’s that classmate!”

Shì něige gōngzuò?  Shì nèige gōngzuò!

“Which job was it?” “It was that job!”

Shì něige shítáng?  Shì nèige shítáng!

“Which dining hall was it?” “It was that dining hall!”
10. Confirm the truth of what your interlocutor says about the first person by repeating it, but add the new and different information about the other person that is given in the cue by using kĕshi.

Lăo Wáng shì Mĕiguó rén. Lăo Wáng shì Mĕiguó rén, kĕshi (Xiăo Lín, Măláixīyà rén) Xiăo Lín shì Măláixīyà rén.

“Old Wang is American.” “Old Wang is American, but ("Little Lin, Malaysian") Little Lin is Malaysian.”

Lăo Bái shì Mĕiguó rén. Lăo Bái shì Mĕiguó rén, kĕshi (Xiăo Hé, Xībānyá rén) Xiăo Hé shì Xībānyá rén.

“Old Bai is American.” “Old Bai is American, but Little ("Little He, Spanish") He is Spanish.”


“Old Gao is Chinese.” “Old Gao is Chinese, but Little ("Little Zhao, Japanese") Zhao is Japanese.”

Lăo Lĭ shì Táiwān rén. Lăo Lĭ shì Táiwān rén, kĕshi (Xiăo Kē, Xīnjiāpō rén) Xiăo Kē shì Xīnjiāpō rén.
“Old Li is Taiwanese.” “Old Li is Taiwanese, but Little (“Little Ke, Singaporean”) Ke is Singaporean.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 2, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Combine the first noun or pronoun with the noun that follows by adding -de.

wǒ, àirén wǒde àirén

“I, spouse” “my spouse”

Lǎo Chén, tóngxué Lǎo Chénde tóngxué

“Old Chen, classmate” “Old Chen’s classmate”

tā, bàba tāde bàba

“he/she, father” “his/her father”

nǐmen, sùshè nǐmende sùshè

“you all, dormitory” “your dormitory”
tāmen, māma  tāmende māma

“they, mother”  “their mother”

Zhào tóngxué, tóngwū  Zhào tóngxuéde tóngwū

“classmate Zhao, roommate” “classmate Zhao’s roommate”

2. Transform the sentences with lái or qù followed directly by a place word to the dào...lái or dào...qù pattern.

Hěn gāoxìng nǐ lái Běijīng!  Hěn gāoxìng nǐ dào Běijīng lái!

“I’m glad you’ve come to Beijing!”

Huānyíng nǐ lái Táiwān!  Huānyíng nǐ dào Táiwān lái!

“Welcome to Taiwan!”

Qǐng nǐ qù wǒde sūshè.  Qǐng nǐ dào wǒde sūshè qù.

“Please go to my dormitory.”  “Please go to my dormitory.”
Búyào qù túshūguǎn!  Búyào dào túshūguǎn qù!
“Don’t go to the library!”  “Don’t go to the library!”
Tā qù Riběn le.  Tā dào Riběn qùle.
“He went to Japan.”  “He has gone to Japan.”
Nǐ yīnggāi lái wǒde gōngsī.  Nǐ yīnggāi dào wǒde gōngsī lái.
“You should come to my” “You should come to my company.”
company.”

3. Change the following imperative sentences to negative imperatives by using bié.

Qīng nǐ qù gōngzuò.  Qīng nǐ bié qù gōngzuò.
“Please go to work.”  “Please don’t go to work.”
Qīng tāmen lái Táiwān.  Qīng tāmen bié lái Táiwān.
“Ask them to come to” “Ask them not to come to Taiwan.”
Taiwan.”
Chén Xiáojie, qǐng zuò. Chén Xiáojie, qǐng bié zuò.

“Miss Chen, please sit.” “Miss Chen, please don’t sit.”

Bàba, qǐng zǒu. Bàba, qǐng bié zǒu.

“Father, please go.” “Father, please don’t go.”

Qǐng nínmen jiào wǒ Lăo Qǐng nínmen bié jiào wǒ Lăo Chén.

“You all please call me Old “You all please don’t call me Old Chen.”

4. Change the following negative imperative sentences with búyào to positive imperatives by deleting the búyào.

Qǐng nǐ búyào qù túshūguǎn. Qǐng nǐ qù túshūguǎn.

“Please don’t go to the library.” “Please go to the library.”

Qǐng nǐ búyào huí sùshè. Qǐng nǐ huí sùshè.

“Please don’t go back to the dormitory.” “Please go back to the dormitory.”
Qǐng tāmen búyào lái Mĕiguo. Qǐng tāmen lái Mĕiguo.

“Ask them not to come to the States.”

Qǐng nǐmen búyào qù Zhōngguo. Qǐng nǐmen qù Zhōngguo.

“Please don’t go to China.”

Qǐng nǐ búyào zèmme chēnghu wŏ. Qǐng nǐ zèmme chēnghu wŏ.

“Please don’t address me in this way.”

Qǐng nǐmen búyào qù gōngzuò. Qǐng nǐmen qù gōngzuò.

“Please don’t go to work.”

5. Respond to each question using the cue provided.

Zhè shì shéide lǎoshī? (wŏde) Zhè shì wŏde lǎoshī.

“This is whose teacher?” (“my”) “This is my teacher.”
Zhè shì shéide háizi? (nǐde)  Zhè shì nǐde háizi.

“Whose kid is this?” (“your”)  “This is your kid.”

Zhè shì shéide bàba? (tāmende)  Zhè shì tāmende bàba.

“Whose father is this?” (“their”)  “This is their father.”

Nà shì shéide àirén? (wǒde)  Nà shì wǒde àirén.

“Whose spouse is that?” (“my”)  “That is my spouse.”

Nà shì shéide māma? (tāmende)  Nà shì tāmende māma.

“Whose mother is that?” (“their”)  “That is their mother.”

Zhè shì shéide tóngxué? (nǐmende)  Zhè shì nǐmende tóngxué.

“Whose classmate is this?” (“your”)  “This is your classmate.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 2, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

461
1. Transform the polite questions with guìxìng to more ordinary questions with xìng shémme. Remember also to change polite nín to ordinary nĭ.

Nín guìxìng? Nǐ xìng shémme?

“What’s your last name?” “What’s your last name?”

Nèiwèi nǚshì guìxìng? Nèiwèi nǚshì xìng shémme?

“What’s that lady’s last name?”

Nèiwèi lăoshī guìxìng? Nèiwèi lăoshī xìng shémme?

“What’s that teacher’s last name?”

Qĭng wèn, xiáojie, nín Qĭng wèn, xiáojie, nĭ xìng guìxìng?

“Excuse me, Miss, what’s your last name?” “Excuse me, Miss, what’s your last name?”

Zhèiwèi dàxué xiàozhăng Zhèiwèi dàxué xiàozhăng xìng shémme?

462
“What’s this college president’s last name?”

2. Explain that, by golly, your roommate, classmate, colleague, etc. has the same surname as the speaker’s!

Wǒde tóngwū xìng Gāo.  Wǒde tóngwū yĕ xìng Gāo!

“My roommate’s last name is Gao.”

Wǒde tóngxué xìng Lín.  Wǒde tóngxué yĕ xìng Lín!

“My classmate’s last name is Lin.”

Wǒde tóngshì xìng Chén.  Wǒde tóngshì yĕ xìng Chén!

“My colleague’s last name is Chen.”

Wǒde Zhōngwén lăoshī xìng Wǒde Zhōngwén lǎoshī yĕ xìng Wú.  Wú!

“My Chinese teacher’s last name is Wu.”

463
Wǒ māma xìng Mă.  Wǒ māma yĕ xìng Mă!

“My mom’s last name is “My mom’s last name is also Ma.”

Wŏmende xiàozhăng xìng Wŏmende xiàozhăng yĕ xìng Hé.  Hé!

“Our college president’s surname is He.” “Our college president’s surname is also He!”

3. Add ba to the following sentences to indicate that you think what you said is probably so.

Nǐ yĕ shì láoshī.  Nǐ yĕ shì láoshī ba?

“You are a teacher, too.” “You are a teacher too, I guess?”

Tā shì nǐde tónghši.  Tā shì nǐde tónghši ba?

“She is your co-worker.” “She is your co-worker, I suppose?”

Xiăo Zhăo bú shi Xiăo Zhăo bú shi Zhōngguo rén Zhōngguo rén.  ba?
“Little Zhao is not Chinese.”

Nǐ zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò. Nǐ zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò ba?

“You work at the Foreign Ministry.”

Chén Xiáojie shì Mǎláixīyà rén ba?

“Miss Chen is Malaysian.”

Tāmen bú rènshi nǐ. Tāmen bú rènshi nǐ ba?

“They are not acquainted with you.”

4. Respond to the following questions using the cue provided.

Nǐ zài nǎr gōngzuò a? (shítáng) Wǒ zài shítáng gōngzuò.

“Where do you work?”

(“cafeteria”)

“I work at the cafeteria.”
Nǐmen zài nǎr gōngzuò a? Wǒmen zài dàshǐguǎn (dàshǐguǎn) gōngzuò.

“Where do you all work?” “We work at the embassy.”

Tā zài nǎr gōngzuò a? (dàxué) Tā zài dàxué gōngzuò.

“Where does she work?” “She works at the university.”

Tāmen zài nǎr gōngzuò a? Tāmen zài túshūguǎn (túshūguǎn) gōngzuò.

“Where do they work?” “They work at the library.”

Xiǎo Chén zài nǎr gōngzuò a? Xiǎo Chén zài gōngsī (gōngsī) gōngzuò.

“Where does Little Chen work?” “Little Chen works at the company.”

Lǎo Zhào zài nǎr gōngzuò a? Lǎo Zhào zài Wàijiāobù (Wàijiāobù) gōngzuò.
“Where does Old Zhao work?” “Old Zhao works at the ("Foreign Ministry") Foreign Ministry.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 2, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Transform the following sentences from bù to past negative with méi.

Wŏ bù lái. Wŏ méi lái.

“I’m not coming.” “I didn’t come.”

Wŏ bù zŏu. Wŏ méi zŏu.

“I’m not leaving.” “I didn’t leave.”

Wŏ bú dài míngpiàn. Wŏ méi dài míngpiàn.

“I don’t carry name cards.” “I didn’t carry name cards.”

Tā bú qù Zhōngguo. Tā méi qù Zhōngguo.

“She’s not going to China.” “She didn’t go to China.”
Nǐ yě bú wèn zěmme qù. Nǐ yě méi wèn zěmme qù.

“And you don’t ask how to go.” “And you didn’t ask how to go.”

Nǐmen bù huí sùshè ma? Nǐmen méi huí sùshè ma?

“You’re not going back to the dorm?” “You didn’t go back to the dorm?”

Nǐmen bú qù gōngsī ma? Nǐmen méi qù gōngsī ma?

“You’re not going to the company?” “You didn’t go to the company?”

2. Transform the following sentences with the coverb zài describing where someone works to noun phrases with -de that indicate a person’s affiliation.

Nèiwèi Shī Xiáojie zài Zhōng-Mĕi Màoyì Gōngsī de nèiwèi Shī Xiáojie gōngzuò.

“That Miss Shi works at the Sino-American Trading company”

Trading Company.”
Nèiwèi Mă Xiáojie zài Mĕiguo Dàshīguăn gōngzuò.

“That Ms. Ma works at the American Embassy.”

Nèiwèi Hé Lăoshī zài Táiwān Dàxuéde nèiwèi Hé Táiwān Dàxué gōngzuò. Lăoshī

“That Prof. He works at Taiwan University.”

Nèiwèi Wú Xiáojie zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò. Wàijī

“That Miss Wu works at the Foreign Ministry.”

3. Transform the sentences with bù dōu to dōu bù.

Tāmen bù dōu shi Riběn rén. Tāmen dōu bù shi Riběn rén.

“They are not all Japanese.” “They all are not Japanese.”
Wǒmen bù dōu zài Wàijiāobù Wǒmen dōu bù zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò.

“We don’t all work at the Foreign Ministry.”

Tāmen bù dōu rènshì Wáng Tāmen dōu bù rènshì Wáng Xiáojie.

“They don’t all know Ms. Wang.”

Wǒmen bù dōu xuéxí Wǒmen dōu bù xuéxí Zhōngwén.

“We don’t all learn Chinese.”

Tāmen bù dōu huānyíng wǒ Tāmen dōu bù huānyíng wǒ dào Běijīng qù.

“Not all of them welcome me to go to Beijing.”

4. Transform the expressions with zhèi- to nèi- and also add yě.
Zhèiwèi xiānsheng xìng Wáng.
Nèiwèi xiānsheng yĕ xìng Wáng.

“This gentleman’s last name is Wang.”
“That gentleman’s last name is also Wang.”

Zhèiwèi tàitai xìng Bái.
Nèiwèi tàitai yĕ xìng Bái.

“This lady’s last name is Bai.”
“That lady’s last name is also Bai.”

Zhèiwèi xiáojie xìng Lín.
Nèiwèi xiáojie yĕ xìng Lín.

“This young lady’s last name is Lin.”
“That young lady’s last name is also Lin.”

Zhèige háizi hĕn lèi.
Nèige háizi yĕ hĕn lèi.

“This child is very tired.”
“That child is also very tired.”

Zhèiwèi jīnglĭ hĕn gāoxìng.
Nèiwèi jīnglĭ yĕ hĕn gāoxìng.

“This manager is very happy.”
“That manager is also very happy.”
Zhèige Měiguó rén wŏ bù rènshì. Nèige Měiguó rén wŏ yĕ bù rènshì.

“I don’t know this “I don’t know that American American.”

Zhèige dáxué hĕn xīn. Nèige dáxué yĕ hĕn xīn.

“This university is very “That university is also very new.”

5. Use gēn to join the second noun or pronoun to the first noun or pronoun.

wŏ (nĭ) wŏ gēn nĭ

“I” (“you”) “I and you”

wŏ (tā) wŏ gēn tā

“I” (“he”) “I and he”

wŏmen (nĭmen) wŏmen gēn nĭmen

“we” (“you”) “we and you”
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese (Simplified)</th>
<th>Chinese (Traditional)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wǒmen (tāmen)</td>
<td>wǒmen gēn tāmen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“we” (&quot;they&quot;)</td>
<td>“we and they”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lăo Lĭ (Xiăo Bái)</td>
<td>Lăo Lĭ gēn Xiăo Bái</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Old Li” (&quot;Little Bai&quot;)</td>
<td>“Old Li and Little Bai”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àirén (háizi)</td>
<td>àirén gēn háizi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“spouse” (&quot;child&quot;)</td>
<td>“spouse and child”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiānsheng (tàitai)</td>
<td>xiānsheng gēn tàitai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“husband” (&quot;wife&quot;)</td>
<td>“husband and wife”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguo (Táiwān)</td>
<td>Zhōngguo gēn Táiwān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Mainland China” (&quot;Taiwan&quot;)</td>
<td>“Mainland China and Taiwan”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguo rén (Mĕiguo rén)</td>
<td>Zhōngguo rén gēn Mĕiguo rén</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Chinese” (&quot;Americans&quot;)</td>
<td>“Chinese and Americans”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. Transform each phrase or sentence that you hear into a politer equivalent.

Nǐ hǎo!  Nín hǎo!

“How are you?”  “How do you do?”

Nǐ xìng shénme?  Nín guixing?

“What’s your last name?”  “What is your honorable surname?”

zhèige xiānsheng  zhèiwèi xiānsheng

“this man”  “this gentleman”

nèige tàitai  nèiwèi tàitai

“that lady”  “that lady”

Něige xiáojie?  Něiwèi xiáojie?

“Which young woman?”  “Which young lady?”

zhèige xiàozhǎng  zhèiwèi xiàozhǎng
“this school principal”

nèige zǒngjīnglǐ

“that general manager”

Něige nǚshì?

“Which lady?”

yíge lăoshī

“a teacher”

nèiwèi zǒngjīnglǐ

Něiwèi nǚshì?

“Which lady?”

yíwèi lăoshī

“a teacher”
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 3, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Say the number that comes after the number you hear.

liù  qī
“six”  “seven”

jiǔ  shí
“nine”  “ten”

yī  èr
“one”  “two”

sì  wǔ
“four”  “five”

qī  bā
“seven”  “eight”
èr  sān
“two”  “three”

bā  jiǔ
“eight”  “nine”

sān  sì
“three”  “four”

wǔ  liù
“five”  “six”

2. Say the number that comes before the number you hear.

qī  liù
“seven”  “six”

shí  jiǔ
“ten”  “nine”
èr    yī
“two”  “one”
jiǔ    bā
“nine”  “eight”
wǔ    sì
“five”  “four”
sān    èr
“three”  “two”
liù    wǔ
“six”  “five”
bā    qī
“eight” “seven”

sì sān

“four” “three”

3. Comment that, in each case, you have one more student in your class than the speaker does.

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu jiǔge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu shíge tóngxué.

“Our class has nine “Our class has ten classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu liǎngge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sān’ge tóngxué.

“Our class has two “Our class has three classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu liùge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu qíge tóngxué.

“Our class has six classmates.” “Our class has seven classmates.”
Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sìge tóngxué.

“Our class has four classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu wǔge tóngxué.

“Our class has five classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sān’ge tóngxué.

“Our class has three classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu qíge tóngxué.

“Our class has seven classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu liùge tóngxué.

“Our class has six classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu báge tóngxué.

“Our class has eight classmates.”
“Our class has eight “Our class has nine classmates.” classmates.”

4. Comment that, in each case, the ratio of male students to female students in your class is the exact reverse of the speaker’s class.

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu liǎngge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu yīge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu yíge nánshēng, yīge nǚshēng. nánshēng, liǎngge nǚshēng. nánshēng, yīge nǚshēng.

“Our class has two guys, one “Our class has one guy, two “Our class has two guys, one girls.” girls.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sān’ge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sīge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sān’ge nánshēng, sīge nǚshēng. nánshēng, sān’ge nǚshēng.

“Our class has three guys, “Our class has four guys, “Our class has three guys, “Our class has four guys, four girls.” three girls.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu wǔge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu liùge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu wǔge nánshēng, liùge nǚshēng. nánshēng, wǔge nǚshēng.

“Our class has five guys, six “Our class has six guys, five “Our class has five guys, six girls.” girls.”
Wǒmen bānshang yǒu qíge nánshēng, báge nǚshēng.    nánshēng, qíge nǚshēng.

“Our class has seven guys, eight girls.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu jiǔge nánshēng, shíge nǚshēng.    nánshēng, jiǔge nǚshēng.

“Our class has nine guys, ten girls.”

5. Use the conjunction nà and the final particle ne to introduce the new topic indicated.

Tāmen bānshang yǒu shíge tóngxué. Nà, nǐmen bānshang (nǐmen bānshang) ne?

“Their class has ten classmates.” “And how about your (“your class”) class?”

Tā yǒu sānwèi Zhōngwén lăoshī. (nǐ) Nà, nǐ ne?

“He has three Chinese teachers.” “And what about (“you”) you?”
“Our company has two managers.” “And what about your company?”

“Her teachers are all male.” “And what about your teachers?”

“Her last name is Chen.” “And what about you?”

6. Convert the following Beijing-style pronunciations to non-Beijing-style pronunciations.

yìdiăn → yìdiānr

shì → shí
1. In answering the question, comment that you are, in each case, three years older than your interlocutor.

“I am sixteen this year. And you?” “I am nineteen this year.”

Wǒ jīnnián èrshiyīsuì. Nǐ ne? Wǒ jīnnián èrshíshìsuì.

“I am twenty-one this year. And “I am twenty-four this you?”

Wǒ jīnnián sānshibāsuì. Nǐ ne? Wǒ jīnnián sìshiyīsuì.

“I am thirty-eight this year. And “I am forty-one this you?”


“I am forty-five this year. And “I am forty-eight this you?”

Wǒ jīnnián wǔshiqīsuì. Nǐ ne? Wǒ jīnnián liùshìsuì.

“I am fifty-seven this year. And “I am sixty this year.”

“I am sixty-six this year. And “I am sixty-nine this year.”

2. In responding, comment that your mother is, in each case, six years younger than your interlocutor’s mother.

Wǒ mùqīn jīnnián sìshībāsuì le. Nǐ Wǒ mùqīn jīnnián mùqīn ne?
sishi’èrsuì le.

“My mother is 48 this year. And “My mother is 42 this year.”

Wǒ mùqīn jīnnián sānshíliùsuì le. Wǒ mùqīn jīnnián Nǐ mùqīn ne?
sānshisuì le.

“My mother is 36 this year. And “My mother is 30 this year.”

Wǒ mùqīn jīnnián wūshiqīsuì le. Nǐ Wǒ mùqīn jīnnián mùqīn ne?
wūshiyīsuì le.

“My mother is 57 this year. And “My mother is 51 this year.”

Wǒ mùqīn jīnnián bāshíliùsuì le. Nǐ Wǒ mùqīn jīnnián mùqīn ne? bāshisuì le.
“My mother is 86 this year. And “My mother is 80 this year.”

Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián qīshiwǔsuì le. Nǐ Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián mǔqīn ne? liùshijīǔsuì le.

“My mother is 75 this year. And “My mother is 69 this year.”

Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián liùshísānsuì le. Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián Nǐ mǔqīn ne? wǔshiqīsuì le.

“My mother is 63 this year. And “My mother is 57 this year.”

3. Reduplicate each single-syllable verb and add kàn.

Nǐ zuò. Nǐ zuòzuò kàn.

“You sit.” “Try and sit on it.”

Nǐ shuō. Nǐ shuōshuo kàn.

“You say.” “Try and say it.”
Nǐ tīng.  Nǐ tīngting kàn.

“You listen.” “Try and listen to it.”

Nǐ xiǎng.  Nǐ xiǎngxiang kàn.

“You think.” “Try and think of it/something.”

Nǐ wèn.  Nǐ wènwen kàn.

“You ask.” “Try and ask.”

Nǐ cāi.  Nǐ cāicai kàn.

“You guess.” “Try and guess.”

4. Replace the final ba that indicates supposition with the tag question duì bu dui.

Zhè shì nǐ mèimei ba?  Zhè shì nǐ mèimei, duì bu dui?

“This is your sister, I suppose?” “This is your sister, right?”
Tā hěn ài tā xiānshēng ba?  Tā hěn ài tā xiānshēng, dui bu dui?

“She loves her husband, I suppose?”

Nǐmen dōu shì Rìběn rén ba?  Nǐmen dōu shì Rìběn rén, dui bu dui?

“You are all Japanese, I suppose?”

Tāmen de fùqín wǔshí suì le ba?  Tāmen de fùqín wǔshí suì le, dui bu dui?

“Our father is fifty, I suppose?”

Nèiwèi xiáojie shì Lín Xiáojie ba?  Nèiwèi xiáojie shì Lín Xiáojie, dui bu dui?

“That young lady is Ms. Lin, I suppose?”

Zhèiwèi shì nǐ gēge ba?  Zhèiwèi shì nǐ gēge, dui bu dui?
“This is your brother, I suppose?”

5. Replace the final ba that indicates supposition with the tag question shì bu shi.

Tā shì nǐ fùqìn ba? Tā shì nǐ fùqìn, shì bu shì?

“He’s your father, I suppose?” “He’s your father, isn’t he?”

Wǒmen hěn kě’ài ba? Wǒmen hěn kě’ài, shì bu shì?

“We’re very cute, I suppose?” “We’re very cute, aren’t we?”

Wáng Jīnglĭ sìshisù le ba? Wáng Jīnglĭ sìshisù le, shì bu shì?

“Manager Wang is forty years old, I suppose?”

Tā xiǎng qù Zhōngguo ba? Tā xiǎng qù Zhōngguo, shì bu shì?

“He wants to go to China, I suppose?”

“He wants to go to China, doesn’t he?”
Nîmen lèile ba?  Nîmen lèile, shì bu shì?

“You’re tired, I suppose?”  “You’re tired, aren’t you?”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 3, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Answer each nèige question with nèige.

Nèige shítáng?  Nèige shítáng!

“Which cafeteria?”  “That cafeteria!"

Nèige túshūguăn?  Nèige túshūguăn!

“Which library?”  “That library!”

Nèige dâshīguăn?  Nèige dâshīguăn!

“Which embassy?”  “That embassy!”

Nèige gōngshìbāo?  Nèige gōngshìbāo!

“Which briefcase?”  “That briefcase!”
“Which bag?” “That bag!”

“Which cup?” “That cup!”

2. Now answer each něige question with zhèige.

Něige dānwèi? Zhèige dānwèi.

“Which unit?” “This unit.”

Něige míngzi? Zhèige míngzi.

“Which name?” “This name.”

Něige bēibāo? Zhèige bēibāo.

“Which backpack?” “This backpack.”

Něige dàxué? Zhèige dàxué.

492
“Which college?”  “This college.”

Néige sùshè?  Zhèige sùshè.

“Which dormitory?”  “This dormitory.”

Néige bān?  Zhèige bān.

“Which class?”  “This class.”

3. Add le after each instance of tài + STATIVE VERB.

tài guì  Tài guile.

“too expensive”  “It’s too expensive.”

tài piányi  Tài piányile.

“too cheap”  “It’s too cheap.”

tài kě’ài  Tài kě’àile.

“too cute”  “It’s too cute.”
tài gāoxing    Tài gāoxingle.
“too happy” “She’s too happy.”
tài xiăo    Tài xiăole.
“too small” “It’s too small.”
tài lèi    Tài lèile.
“too tired” “I’m too tired.”
tài nán    Tài nánle.
“too hard” “It was too hard.”
tài yŏu yisi    Tài yŏu yisi le.
“too interesting” “It’s too interesting.”
tài méi yisi    Tài méi yisi le.
“too uninteresting” “It’s too uninteresting.”

4. Replicate the following single-syllable verbs.
kàn  kànkan

“look” “take a look”

shuō  shuōshuo

“say” “say something”

tīng  tīngting

“listen” “listen”

zuò  zuòzuo

“sit” “take a seat”

cāi  cāicai

“guess” “take a guess”

wèn  wènwen

“ask” “ask”

5. Add ba to the following sentences to create suggestions.
Nǐ qù. Nǐ qù ba.

“You go.” “Why don’t you go.”

Nǐ mǎi liǎngge. Nǐ mǎi liǎngge ba.

“You buy two.” “Why don’t you buy two?”

Wǒmen zǒu. Wǒmen zǒu ba.

“We go.” “Let’s go.”

Nǐmen huí sùshè. Nǐmen huí sùshè ba.

“You go back to the dormitory.” “Why don’t you go back to the dormitory.”

Xiǎo Wáng, nǐ bēizi gěi wǒ. Xiǎo Wáng, nǐ bēizi gěi wǒ ba.

“Little Wang, give me your cup.” “Little Wang, why don’t you give me your cup.”

Wǒmen qù shídāng. Wǒmen qù shídāng ba.
“We go to the cafeteria.” “Let’s go to the cafeteria.”

6. In each case, answer in the negative and state that you have 100 items more than the speaker thinks.

Nǐ yǒu yībāige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu liǎngbāige.

“Do you have a hundred?” “No, I have two hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu liǎngbāige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu sānbāige.

“No, I have three hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu sānbāige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu sìbāige.

“Do you have three hundred?” “No, I have four hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu sìbāige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu wǔbāige.

“No, I have five hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu wǔbāige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu liùbāige.

“Do you have five hundred?” “No, I have six hundred.”
Nǐ yǒu liùbāige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu qībāige.

“Do you have six hundred?” “No, I have seven hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu qībāige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu bābāige.

“Do you have seven hundred?” “No, I have eight hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu bābāige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu jiǔbāige.

“Do you have eight hundred?” “No, I have nine hundred.”

7. In each case, using zhǐ, answer in the negative and state that you have $1000 less than the speaker thinks.

Nǐ yǒu jiǔqiānkuài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu bāqiānkuài.

“Do you have nine thousand “No, I only have eight dollars?” thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu bāqiānkuài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu qīqiānkuài.

“Do you have eight thousand “No, I only have seven dollars?” thousand dollars.”
Nǐ yǒu qīqiānkuài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu liùqiānkuài.

“Do you have seven thousand “No, I only have six thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu liùqiānkuài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu wǔqiānkuài.

“Do you have six thousand “No, I only have five thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu wǔqiānkuài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu sìqiānkuài.

“Do you have five thousand “No, I only have four thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu sìqiānkuài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu sānqiānkuài.

“Do you have four thousand “No, I only have three thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu sānqiānkuài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu liǎngqiānkuài.
“Do you have three thousand dollars?”

“Do you have two thousand dollars?”

8. You will be asked if you and your colleagues at a second hand store buy a certain type of item. Explain that you don’t buy this type of item, but you do sell them.

Nǐ yǒu liǎngqiānkuài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu yiqiānkuài.

“Do you have two thousand dollars?”

Nǐmen mǎi bēizi Wǒmen bù mǎi bēizi, kěshi wǒmen mài ma? bēizi.

“Do you buy cups?”

Nǐmen mǎi bēibāo Wǒmen bù mǎi bēibāo, kěshi wǒmen mài ma? bēibāo.

“Do you buy backpacks?”

Nǐmen mǎi Wǒmen bù mǎi gōngshibāo, kěshi gōngshibāo ma? wǒmen mài gōngshibāo.
“Do you buy briefcases?” “We don’t buy briefcases, but we do sell briefcases.”

Nǐmen mǎi dài zi? Wǒmen bù mǎi dài zi, kě shì wǒmen mài dài zi.

“Do you buy bags?” “We don’t buy bags, but we do sell bags.”

Nǐmen mǎi míng piàn ma? Wǒmen bù mǎi míng piàn, kě shì wǒmen mài míng piàn.

“Do you buy name cards?” “We don’t buy name cards, but we do sell name cards.”

9. Add or subtract as requested.

Yī jiā yī shì duōshǎo? Yī jiā yī shì èr.

“1 + 1 is how much?” “1 + 1 is 2.”

Èr jiǎn yī shì duōshǎo? Èr jiǎn yī shì yī.

“2 − 1 is how much?” “2 − 1 is 1.”
Qīshí jiā shí shì duōshǎo? Qīshí jiā shí shì bāshí.

“70 + 10 is how much?” “70 + 10 is 80.”

Liùshí jiǎn shí shì duōshǎo? Liùshí jiǎn shí shì wǔshí.

“60 − 10 is how much?” “60 − 10 is 50.”

Sìshísān jiā wǔshiwǔ shí Sìshísān jiā wǔshiwǔ shì duōshǎo? Sìshísān jiā wǔshiwǔ shì jiǔshībā.

“43 + 55 is how much?” “43 + 55 is 98.”

Sānshíqī jiǎn shí’èr shì duōshǎo? Sānshíqī jiǎn shí’èr shì èrshiwǔ.

“37 − 12 is how much?” “37 − 12 is 25.”

Sìqiān jiā liǎngqiān shì duōshǎo? Sìqiān jiā liǎngqiān shì liùqiān.

“4,000 + 2,000 is how much?” “4,000 + 2,000 is 6,000.”

“999 – 100 is how much?” “999 – 100 is 899.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 3, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. In each case, indicate that the time is already one hour later than your interlocutor thinks.

   Xiànzài yīdiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yījīng liǎngdiǎn le.

   “It’s now one o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already two.”

   Xiànzài liǎngdiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yījīng sāndiǎn le.

   “It’s now two o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already three.”

   Xiànzài sāndiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yījīng sìdiǎn le.

   “It’s now three o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already four.”

   Xiànzài sìdiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yījīng wǔdiǎn le.
“It’s now four o’clock, right?”  “No, it’s already five.”

Xiànzài wǔdiǎn zhōng ba?  Bú shì, yǐjīng liùdiǎn le.

“It’s now five o’clock, right?”  “No, it’s already six.”

Xiànzài liùdiǎn zhōng ba?  Bú shì, yǐjīng qīdiǎn le.

“It’s now six o’clock, right?”  “No, it’s already seven.”

Xiànzài qīdiǎn zhōng ba?  Bú shì, yǐjīng bādiǎn le.

“It’s now seven o’clock, right?”  “No, it’s already eight.”

Xiànzài bādiǎn zhōng ba?  Bú shì, yǐjīng jiǔdiǎn le.

“It’s now eight o’clock, right?”  “No, it’s already nine.”

Xiànzài jiǔdiǎn zhōng ba?  Bú shì, yǐjīng shídiǎn le.

“It’s now nine o’clock, right?”  “No, it’s already ten.”

Xiànzài shídiǎn zhōng ba?  Bú shì, yǐjīng shíyīdiǎn le.
“It’s now ten o’clock, right?”  “No, it’s already eleven.”

Xiànzài shíyīdiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yǐjīng shí’èrdiǎn le.

“It’s now eleven o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already twelve.”

2. In each case, indicate that the correct time is two minutes earlier than the speaker says.

Xiànzài jiǔdiǎn sīshíbāfēn, dui Bú dui. Xiànzài jiǔdiǎn bu dui? sīshíliùfēn.

“It’s now 9:48, right?” “No, it’s 9:46.”

Xiànzài liăngdiǎn sānshí’èrfēn, Bú dui. Xiànzài liăngdiǎn dui bu dui? sānshísífēn.

“It’s now 2:32, right?” “No, it’s 2:30.”

Xiànzài sìdiǎn wǔshíliùfēn, dui Bú dui. Xiànzài sìdiǎn bu dui? wǔshísífēn.

“It’s now 4:56, right?” “No, it’s 4:54.”
Xiànzài liùdiǎn líng sānfēn, dui Bú dui. Xiànzài liùdiǎn líng bu dui?

“It’s now 6:03, right?”

“Bú duì. Xiànzài liùdiǎn yīfēn.”

Xiànzài shídiǎn èrshì’èrfēn, dui Bú dui. Xiànzài shídiǎn bu dui?

“It’s now 10:22, right?”

“Bú duì. Xiànzài shídiǎn èrshihēn.”

Xiànzài shí’èrdiǎn shíyīfēn, dui Bú dui. Xiànzài shí’èrdiǎn bu dui?

“It’s now 12:11, right?”

“Bú duì. Xiànzài shí’èrdiǎn líng jiǔfēn.”

3. Answer the following questions in the negative, using kŏngpà and adding a changed status le at the end.

Xiăo Wáng lái bu lái?

“Kiŏngpà tā bù láile.”

Nĭ qù bu qù?

“Kiŏngpà wŏ bù qùle.”

506
Tāmen mǎi bu mǎi? Kǒngpà tāmen bù mǎile.

“Are they going to buy “I’m afraid they’re not going to buy it.”

Lín Lǎoshī yào bu yào? Kǒngpà tā bù yàole.

“Does Prof. Lin want it?” “I’m afraid she doesn’t want it.”

Wǒ mèimei kéi yì bu kéi lái? Kǒngpà tā bù kéi láile.

“Can my sister come?” “I’m afraid your sister can’t come.”

4. Drop the nouns from the following phrases to create nominal phrases ending in -de.

shídiănbânde huŏchē shídiănbânde

“the 10:30 train” “the 10:30 one”

wǒ mǎide gŏngshībăo wǒ mǎide

“the briefcase that I bought” “the one I bought”
wǒ mèimeide dàizi  wǒ mèimeide
“my younger sister’s bag”  “my younger sister’s”

bānshangde nǚshēng  bānshangde
“the girls in the class”  “the ones in the class”

liǎngdiǎn zhōngde huǒchē  liǎngdiǎn zhōngde
“the 2:00 train”  “the 2:00 one”

nǐ màide bēibāo  nǐ màide
“the backpack that you sold”  “the one that you sold”

lăoshīde míngzi  lăoshīde
“the teacher’s name”  “the teacher’s”

5. When asked how many hours it will take, explain that you’re afraid it will take one hour more than the speaker says.

Yào bu yào yíge zhōngtóu? Kòngpà yào liǎngge zhōngtóu!
“Will it take one hour?”  “I’m afraid it will take two hours!”

“Will it take two hours?”  “I’m afraid it will take three hours!”

“Will it take three hours?”  “I’m afraid it will take four hours!”

“Will it take four hours?”  “I’m afraid it will take five hours!”

“Will it take five hours?”  “I’m afraid it will take six hours!”
Yào bu yào liùge zhōngtóu?  Kōngpà yào qīge zhōngtóu!

“Will it take six hours?” “I’m afraid it will take seven hours!”

6. When asked how many hours it will take, explain that you think it will probably take an hour less than the speaker says.

Yào wŭge bàn zhōngtóu ma? Wŏ xiăng zhĭ yào sìge bàn zhōngtóu ba.

“Will it take five and a half hours?” “I think it will only take four and a half hours.”

Yào liăngge zhōngtóu ma? Wŏ xiăng zhĭ yào yíge zhōngtóu ba.

“Will it take two hours?” “I think it will only take one hour.”

Yào liùge zhōngtóu ma? Wŏ xiăng zhĭ yào wŭge zhōngtóu ba.

“Will it take six hours?” “I think it will only take five hours.”
Yào jiǔge bàn zhōngtóu Wǒ xiǎng zhǐ yào bāge bàn ma? zhōngtóu ba.

“Will it take nine and a half hours?”
“I think it will only take eight and a half hours.”

Yào qīge zhōngtóu Wǒ xiǎng zhǐ yào liùge zhōngtóu shíwǔfēn ma? shíwǔfēn ba.

“Will it take seven hours?”
“I think it will only take six hours and fifteen minutes.”

Yào shíge zhōngtóu ma? Wǒ xiǎng zhǐ yào jiǔge zhōngtóu ba.

“Will it take ten hours?”
“I think it will only take nine hours.”

7. Convert the 24-hour clock times, as commonly employed in mainland China and Taiwan, to 12-hour clock times. Add xiàwǔ or wǎnshang as appropriate.

Xiàyítàng dào Tiānjīnde Xiàyítàng dào Tiānjīnde huǒchē shísān diǎn èrshífēn huǒchē xiàyí diǎn èrshífēn kāi.
“The next train to Tianjin departs at 13:20.”

Xiàyítàng dào Bĕijīngde huŏchē èrshidiăn shífēn kāi.

“The next train to Tianjin departs at 1:20 in the afternoon.”

Xiàyítàng dào Bĕijīngde huŏchē wănshang bādiăn shífēn kāi.

“The next train to Beijing departs at 20:10.”

Xiàyítàng dào Bĕijīngde huŏchē wănshang bādiăn shífēn kāi.

“The next train to Beijing departs at 8:10 in the evening.”

Xiàyítàng dào Xīnjiāpōde huŏchē shíwŭdiăn wūshífēn huŏchē xiàwū sàndiăn kāi. Wūshífēn kāi.

“The next train to Singapore departs at 15:50.”

Xiàyítàng dào Xīnjiāpōde huŏchē wănshang shídīăn wūshífēn kāi. Sănshiwūfēn kāi.

“The next train to Singapore departs at 3:50 in the afternoon.”

Xiàyítàng dào Jiā’nádâde huŏchē èrshí’èrdiăn huŏchē wănshang sānsi shídīăn sănshiwūfēn kāi.

“The next train to Canada departs at 22:35.”

Xiàyítàng dào Jiā’nádâde huŏchē wănshang shídīăn sănshiwūfēn kāi.

“The next train to Canada departs at 10:35 in the evening.”
Unit 4, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Explain to the questioner that you are actually going two days later than he thinks.

Nǐ xīngqīyī qù ma? Bú shì, wǒ xīngqīsān qù.

“Are you going on Monday?” “No, I’m going on Wednesday.”

Nǐ xīngqī’èr qù ma? Bú shì, wǒ xīngqīsì qù.

“Are you going on Tuesday?” “No, I’m going on Thursday.”

Nǐ xīngqīsān qù ma? Bú shì, wǒ xīngqīwù qù.

“Are you going on Wednesday?” “No, I’m going on Friday.”

Nǐ xīngqīsì qù ma? Bú shì, wǒ xīngqīliù qù.

“Are you going on Thursday?” “No, I’m going on Saturday.”

Nǐ xīngqīwū qù ma? Bú shì, wǒ xīngqītiān qù.
“Are you going on Friday?”  “No, I’m going on Sunday.”

Nǐ xīngqīliù qù ma?  Bú shì, wǒ xīngqīyī qù.

“Are you going on Saturday?”  “No, I’m going on Monday.”

Nǐ xīngqītiān qù ma?  Bú shì, wǒ xīngqī’èr qù.

“Are you going on Sunday?”  “No, I’m going on Tuesday.”

2. Explain to the questioner that Old Bai is actually arriving one day earlier than the speaker thinks.

Lăo Bái lībàitiān dào ma?  Bú shì, Lăo Bái lībàiliù dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Sunday?”

Lăo Bái lībàiliù dào ma?  Bú shì, Lăo Bái lībàiwŭ dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Saturday?”

Lăo Bái lībàiwŭ dào ma?  Bú shì, Lăo Bái lībàiwǔ dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Friday.”

Lăo Bái lībàiwǔ dào ma?  Bú shì, Lăo Bái lībāisì dào.
“Is Old Bai arriving on Friday?”

Lăo Bái lĭbàisì dào ma? Bú shi, Lăo Bái lĭbàisăn dào.

“No, Old Bai is arriving on Thursday.”

Lăo Bái lĭbàisăn dào ma? Bú shi, Lăo Bái lĭbài’èr dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Wednesday?”

Lăo Bái lĭbài’èr dào ma? Bú shi, Lăo Bái lĭbàiyī dào.

“No, Old Bai is arriving on Tuesday.”

Lăo Bái lĭbàiyī dào ma? Bú shi, Lăo Bái lĭbāitiān dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Monday?”

Lăo Bái lĭbāiyī dào ma? Bú shi, Lăo Bái lĭbāitiān dào.

“No, Old Bai is arriving on Sunday.”

“Is Old Bai arriving on Sunday?”

Lăo Bái lĭbāiyī dào ma? Bú shi, Lăo Bái lĭbāitiān dào.

3. Comment that you sleep two hours longer than your interlocutor.
“I sleep five hours every day. “I sleep seven hours every day.”

“I sleep six hours every day. And “I sleep eight hours every day.”

“I sleep seven hours every day. “I sleep nine hours every day.”

“I sleep eight hours every day. “I sleep ten hours every day.”
“I sleep nine hours every day. “I sleep eleven hours every day.”

Wǒ měitiān shuì shíge zhōngtóu. Wǒ měitiān shuì shí’èrge zhōngtóu. Nǐ ne?

“I sleep ten hours every day. “I sleep twelve hours every day.”

4. Comment that normally you get up one hour earlier than the speaker.

Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang wǔdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng. sìdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 5:00 “I usually get up at 4:00 A.M.”

Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang liùdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng. wǔdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 6:00 “I usually get up at 5:00 A.M.”

Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng. liùdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng!
“I usually get up at 7:00” “I usually get up at 6:00 A.M.”

Wo pingchäng zǎoshang Wo pingchäng zǎoshang bādiăn zhōng qīchuáng. qīdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 8 A.M.” “I usually get up at 7:00 A.M.!”

Wo pingcháng zǎoshang Wo pingcháng zǎoshang jiǔdiăn zhōng qǐchuáng. bādiăn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 9:00” “I usually get up at 8:00 A.M.” “I usually get up at 9:00 A.M.!”

Wo pingcháng zǎoshang Wo pingcháng zǎoshang shídiăn zhōng qǐchuáng. jiǔdiăn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 10:00” “I usually get up at 9:00 A.M.” “I usually get up at 9:00 A.M.!”

5. Comment that you go to sleep three hours later than your interlocutor.

Wo pingcháng wǎnshàng Wo pingcháng wǎnshàng qīdiǎn shuǐjiào. shídiǎn shuǐjiào.

518
“I usually go to sleep at 7:00.”
“I usually go to sleep at 10:00 in the evening.”

Wǒ píngcháng wānshāng bādiǎn shuìjiào.
shíyīdiǎn shuìjiào.

“Wǒ píngcháng wānshāng shíyīdiǎn shuìjiào.”

“Wǒ píngcháng wānshāng shíyīdiǎn shuìjiào.”

519
Wǒ píngcháng shí’èrdiǎn shuìjiào.

“I usually go to sleep at 12:00.”

Wǒ píngcháng sāndiǎn shuìjiào.

“I usually go to sleep at 3:00.”

6. Translate the English phrases into Chinese. Consider carefully whether or not you should add the measure ge.

“one month” yíge yuè

“one hour” yíge zhōngtóu

“one day” yítiān

“one week” yíge xīngqī

“two hours” liǎngge zhōngtóu

“two days” liǎngtiān

“two weeks” liǎngge xīngqī

“two months” liǎngge yuè
“every day”  mĕitiān

“every month”  mĕige yuè

“every week”  mĕige xīngqī

“every hour”  mĕige zhōngtóu

“How many months?”  Jĭge yuè?

“How many days?”  Jîtían?

“How many weeks?”  Jîge xīngqī?

“How many hours?”  Jîge zhōngtóu?

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 4, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Explain that you were born the year before the speaker.

Nî shì nĕinián chūshēngde?

chūshēngde.
“I was born in 1978. What year were you born?”

Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-wǔ-líng-nián chūshēngde. Nǐ shì něinián yī-jiǔ-sì-jìu-nián chūshēngde?


“I was born in 1977.”


“I was born in 1950. What year were you born?”

Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-sì-jìu-bā-nián chūshēngde. Nǐ shì něinián chūshēngde?


“I was born in 1949.”

Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-sì-jìu-qī-nián chūshēngde. Nǐ shì něinián chūshēngde?


“I was born in 1998. What year were you born?”

Wǒ shì èr-líng-líng-líng-nián chūshēngde. Nǐ shì něinián yī-jiǔ-jìu-jǐu-nián chūshēngde?


“I was born in 1997.”

Wǒ shì èr-líng-líng-líng-nián chūshēngde. Nǐ shì něinián yī-jiǔ-jìu-jǐu-nián chūshēngde?


“I was born in 2000. What year were you born?”

Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-jìu-sì-nián chūshēngde. Nǐ shì něinián chūshēngde?


“I was born in 1999.”

Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-jìu-sān-nián chūshēngde. Nǐ shì něinián chūshēngde?


“I was born in 1999.”
“I was born in 1994. What year were you born?”

“I was born in 1993.”

2. Your birthday is two months and five days later than the speaker.


“My birthday is May 10th. When is your birthday?”

“My birthday is July 15th.”


“My birthday is Feb. 13. When is your birthday?”

“My birthday is April 18th.”


“My birthday is June 20th. When is your birthday?”

“My birthday is Aug. 25th.”

“My birthday is Aug. 8. When is your birthday?”

Wǒde shēngrì shi jiǔyuè èrshí’èrhào. Wǒde shēngrì shi Sept. 22nd.

Nǐde shēngrì shi jiǔyuè jīhào? shíyīyuè èrshiqīhào.

“My birthday is Oct. 13th.”

“Shì jīnnián ma?”


“Wǒde shēngrì shi shíyīyuè èrshiqīhào.”

“Was it last year?”

Shì qùnián ma? Bú shì qùnián, shi jīnnián.

“It wasn’t last year, it’s this year.”

“Is it this year?”

Shì jīnnián ma? Bú shì jīnnián, shi míngnián.

“It isn’t this year, it’s next year.”


“Was it 1986?”

“Was it 1986? It wasn’t 1986, it was 1987.”

“Was it 2006?”  “It wasn’t 2006, it was 2007.”


“Is it 2042?”  “It isn’t 2042, it’s 2043.”


“Was it 1956?”  “It wasn’t 1956, it was 1957.”

4. In each case, reply that it’s a day earlier than your interlocutor thinks.

Shì míngtiān ma?  Bú shì míngtiān, shì jīntiān!

“Is it tomorrow?”  “It’s not tomorrow, it’s today!”

Shì jīntiān ma?  Bú shì jīntiān, shì zuótiān!
“Is it today?”   “It’s not today, it was yesterday!”

Shì sānyuè jiǔhào Bú shì sānyuè jiǔhào, shì sānyuè ma? bāhào!

“Is it March 9?”   “It’s not March 9, it’s March 8!”

Shì wǔyuè èrshihào Bú shì wǔyuè èrshihào, shì wǔyuè ma? shíjiǔhào!

“Is it May 20?”   “It’s not May 20, it’s May 19!”

Shì liùyuè sānshihào Bú shì liùyuè sānshihào, shì liùyuè ma? èrshíjiǔhào!

“Is it June 30?”   “It’s not June 30, it’s June 29!”

Shì shíyuè Bú shì shíyuè èrshiliùhào, shì shíyuè èrshiliùhào ma? èrshiwǔhào!

“Is it October 26?” “It’s not October 26, it’s October 25!”

5. You live four floors higher up than the other person thinks.

Jílóu? Shì bu shì yīlóu? Bú shì yīlóu, shì wǔlóu!
“Which floor? Is it the “It’s not the first floor, it’s the fifth floor!”

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shí èrlóu? Bú shì èrlóu, shì liùlóu!

“Which floor? Is it the “It’s not the second floor, it’s the sixth floor!”

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shí wūlóu? Bú shì wūlóu, shì jiǔlóu!

“Which floor? Is it the “It’s not the fifth floor, it’s the ninth floor!”

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shí bālóu? Bú shì bālóu, shì shí’èrlóu!

“Which floor? Is it the “It’s not the eighth floor, it’s the twelfth floor!”

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shí shí wūlóu? Bú shì shíwūlóu, shì shìjiǔlóu!

“Which floor? Is it the “It’s not the fifteenth floor, it’s the nineteenth!”

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shí jiǔlóu? Bú shì jiǔlóu, shì shísānlóu!
“Which floor? Is it the ‘ninth floor? It’s not the tenth floor, it’s the thirteenth floor!’”

6. Translate the English phrases into Chinese. Consider carefully whether or not you should add the measure ge.

“one month” yíge yuè

“one year” yīnián

“one hour” yíge zhōngtóu

“one day” yitiān

“one week” yíge xīngqī

“three years” sānnián

“three hours” sān’ge zhōngtóu

“three days” sāntiān

“three weeks” sān’ge xīngqī

“three months” sān’ge yuè
“every day” měitiān

“every month” měige yuè

“every week” měige xīngqī

“every hour” měige zhōngtóu

“every year” měinián

“How many months?” Jīge yuè?

“How many days?” Jītiān?

“How many years?” Jīnián?

“How many weeks?” Jīge xīngqī?

“How many hours?” Jīge zhōngtóu?

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 4, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Comment that you’ve been in China twice as many times as your interlocutor thinks.
“Is this the first time you came to China?”

“No, this is the second time!”

“Is this the second time you came to China?”

“No, this is the fourth time!”

“Is this the third time you came to China?”

“No, this is the sixth time!”

“Is this the fourth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the eighth time!”

“Is this the fifth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the tenth time!”

“Is this the sixth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the twelfth time!”

“Is this the seventh time you came to China?”

“No, this is the eighteenth time!”

“Is this the eighth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the thirty-sixth time!”

“Is this the ninth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the sixty-sixth time!”

“Is this the tenth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the hundred-sixty-sixth time!”

“Is this the eleventh time you came to China?”

“No, this is the two-hundred-sixty-sixth time!”

“Is this the twelfth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the four-hundred-sixty-sixth time!”

“Is this the thirteenth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the eight-hundred-sixty-sixth time!”

“Is this the fourteenth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the sixteen-hundred-sixty-sixth time!”

“Is this the fifteenth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the thirty-two-hundred-sixty-sixth time!”

“Is this the sixteenth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the sixty-four-hundred-sixty-sixth time!”

“Is this the seventeenth time you came to China?”

“No, this is the one-sixty-four-hundred-sixty-sixth time!”
“Is this the fifth time you came to China?”
“No, this is the tenth time!”

2. Respond that you haven’t ever done what the speaker asks.

Nǐ kànguo ma? Wǒ méi kànguo.

“Have you ever seen one?” “I’ve never seen one.”

Nǐ gōngzuòguo ma? Wǒ méi gōngzuòguo.

“Have you ever worked?” “I’ve never worked.”

Nǐ qùguo Mǎláixīyà ma? Wǒ méi qùguo Mǎláixīyà.

“Have you ever been to Malaysia?”

Nǐ dàoguo Tiānjīn ma? Wǒ méi dàoguo Tiānjīn.

“Have you ever been to Tianjin?”

Nǐ mài guo zhōng ma? Wǒ méi mài guo zhōng.
“Have you ever sold clocks?”   “I’ve never sold clocks.”

Nǐ xuéxíguo Zhōngwén ma?   Wǒ méi xuéxíguo Zhōngwén.

“Have you ever studied Chinese?”   “I’ve never studied Chinese.”

3. Explain that you have done what your interlocutor has never done before, and that you have done it many times.

Wǒ méi xiǎngguo. Nǐ ne?   Wǒ xiǎngguo, xiǎngguo hěn duō cì!

“I’ve never thought about it. How about you?”

Wǒ méi mǎiguō. Nǐ ne?   Wǒ mǎiguō, mǎiguō hěn duō cì!

“I’ve never bought any. And you?”

Wǒ méi wènguo tā. Nǐ ne?   Wǒ wènguo tā, wènguo tā hěn duō cì!

“I have, I’ve bought them many times!”
“I’ve never asked her. Have you?”

Wǒ méi qùguo Táiwān. Nǐ ne?

Wǒ qùguo. Qùguo hěn duō cì!

“I’ve never been to Taiwan. I have. I’ve been many times!”

Wǒ méi zuòguo huŏchē. Nǐ ne?

Wǒ zuòguo, zuòguo hěn duō cì!

“I’ve never been on a train. I have, I’ve been on them many times!”

4. Comment that the date mentioned is one day later than the speaker thinks.

Èryuè liùhào shì bu shì? Èryuè liùhào shì qiántiān?

Bú shì. Èryuè liùhào shì zuótiān.

“Was February 6 the day before yesterday?”

Bāyuè jiǔhào shì bu shì? Bāyuè jiǔhào shì zuótiān?

Bú shì. Bāyuè jiǔhào shì jīntiān.
“Was August 9 yesterday?”  “No, August 9 is today.”

Shíyuè shíhào shì bu shì Bú shì. Shíyuè shíhào shì jǐntiān?

“Is October 10 today?”  “No, October 10 is tomorrow.”

Shí’èryuè èrshihào shì bu shì Bú shì. Shí’èryuè èrshihào shì míngtiān?

“Is December 20 tomorrow?”  “No, December 20 is the day after tomorrow.”

5. Add yī “one” before each of the following measures and numbers, so that you say “one time, one day, one year,” etc. Remember that before syllables in Tones One, Two, and Three, yī changes to Tone Four yì; and before syllables in Tone Four, yī changes to Tone Two yí (if you’re unsure about these tone changes, check the note in 2-3: SV2).

yī, cì  yícì

“one, time”  “one time”

yī, tiān yìti  ān
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“one, day”</td>
<td>yī, nián</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one day”</td>
<td>yǐnián</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, year”</td>
<td>yī, kuài</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one year”</td>
<td>yíkuài</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, dollar”</td>
<td>yī, ge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one dollar”</td>
<td>yíge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, (general measure)”</td>
<td>yī, diǎn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one (of some item)”</td>
<td>yǐdiǎn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, dot”</td>
<td>yī, bàn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“a little”</td>
<td>yíbàn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, half”</td>
<td>yī, -băi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one half”</td>
<td>yībăi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, hundred”</td>
<td>“one hundred”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī, -qiān</td>
<td>yìqiān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, thousand”</td>
<td>“one thousand”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī, máo</td>
<td>yìmáo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, dime”</td>
<td>“one dime”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī, fēn</td>
<td>yìfēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, minute OR penny”</td>
<td>“one minute OR one penny”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī, kè, zhōng</td>
<td>yíkè zhōng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, quarter, hour”</td>
<td>“one quarter of an hour”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī, tàng</td>
<td>yítáng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“one, run of a train or bus”</td>
<td>“one run of a train or bus”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī, jiā, gōngsī</td>
<td>yíjiā gōngsī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

536
“one, (measure), company”        “one company”

yī, wèi, xiānsheng                    yíwèi xiānsheng

“one, polite measure, “one gentleman”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 4, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add hǎoxiàng to the following sentences so as to be less direct and avoid committing yourself.

Tā bù lái.                          Tā hǎoxiàng bù lái.

“He’s not coming.”                 “It seems that he’s not coming.”

Tāmen hái méi qù.                  Tāmen hǎoxiàng hái méi qù.

“They haven’t gone yet.”           “It seems that they haven’t gone yet.”

Xiànzài shì wǔdiǎn.               Xiànzài hǎoxiàng shì wǔdiǎn.
“It’s five o’clock now.”  “It seems that it’s five o’clock now.”

Zhōngwén hěn róngyi.  Zhōngwén hǎoxiàng hěn róngyi.

“Chinese is very easy.”  “It seems that Chinese is very easy.”

Xiăo Zhāng zhù Hépíng Xiăo Zhāng hăoxiàng zhù Hépíng Dōng Lù.  Dōng Lù.

“Little Zhang lives on Heping East Road.”  “It seems that Little Zhang lives on Heping East Road.”

2. Explain that “they” pay over ten thousand dollars more each year than the speaker thinks (bù zhǐ means “not only” or “not just that” or “more”).


“How much do they pay each year? Twenty thousand dollars?”  “More. It seems they pay more than thirty thousand per year.”
Tāmen yīnián gěi duōshǎo qián? Yǒu méiyou sānwànkuài?

Bù zhī. Hǎoxiàng tāmen yīnián gěi siwànduō.

“How much do they pay each year? Thirty thousand dollars?”

Tāmen yīnián gěi duōshǎo qián? Yǒu méiyou liūwànkuài?

Bù zhī. Hǎoxiàng tāmen yīnián gěi qīwànduō.

“How much do they pay each year? Sixty thousand dollars?”

Tāmen yīnián gěi duōshǎo qián? Yǒu méiyou shíwànkuài?

Bù zhī. Hǎoxiàng tāmen yīnián gěi shíyīwànduō.

“How much do they pay each year? More. It seems they pay more than seventy thousand per year.”

Tāmen yīnián gěi duōshǎo qián? Yǒu méiyou shíwŭwànkuài?

Bù zhī. Hǎoxiàng tāmen yīnián gěi shíliuwànkuài.

“How much do they pay each year? More. It seems they pay more than a hundred and ten thousand dollars?”

Tāmen yīnián gěi duōshǎo qián? Yǒu méiyou shíwūwànkuài?

Bù zhī. Hǎoxiàng tāmen yīnián gěi shǐliuwànkuài.
“How much do they pay each year? A hundred and fifty thousand dollars?”

More. It appears they pay more than a hundred and sixty thousand dollars.”

3. Comment that the population in the place mentioned is actually a million less than the speaker believes.

Nánjīngde rénkŏu yǒu méiyou Méiyou, hǎoxiàng zhī yǒu bābăiwàn? qībăiwàn.

“Is the population of Nanjing eight million?”

No, it seems it’s only seven million.”

Xī’ānde rénkŏu yǒu méiyou Méiyou, hǎoxiàng zhī yǒu jiŭbăiwàn? bābăiwàn.

“Is the population of Xian nine million?”

No, it seems it’s only eight million.”

Guāngzhōude rénkŏu yǒu Méiyou, hǎoxiàng zhī yǒu méiyou yìqiānwàn? jiŭbăiwàn.

“Is the population of Guangzhou ten million?”

No, it seems it’s only nine million.”
Xiānggǎngde rénkǒu yǒu Méiyou, hǎoxiàng zhǐ yǒu méiyīyou bābǎiwàn? qībǎiwàn.

“Is the population of Hong Kong eight million?” “No, it seems it’s only seven million.”

Xīnjiāpōde rénkǒu yǒu méiyīyou Méiyou, hǎoxiàng zhǐ yǒu liùbǎiwàn? wǔbǎiwàn.

“Is the population of Singapore six million?” “No, it seems it’s only five million.”

Tiānjīnde rénkǒu yǒu méiyīyou Méiyou, hǎoxiàng zhǐ yǒu yīqiān sānbǎiduōwàn? yīqiān liǎngbǎiduōwàn.

“Is the population of Tianjin thirteen million?” “No, it seems it’s only twelve million.”

4. Explain that Little Li has been late to class one time less than Little Gao.

Xǐăo Gāo chídàoguo shícì! Xǐăo Lǐ zhǐ chídàoguo jiǔcì.

“Little Gao has been late ten times!” “Little Li has only been late nine times.”
“Little Gao has been late twenty times!”

“Little Li has only been late nineteen times.”

“Little Gao has been late five times!”

“Little Li has only been late four times.”

“Little Gao has been late once!”

“Little Li has never been late.”

“Little Gao has been late eight times!”

“Little Li has only been late seven times.”

“Little Gao has been late fifteen times!”

“Little Li has only been late fourteen times.”
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 5, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. You know what few others do: Little Ke comes in to the office only on Tuesdays, Thursdays, and Saturdays. Based on this information, respond to the questions below.

Jīntiān shì lǐbàiyī. Xiǎo Kē zài bàngōngshì ma? Tā jīntiān bú zài.

“Today is Monday. Is Little Ke in the office?”

Jīntiān shì lǐbài’èr. Xiǎo Kē zài bàngōngshì ma? Tā jīntiān zài.

“Today is Tuesday. Is Little Ke in the office?”

Jīntiān shì lǐbàisān. Xiǎo Kē zài bàngōngshì ma? Tā jīntiān bú zài.

“Today is Wednesday. Is Little Ke in the office?”

“Today is Thursday. Is Little Ke in the office?”


“Today is Friday. Is Little Ke in the office?”

Jīntiān shì lībàiliù. Xiǎo Kē zài bàngōngshì ma? Tā jīntiān zài.

“Today is Saturday. Is Little Ke in the office?”

Jīntiān shì lībàitiān. Xiǎo Kē zài bàngōngshì ma? Tā jīntiān bú zài.

“Today is Sunday. Is Little Ke in the office?”

Jīntiān shì lībāitiǎn. Xiǎo Kē zài bàngōngshì ma? Tā jīntiān bú zài.

2. Transform the sentences with zǎoshang qu...le into sentences with xiànzài zài.

Xiǎo Zhāng zǎoshang qù gōngsī Xiǎo Zhāng xiànzài zài le. gōngsī.
“Little Zhang went to the company this morning.”  

“Mrs. Lin went to the embassy this morning.”

“Prof. Wang went to the library this morning.”

“Miss He went to Hong Kong this morning.”

“Zongjingli went to the Language and Communication Center this morning.”
“The general manager went to the language center this morning.”

“The general manager is at the language center now.”

3. Add Nǐ zhīdao...ma? to the basic question.

Tā xìng shémme? Nǐ zhīdao tā xìng shémme ma?

“What’s her last name?” “Do you know what her last name is?”

Tā shì nĕiguó rén? Nǐ zhīdao tā shì nĕiguó rén ma?

“What nationality is she?” “Do you know what nationality she is?”

Shíyànshì zài năr? Nǐ zhīdao shíyànshì zài năr ma?

“Where is the laboratory?” “Do you know where the laboratory is?”

Jīntiān shì xīngqījī? Nǐ zhīdao jīntiān shì xīngqījī ma?

“What day is it today?” “Do you know what day it is today?”
Wàijiāobù jīdiǎn kāimén?  Nǐ zhīdao Wàijiāobù jīdiǎn kāimén ma?

“What time does the Foreign Ministry open?”  “Do you know what time the Foreign Ministry opens?”

Wǒmen zuò jīdiànhuǒchē?  Nǐ zhīdao wǒmen zuò jīdiànhuǒchē ma?

“What time is our train?”  “Do you know what time our train is?”

Zhèizhāng zhuōzi duōshǎo qián?  Nǐ zhīdao zhèizhāng zhuōzi duōshǎo qián ma?

“How much is this table?”  “Do you know how much this table is?”

4. Respond to each question with zhīdao in the negative.

Nǐ zhīdao jīntiān jǐhào ma?  Wǒ bù zhīdào jīntiān jǐhào.

“How much is this table?”  “Do you know what today’s date is?”

Nǐ zhīdao tā yào shémme ma?  Wǒ bù zhīdào tā yào shémme.
“Do you know what she wants?”

Wǒ bù zhīdào zĕmme bàn ma?

“I don’t know what she wants.”

Wǒ bù zhīdào zĕmme bàn.

“Do you know what should be done?”

Wǒ bù zhīdào nàrde rénkŏu yŏu duōshăo ma?

“I don’t know what should be done.”

Wǒ bù zhīdào nàrde rénkŏu yŏu duōshăo.

“Do you know what the population there is?”

Wǒ bù zhīdào zĕmme chēnghu nèiwèi xiānsheng.

“I don’t know what the population there is.”

Wǒ bù zhīdào zĕmme nèiwèi xiānsheng.

“Do you know how to address that gentleman?”

Wǒ bù zhīdào wénhuà zhōngxīn jĭdiăn kāi ma?

“I don’t know how to address that gentleman.”

Zhōngxīn jĭdiăn kāi.

“Do you know what time the cultural center opens?”

Zhōngxīn jĭdiăn kāi ma?

“I don’t know what time the cultural center opens.”
“Do you know how much that chair costs?”

“I don’t know how much that chair costs.”

5. Convert the long form of the affirmative-negative verb construction to the short form.

Māma, wǒ kéyi bu kéyi qù?

“Mom, can I go?”

Māma, wǒ kě bu kéyi qù?

“Mom, can I go?”

Nǐ zhīdao nèibă yīzi duōshăo qián ma?

“Do you know how much that chair costs?”

Něibă yīzi duōshăo qián.

duōshăo qián.

Nī zhī dao nèibă yīzi duō shăo qián ma?

“Do you know how much that chair costs?”

Nī zhīdào nèibă yīzi duōshăo qián ma?
Wǒmen yīnggāi bu yīnggāi qù? “Should we go?”

Nǐ jīntiān huíjīa bu huíjīa? “Are you going home today?”

6. Be contrary! Always choose the opposite of what the speaker chooses. If the speaker says “here,” you say “there”; if the speaker says “that,” you say “this,” etc.

Nǐ yào zhèige ma? Wǒ bù yào zhèige, wǒ yào nèige. “Do you want this? I don’t want this one, I want that one.”

Nǐ yào nèige ma? Wǒ bù yào nèige, wǒ yào zhèige. “Do you want that? I don’t want that one, I want this one.”

Tā zài zhèr ma? Tā bù zài zhèr, tā zài nàr.
“Is he here?”
Tā zài nàr ma?
“Is he there?”
Tā bù zài nàr, tā zài zhèr.

Nǐ xǐhuan zhèizhāng Wǒ bù xǐhuan zhèizhāng zhūōzi, wǒ zhūōzi ma? xǐhuan nèizhāng zhūōzi.

“Do you like this?”
Nǐ xǐhuan nèibă yīzi Wǒ bù xǐhuan nèibă yīzi, wǒ xǐhuan ma? zhèibă yīzi.

“Do you like that?”
Wǒ hěn máng. Wǒ hái shì Wǒ hěn máng, búguò wǒ hái shì qùle.

“I was busy. I still went.”
Tā chídàole. Tā hái shì tā chídàole, búguò tā hái shì láile.

“He was late. He still came.”

Zhōngwén hěn nán. Wǒ hái Zhōngwén hěn nán, búguò wǒ hái shì yào xué.

“Chinese is hard. I still want to learn it.”

Wǒ tīng kùnde. Wǒ hái shì qù shàngkèle.

“I was quite tired. I still went to class.”

Nèige gōngshìbāo tīng guide. Wǒ hái shì măile.

“That attache case was expensive. I still bought it.”
Wǒ zhīdao wǒ bù yīnggāi qù, wǒ hái shì qù. Wǒ hái shì qùle. búguò wǒ hái shì qùle.

“I knew I shouldn’t go. I “I knew I shouldn’t go; however, still went.” I still went.”
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 5, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. In each case, respond to the question in the negative.

Nǐ zài píxié chăng gōngzuò ma? Wǒ bù zài píxié chăng gōngzuò.

“Do you work at the shoe factory?” “I don’t work at the shoe factory.”

Nǐ cháng zài shítáng chīfàn ba? Wǒ bù cháng zài shítáng chīfàn.

“I suppose you often eat in the dining hall?” “I don’t often eat in the dining hall.”

Nǐ cháng zài túshūguān xuéxí ma? Wǒ bù cháng zài túshūguǎn xuéxí.

“Do you often study at the library?” “I don’t often study at the library.”

Tā zài màoyì gōngsī gōngzuò Tā bù zài màoyì gōngsī gōngzuò.
“I suppose she’s working at a trade company?”

“She’s not working at a trade company.”

Tāmen zài Zhōngguo xuéxí Tāmen bú zài Zhōngguo Hânyû ba?

“Tāmen bú zài Zhōngguo xuéxí Hânyû.”

“I suppose they’re studying Chinese in China?”

“They’re not studying Chinese in China.”

2. Be disagreeable! Say the opposite of what your interlocutor says.

Wŏ shì dàxuéshēng. Wŏ bù shì dàxuéshēng!

“So, you are a college student?” “I’m not a college student!”

Wŏ jiā zài Táibĕi. Wŏ jiā bú zài Táibĕi!

“My home is in Taipei.” “My home is not in Taipei!”

Wŏ yào qù chī zhōngfàn. Wŏ bù yào qù chī zhōngfàn!

“I want to go eat lunch.” “I don’t want to go eat lunch!”
Wǒde làobān shì Xībānyá Wǒde làobān bù shì Xībānyá rén.

“My boss is Spanish.” “My boss is not Spanish!”

Nǐ kěyǐ lái wǒ jiā chī Nǐ bù kěyǐ lái wǒ jiā chī wǎnfàn.

“You may come to my house” “You may not come to my for dinner.”

Zhèige wèizi yǒu rén zuò. Zhèige wèizi méiyou rén zuò!

“There is someone sitting” “There is no one sitting here!”

Zhōngguó wénhuà hěn yōu Zhōngguó wénhuà hěn méi yisi.

“Chinese culture is very” “Chinese culture is very interesting.” uninteresting!”

3. Tell Old Wang that soon it will be an hour later than he thinks.
Yǐjīng yīdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài liǎngdiǎn le!

“It’s already one o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost two!”

Yǐjīng liǎngdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài sāndiǎn le!

“It’s already two o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost three!”

Yǐjīng sāndiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài sìdiǎn le!

“It’s already three o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost four!”

Yǐjīng sìdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài wǔdiǎn le!

“It’s already four o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost five!”

Yǐjīng wǔdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài liùdiǎn le!

“It’s already five o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost six!”
Yījīng liùdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài qīdiǎn le!

“It’s already six o’clock, right?” “Old Wang, it’s almost seven!”

Yījīng qīdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài bādiǎn le!

“It’s already seven o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost eight!”

Yījīng bādiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài jiǔdiǎn le!

“It’s already eight o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost nine!”

Yījīng jiǔdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài shídiǎn le!

“It’s already nine o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost ten!”

Yījīng shídiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài shíyīdiǎn le!

“It’s already ten o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost eleven!”
Yījīng shíyīdiǎn le ba?  Lǎo Wáng, kuài shí’èrdiǎn le!

“It’s already eleven o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost twelve!”

4. Convert the four-syllable names of the following universities into the corresponding two-syllable abbreviations.

Bĕijīng Dàxué  Bĕidà

“Peking University”  “Peking University”

Táiwān Dàxué  Táidà

“Taiwan University”  “Taiwan University”

Zhōngshān Dàxué  Zhōngdà

“Zhongshan University”  “Zhongshan University”

Shīfàn Dàxué  Shīdà

“(National Taiwan) Normal University”  “(National Taiwan) Normal University”
Unit 5, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Respond positively to each question with Duì,... followed by the STATIVE VERB + yidian(r) pattern.

Tā bǐjiào gāo ma? Duì, tā gāo yidianr.

“Is he taller?” “Yes, he is a bit taller.”

Nǐ zuìjìn bǐjiào máng ma? Duì, wǒ zuìjìn máng yidianr.

“Are you busier these days?” “Yes, I am a little busier these days.”

Yīngwén bǐjiào róngyi ma? Duì, Yīngwén róngyi yidianr.
“Is English easier?”  “Yes, English is a bit easier.”

Xiăo Wáng bījiào pàng ma?  Dui, Xiăo Wáng pàng yidianr.

“Is Little Wang fatter?”  “Yes, Little Wang is a bit fatter.”

Närde dōngxi bījiào gui ma?  Dui, närde dōngxi gui yidianr.

“Are things there a little more expensive?”  “Yes, things there are a little more expensive.”

Cháng Chéng Fàndiànde wūfăn bījiào hăochī ma?  wūfăn hăochī yidianr.

“Is lunch at the Great Wall better?”  “Yes, lunch at the Great Wall Hotel is better.”

2. In each case, respond that you don’t know the answer to the question asked.

Xiăo Hé zhùzai năr?  Wō bù zhīdào Xiăo Hé zhùzai năr.

“Where does Little He live?”  “I don’t know where Little He lives.”
Nǐ yào zuòdao năr?
Wŏ bù zhīdào wŏ yào zuòdao năr.

“Where are you riding to?” “I don’t know where I’m riding to.”

Tāmen bāndao năr le?
Wŏ bù zhīdào tāmen bāndao nărle.

“Where did they move to?” “I don’t know where they moved to.”

Tāmen zhùdao xīngqījǐ?
Wŏ bù zhīdào tāmen zhùdao xīngqījǐ.

“Until which day of the week are they staying?” “I don’t know until which day of the week they are staying.”

Xiàozhǎng zuòzai shémme dìfang?
Wŏ bù zhīdào xiàozhǎng zuòzai shémme dìfang.

“Where is the principal sitting?” “I don’t know where the principal is sitting.”

Lăoshī chūshēngzai shémme dìfang?
Wŏ bù zhīdào lăoshī chūshēngzai shémme dìfang.
“Where was the teacher born?”

“I don’t know where the teacher was born.”

3. Respond Bú shì, ... and then say the opposite of what the speaker asks.

Nǐ zhùzài Běijīng chéngde Bú shì, wǒ zhùzài Běijīng běibiānr ma? chéngde nánbiānr.

“Do you live north of Beijing?”

“Bú shì, wǒ zhùzài Běijīng nánbiānr ma? chéngde nánbiānr.”

Nǐ zhùzài Běijīng chéngde Bú shì, wǒ zhùzai Běijīng běibiānr ma? chéngde nánbiānr.

“Do you live north of Beijing?”

“No, I live south of Beijing.”

Tā zhùzài Běijīng chéngde Bú shì, tā zhùzai Běijīng dōngbiānr ma? chéngde xībiānr.

“Does he live east of Beijing?”

“No, he lives west of Beijing.”

Tā zhùzài Běijīng chéngde Bú shì, tā zhùzai Běijīng dōngbiānr ma? chéngde xībiānr.

“Does Little Chen live over there?”

“No, Little Chen lives over there.”

Xǐăo Chén zhùzài zhèbianr Bú shì, Xiăo Chén zhùzai ma? nèibianr.

“Does Little Chen live over there?”

“No, Little Chen lives over there.”

Tā zhùzài Běijīng chéngde Bú shì, tā zhùzai Běijīng nánbiānr ma? chéngde běibiānr.
“Does he live south of Beijing?”
“No, he lives north of Beijing.”


“Does Old Lin live west of Beijing?”
“No, Old Lin lives east of Beijing.”

Wáng Tàitai zhùzai nèibiānr Bú shì, Wáng Tàitai zhùzai ma? zhèibiānr.

“Does Mrs. Wang live over there?”
“No, Mrs. Wang lives over here.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 5, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Respond that the situation is the opposite of what the speaker assumes in the question.

Kāiguān zài lītou ma? Bù, kāiguān zài wàitou.
“Is the switch inside?”
“No, the switch is on the outside.”
Shítáng zài zuŏbianr ma?  Bù, shítáng zài yòubianr.

“Is the cafeteria on the left?”  “No, the cafeteria is on the right.”

Zhōng zài shàngtou ma?  Bù, zhōng zài xiàtou.

“Is the clock on top?”  “No, the clock is on the bottom.”

Huŏchē zài qiántou ma?  Bù, huŏchē zài hòutou.

“Is the train in the front?”  “No, the train is in the back.”

Xiăo Lín zài wàitou ma?  Bù, Xiăo Lín zài lǐtou.

“Is Little Lin outside?”  “No, Little Lin is inside.”

Diànnăo zài yòubian ma?  Bù, diànnăo zài zuŏbian.

“Is the computer on the right?”  “No, the computer is on the left.”

Píxié zài xiàtou ma?  Bù, píxié zài shàngtou.
“Are the dress shoes on the bottom?”
Lǎo Lĭ zài hòutou ma?
“No, the dress shoes are on top.”
Bù, Lǎo Lĭ zài qiántou.

“Is Old Li in the back?”
Zhèige difang zài běibiān ma?
“No, Old Li is in the front.”
Bù, zhèige difang zài nánbiān.

“Is this place in the north?”
Nèige difang zài xībiān ma?
“No, this place is in the south.”
Bù, nèige difang zài dōngbiān.

“Is that place in the west?”
“No, that place is in the east.”

2. Boast that you have one more computer at your home than the speaker does.

Wŏ jiāli yŏu yītái diànnăo.
Wŏ jiāli yŏu liăngtái!

“I have one computer at home.”
“I have two at home!”
Wǒ jiāli yǒu liǎngtái diànnăo. Wǒ jiāli yǒu sāntái!

“I have two computers at home.” “I have three at home!”

Wǒ jiāli yǒu sāntái diànnăo. Wǒ jiāli yǒu sitái!

“I have three computers at home.” “I have four at home!”

Wǒ jiāli yǒu sitái diànnăo. Wǒ jiāli yǒu wǔtái!

“I have four computers at home.” “I have five at home!”

Wǒ jiāli yǒu wǔtái diànnăo. Wǒ jiāli yǒu liùtái!

“I have five computers at home.” “I have six at home!”

3. Use -de to convert the sentences describing where something is into descriptive noun phrases.

Shūjià zài zuŏbian. zuŏbiande shūjià

“The bookcase is on the left.”

Diànnăo zài yòubian. yòubiande diànnăo
“The computer is on the right.”

Shǒucè zài hòumian.

“The manual is in the back.”

Qián zài lǐmiàn.

“The money is inside.”

Píxié zài wàimian.

“The dress shoes are on the outside.”

Fàn zài shàngmian.

“The rice is on top.”

4. As before, use -de to convert the sentences describing where something is into descriptive noun phrases.

Gǒu zài zhūōzi dīxiā.

568
“The dog is under the table.”

Dōngxi zài fāngjiānlì. fāngji ānlide dōngxi

“The things are in the room.”

Bēizi zài shūjiāshàng. shūjiāshàngde bēizi

“The cup is on the bookcase.”

Mĕiguo rén zài zhèbiàn. zhèbiandiē Mĕiguo rén

“The Americans are over here.”

Zhōngguò rén zài nèibiàn. nèibiandiē Zhōngguò rén

“The Chinese are over there.”

Sùshè zài tūshūguăn pángbiān. tūshūguăn pángbiānde sùshè
“The dormitory is next to the library.”

Xuésheng zài dàshīguǎn lǐmiàn. 

“The students are in the embassy.”

5. Answer the questions using the cues provided.

Nǐ liúle shémme? (yíge tiáozì) Wǒ liúle yíge tiáozì.

“What did you leave?” (a note) “I left a note.”

Nǐ mǎile shémme? (yìtái diànnào) Wǒ mǎile yìtái diànnào.

“What did you buy?” (a computer) “I bought a computer.”

Nǐ màile shémme? (yìbă yīzì) Wǒ màile yìbă yīzì.

“What did you sell?” (a chair) “I sold a chair.”

Nǐ chīle shémme? (hěn duō dōngxi) Wǒ chīle hěn duō dōngxi.
“What did you eat?” (many things) “I ate lots of things.”

Nǐ xuéle shémme? (yīnián de Wǒ xuéle yīnián de Zhōngwén)

“What did you study?” (a year of “I studied a year of Chinese”)

Nǐ dàile shémme? (yībǎi zhāng Wǒ dàile yībǎi zhāng míngpiàn)

“What did you take along?” (100 “I took along 100 name cards”)

Nǐ bānle shémme? (sānzhāng dà Wǒ bānle sānzhāng dà zhuōzi)

“What did you move?” (three big “I moved three big tables”)

Nǐ rènshíle shéi? (liǎngge xīn Wǒ rènshíle liǎngge xīn tóngxué)

“Whom did you meet?” (two new “I met two new classmates”)

To Download the audio files, please click here.
Unit 6, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Convert the long forms for year in school to the short forms.

dàxué sānniánjí  dàsān
“third year in college”  “college junior”

dàxué yīniánjí  dàyī
“first year in college”  “college freshman”

dàxué sìniánjí  dàsì
“fourth year in college”  “college senior”

dàxué èrniánjí  dà’èr
“second year in college”  “college sophomore”

gāozhōng èrniánjí  gāo’èr
“second year in high school”  “high school junior”
gāozhōng sānniánjí       gāosān
“third year in high school” “high school senior”

gāozhōng yīniánjí       gāoyī
gāozhōng yīniánjí       gāoyī
“first year in high school” “high school sophomore”

chūzhōng yīniánjí       chūyī
cūzhōng yīniánjí       chūyī
“first year in middle school” “seventh grade”

chūzhōng èrniánjí       chū’èr
cūzhōng èrniánjí       chū’èr
“second year in middle “eighth grade” school”

chūzhōng sānniánjí       chūsān
chūzhōng sānniánjí       chūsān
“third year in middle “ninth grade, high school school” freshman”

2. Correct the speaker, who assumes you are one grade lower than is actually true.
Nǐ yǐjīng shàng xiǎoxué yīniánjí le? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng èrniánjí le!

“You’re already in first grade, I’m already in second grade!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng xiǎoxué sānniánjí le ba? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng sìniánjí le!

“You’re already in third grade, I’m already in fourth grade!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng xiǎoxué wǔniánjí le ba? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng liùniánjí le!

“You’re already in fifth grade, I’m already in sixth grade!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng xiǎoxué liùniánjí le ba? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng chūyī le!

“You’re already in sixth grade, I’m already in seventh grade!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng chū’èr le ba? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng chūsān le!
“You’re already in eighth grade, I suppose?”

Nǐ yījīng shàng chūsān le ba?

“You’re already in ninth grade, I suppose?”

Nǐ yījīng shàng gāo’èr le ba?

“You’re already in tenth grade, I suppose?”

Nǐ yījīng shàng gāosān le ba?

“You’re already a high school junior, I suppose?”

Nǐ yījīng shàng gāosān le ba?

“You’re already a high school senior, I suppose?”

Nǐ yījīng shàng dàyī le ba?

“You’re already a college freshman, I suppose?”

Nǐ yījīng shàng dàyī le ba?

“You’re already a college sophomore, I suppose?”

Nǐ yījīng shàng dàsān le ba?

“You’re already a college sophomore!”

Nǐ yījīng shàng dàsān le ba?

“You’re already a college sophomore!”

Nǐ yījīng shàng dàsì le ba?

“You’re already a college sophomore!”

Wǒ yījīng shàng gāoyī le!

Wǒ yījīng shàng gāosān le!

Wǒ yījīng shàng dàyī le!
“You’re already a college junior, I suppose?”

“I’m already a college senior!”

3. Again, correct the speaker, who this time assumes you are two grades higher than you really are. Begin your response with Hái zǎo, which literally means “still early” but is here the equivalent of English “not yet.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng dàsì le ba?  Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng dà’èr.

“I guess you must already be a senior?”

“Not yet. I’m a sophomore this year.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng dāsān le ba?  Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng dàyī.

“I guess you must already be a junior?”

“Not yet. I’m a freshman this year.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng gāosān le ba?  Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng gāoyī.

“I guess you must already be a high school senior?”

“Not yet. I’m a high school sophomore this year.”
Nǐ yǐjīng shàng gāo’èr le ba? Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng chūsān.

“I guess you must already be a “Not yet. I’m a ninth grader this year.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng chū’èr le ba? Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng xiăoxué liùniánjí.

“I guess you must already be a “Not yet. I’m a sixth grader this year.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng xiăoxué Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng sānniánjí le ba? xiăoxué yīniánjí.

“I guess you must already be a “Not yet. I’m a first grader this year.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 6, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add kànqilai to the following sentences.

Nǐ hěn niánqīng. Nǐ kànqilai hěn niánqīng.

“You are very young.” “You look very young.”
Tā tīng lăo. Tā kănqīlài tīng lăo.

“He is quite old.” “He looks quite old.”

Nĭ hĕn máng. Nĭ kănqīlài hĕn máng.

“You are very busy.” “You look very busy.”

Nĭ érzi hĕn lèi. Nĭ érzi kănqīlài hĕn lèi.

“Your son is very tired.” “Your son looks very tired.”

Nĭde nŭpéngyou hĕn kĕ’ài. Nĭde nŭpéngyou kănqīlái hĕn kĕ’ài.

“Your girlfriend is very cute.” “Your girlfriend looks very cute.”

Xiăo Zhāng hĕn pàng. Xiăo Zhāng kănqīlái hĕn pàng.

“Little Zhang is very fat.” “Little Zhang looks very fat.”

Lăo Bái tīng shòu. Lăo Bái kănqīlái tīng shòu.

“Old Bai is quite thin.” “Old Bai looks quite thin.”

“That present is very expensive.”

2. Add xuéqilai to the following sentences.

Zhōngwén hěn yŏu yìsi. Zhōngwén xuéqilai hěn yŏu yìsi.

“Chinese is very interesting.”

Yīngwén hĕn róngyi. Yīngwén xuéqilai hĕn róngyi.

“English is easy.”

Déwén hĕn nán. Déwén xuéqilai hĕn nán.

“German is very hard.”

Riwén hĕn méi yìsi. Riwén xuéqilai hĕn méi yìsi.

“Japanese is boring.”

3. Respond that you are three years younger than the figure which the speaker mentions.
Nǐ hái bú dào sānshí ba?  Duì, wǒ jīnnián èrshiqīsuí le.

“You’re not yet thirty, “Yes, I’m twenty-seven this year.”

Nǐ hái bú dào liùshí ba?  Duì, wǒ jīnnián wŭshiqīsuí le.

“You’re not yet sixty, “Yes, I’m fifty-seven this year.”

Nǐ hái bú dào wŭshí ba?  Duì, wǒ jīnnián sishiqīsuí le.

“You’re not yet fifty, right?”  “Yes, I’m forty-seven this year.”

Nǐ hái bú dào sìshí ba?  Duì, wǒ jīnnián sānshiqīsuí le.

“You’re not yet forty, “Yes, I’m thirty-seven this year.”

Nǐ hái bú dào èrshí ba?  Duì, wǒ jīnnián shíqīsuí le.

“You’re not yet twenty, “Yes, I’m seventeen this year.”
4. Remark that the order of the city or country where you were born and the city or country where you grew up is the exact opposite of the speaker. Begin your remark with Hĕn yŏu yisi!

Wŏ zài Niūyuē chūshēng, Hĕn yŏu yisi! Wŏ zài ránhòu zài Jiùjīnshān zài Jiùjīnshān chūshēng, rán hòu Niūyuē zhăngdàde.

“I was born in New York, “Very interesting! I was born then grew up in San in San Francisco, then grew up Francisco.”

Wŏ zài Yīngguo chūshēng, Hĕn yŏu yisi! Wŏ zài Făguo ránhòu zài Făguo Yīngguo chūshēng, rán hòu zài zhăngdàde.

“I was born in England, then grew up in France.” “Very interesting! I was born in France, then I grew up in the UK.”

Wŏ zài Bĕijīng chūshēng, Hĕn yŏu yisi! Wŏ zài Shànghăi zài Bĕijīng zhăngdàde.

“I was born in Beijing, then grew up in Shanghai.” “Very interesting! I was born in Shanghai, then grew up in Beijing.”
Wǒ zài Riběn chūshēng, Hěn yǒu yisi! Wǒ zài Xībānyá ránhòu zài Xībānyá chūshēng, ránhòu zài Riběn zhǎngdàde.

“I was born in Japan, then grew up in Spain.”

Wǒ zài Déguó chūshēng, Hěn yǒu yisi! Wǒ zài ránhòu zài Zhōngguo zài Zhōngguo chūshēng, rán hòu Déguó zhǎngdàde.

“I was born in Germany, then grew up in China.”

5. You and your spouse have one fewer son but one more daughter than the speaker.

Wǒmen yǒu liǎngge érzi, yīge Wǒmen yǒu yīge érzi, nǚ’ér. Wǒmen yǒu sān’ge érzi, méiyīu nǚ’ér.

“We have two sons and one daughter.”

Wǒmen yǒu yīge érzi, Wǒmen yǒu liǎngge érzi, yīge nǚ’ér.

582
“We have three sons and no daughters.”

Wǒmen yǒu liǎngge érzi, Wǒmen yǒu yīge érzi, sīge nǚ’ér.

“We have two sons and three daughters.”

Wǒmen yǒu wǔge érzi, Wǒmen yǒu sīge érzi, lìuge nǚ’ér.

“We have five sons and five daughters.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here].

Unit 6, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Convert the sentences with méi + VERB to méiyou + VERB.

Lǎo Zhào méi qù. Lǎo Zhào méiyou qù.

“Old Zhao didn’t go.” “Old Zhao didn’t go.”

Xiǎo Zhāng méi huíjiā. Xiǎo Zhāng méiyou huíjiā.
“Little Zhang didn’t go home.”

Tā zuótiān méi jiāoshū. Tā zuótiān méiyou jiāoshū.

“She didn’t teach yesterday.” “She didn’t teach yesterday.”

Wáng jiā méi bānjiā. Wáng jiā méiyou bānjiā.


Wŏ érzi méi líhūn. Wŏ érzi méiyou líhūn.

“My son didn’t get divorced.” “My son didn’t get divorced.”

Wŏ shūshu méi sòng lĭwù. Wŏ shūshu méiyou sòng lĭwù.

“My uncle didn’t give a present.” “My uncle didn’t give a present.”

2. Comment that, in each case, the baby is two months younger than the speaker thinks.

Nǐmende háizi wŭge yuè dà ma? Bù, tā sān’ge yuè dà.
“Is your child five months old?”

“No, he’s three months old.”

“Is Mrs. Lin’s child three months old?”

“No, she’s one month old.”

“Is your daughter seven months old?”

“No, she’s five months old.”

“Is Mr. Chen’s son nine months old?”

“No, he’s seven months old.”

“Is Uncle and Auntie’s son ten months old?”

“No, he’s eight months old.”

3. Combine the two short sentences into one longer sentence using yīnwei...suóyi....
Tā hěn máng. Tā bù néng Yīnwei tā hěn máng, suóyí tā lái.
“He’s busy. He can’t come.”

Wǒ hěn lèi. Wǒ bù dào tā jiā Yīnwei wǒ hěn lèi, suóyí wǒ bù qùle.
“I’m tired. I’m not going to his house.”

Xiăo Wáng hěn pàng. Tā Yīnwei Xiăo Wáng hěn pàng, jīntiān bù néng chīfàn. suóyí tā jīntiān bù néng chīfàn.
“Little Wang is fat. He can’t eat today.”

Xiăo Zhāng bānjiā bāndao Yīnwei Xiăo Zhāng bānjiā Xīnjiāpō qùle. Wǒmen bāndao Xīnjiāpō qùle, hăo jiŭ méi jiănle. suóyí wŏmen hăo jiŭ méi jiănle.
“Little Zhang moved to Singapore. We haven’t seen each other in a long time.”

Mèimei niánji hái xiǎo. Tā Yinwei mèimei niánji hái xiǎo, hái méi shàng xiǎoxué. suóyì tā hái méi shàng xiǎoxué.

“Little Sister is still young. ““Because Little Sister is still young, she hasn’t begun elementary school yet.”

4. Use wèishemme to ask the speaker why she didn’t do what she says she didn’t do.

Wǒ méi qù shàngkè. Nǐ wèishemme méi qù shàngkè?

“I didn’t go to class.” “Why didn’t you go to class?”

Wǒ méi măi táng. Nǐ wèishemme méi măi táng?

“I didn’t buy candies.” “Why didn’t you buy candies?”

Wǒ méi jiěhūn. Nǐ wèishemme méi jiěhūn?

“I didn’t get married.” “Why didn’t you get married?”

Wǒ méi sòng lǐwù gěi wǒ Nǐ wèishemme méi sòng lǐwù gěi tóngwū. nǐ tóngwū?
“I didn’t give any presents.”

Wǒ diyiān shàngbān méi Nǐ wèishemme diyiān shàngbān zuò zìwō jiēshào?

“I didn’t introduce myself.”

Wǒ méi shàng dàxué. Nǐ wèishemme méi shàng dàxué?

“I didn’t attend college.”

5. Suggest to the speaker that the city talked about is located at an intermediate point between the basic points of the compass that are mentioned.

Bú zài xīběi, yě bú zài běibiān. Nèmme zài xīběibiān ba!

“It’s not in the west, and not in the north.”

Bú zài xīběi, yě bú zài nánbiān. Nèmme zài xīnánbiān ba!
“It’s not in the west, and not in the south.”

Nèmme zài dōngběibiān ba!

“Then, it must be in the southwest!”

Bú zài dōngbiān, yě bú zài běibiān.

“It’s not in the east, and not in the north.”

Nèmme zài dōngnánbiān nánbiān. ba!

“Then, it must be in the northeast!”

Bú zài dōngbiān, yě bú zài nánbiān.

“It’s not in the east, and not in the south.”

Nèmme zài dōngnánbiān ba!

“Then, it must be in the southeast!”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 6, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Explain that your rank among your siblings is one position younger than the interlocutor thinks.

Nǐ zài nǐmen jiā páiháng lăodà ma? Bù, wǒ páiháng lăo’èr.

“Are you the oldest among your siblings?”

Bù, wǒ páiháng lăo’èr. second-oldest.”
Nǐ zài nǐmen jiā páiháng lǎo’èr ma? Bù, wǒ páiháng lǎosān.

“Are you the second-oldest among your siblings?”

Nǐ zài nǐmen jiā páiháng lǎosān ma? Bù, wǒ páiháng lǎosì.

“Are you the third-oldest among your siblings?”

Nǐ zài nǐmen jiā páiháng lǎosì ma? Bù, wǒ páiháng lǎowǔ.

“Are you the fourth-oldest among your siblings?”

Nǐ zài nǐmen jiā páiháng lǎowǔ ma? Bù, wǒ páiháng lǎoliù.

“Are you the fifth-oldest among your siblings?”

2. Listen to the speaker’s comment about her rank among her siblings, then explain that your rank among your own siblings is one position older. Preface your comment with the introductory question Shì ma? “Really?” or “Is that so?”
Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng Shì ma? Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā lǎoliù.

“I rank sixth at home.”   “Really? I rank fifth at home.”

Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng Shì ma? Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā lǎowǔ.

“I rank fifth at home.”   “Really? I rank fourth at home.”

Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng Shì ma? Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā lǎosì.

“I rank fourth at home.”   “Really? I rank third at home.”

Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng Shì ma? Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā lǎosān.

“I rank third at home.”   “Really? I rank second at home.”

Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng Shì ma? Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā lǎo’èr.

“I rank second at home.”   “Really? I’m the oldest at home.”
3. Use the -le...le construction to add the non-quantified objects listed to the sentence and indicate completed action.

Wǒ mǎile. (chē)  Wǒ mǎile chē le.

“I bought it.” (“car”)  “I bought a car.”

Wǒ màile. (chē)  Wǒ màile chē le.

“I sold it.” (“car”)  “I sold a car.”

Tā yījīng chīle. (táng)  Tā yījīng chīle táng le.

“He already ate it.” (“candy”)  “He already ate the candy.”

Tā dàiile. (míngpiàn)  Tā dàiile míngpiàn le.

“She brought them.” (“name cards”)  “She brought the name cards.”

Nǐ wàngle. (ziwǒ jièshao)  Nǐ wàngle zìwǒ jièshaole.

“You forgot it.”  “You forgot to introduce yourself.”
4. Convert the following non-Beijing-style pronunciations to Beijing-style pronunciations.

dōngbiān    dōngbiānr

“east”      “east”

nánbiān    nánbiānr

“south”    “south”

xībiān    xībiānr

“west”    “west”

běibiān    běibiānr

“north”    “north”

mén    ménr

“door”    “door”

zhèibian    zhèibianr
“here”  “here”

nèibian  nèibianr

“there”  “there”

něibiān  něibiānr

“where?”  “where?”

méi shì  méi shìr

“never mind”  “never mind”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 7, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Respond choosing the female of the two choices given.

Nánde nǚde a?  Nǚde.

“Male or female?”  “Female.”

Nánháir nǚháir a?  Nǚháir.
“Boy or girl?”  “Girl.”

Nánshēng nǚshēng a?  Nǚshēng.

“Male student or female student?”  “Female student.”

Xiānsheng tàitai a?  Tàitai.

“Husband or wife?”  “Wife.”

Gēgē jiějie a?  Jiějie.

“Older brother or older sister?”  “Older sister.”

Bàba māma a?  Māma.

“Mom or Dad?”  “Mom.”

Zŭfù zŭmù a?  Zŭmù.

“Paternal grandfather or paternal grandmother?”  “Paternal grandmother.”

Biăojiě biăojiěfu a?  Biăojiě.
“(Older female) cousin or cousin’s husband?”

2. Respond choosing the male of the two choices given.

Didi mèimei a? Didi.

“Younger brother or younger sister?” “Younger brother.”

Fùqīn mǔqīn a? Fùqīn.

“Mother or father?” “Father.”

Shūshu Āyí a? Shūshu.

“Aunt or Uncle?” “Uncle.”

Wàizŭfù wàizŭmŭ a? Wàizŭfù.

“Maternal grandfather or maternal grandmother?” “Maternal grandfather.”

Nánde péngyou nǚde péngyou a? Nánde péngyou.

“Male friend or female friend?” “Male friend.”
Nánlăoshī nǚlăoshī a?  Nánlăoshī.

“Male teacher or female teacher?”  “Male teacher.”

Nántóngxué nǚtóngxué a?  Nántóngxué.

“Male classmate or female classmate?”  “Male classmate.”

Nántóngshì nǚtóngshì a?  Nántóngshì.

“Male colleague or female colleague?”  “Male colleague.”

3. Comment that you also used to do the type of work the speaker used to do.

Wŏ yuánláí zài yìjiā Wŏ yuánláí yĕ zài yìjiā gōngchăng gōngzuò.  gōngchăng gōngzuò!

“I used to work at a factory.”  “I used to work at a factory, too!”

Wŏ yuánláí zài yìjiā màoyì Wŏ yuánláí yĕ zài yìjiā màoyì gōngsī gōngzuò.  gōngsī gōngzuò!
“I used to work at a trading company.”

Wǒ yuánlái zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò.

“I used to work at the Foreign Ministry.”

Wǒ yuánlái zài Mĕiguo Dàshīguān gōngzuò.

“I used to work at the American Embassy.”

Wǒ yuánlái zài Cháng Chéng Fàndiàn gōngzuò.

“I used to work at the Great Wall Hotel.”

Wǒ yuánlái zài Xī’nnán Hángkōng Gōngsī gōngzuò.

“I used to work at Southwest Airlines.”
Wŏ yuánlái zài zhōngxué. Wŏ yuánlái yĕ zài zhōngxué jiāoshū!

“I used to teach middle school.”

Wŏ yuánlái zuò măimài. Wŏ yuánlái yĕ zuò măimài!

“I used to be in business.”

4. Using the measure kŏu, comment that your family has three more persons in it than the speaker’s family.

Wŏmen jiā yŏu liăngkŏu rén. Wŏmen jiā yŏu wŭkŏu rén!

“We have two people at home.”

Wŏmen jiā yŏu sānkŏu rén. Wŏmen jiā yŏu liùkŏu rén!

“We have three people at home.”

Wŏmen jiā yŏu sìkŏu rén. Wŏmen jiā yŏu qīkŏu rén!

“We have four people at home.”

Wŏmen jiā yŏu wŭkŏu rén!
“We have four people at home.”

Wǒmen jiā yǒu wǔ kǒu rén.

Wǒmen jiā yǒu bā kǒu rén!

“We have seven people at home!”

Wǒmen jiā yǒu bā kǒu rén.

Wǒmen jiā yǒu jiǔ kǒu rén!

“We have five people at home.”

Wǒmen jiā yǒu liù kǒu rén.

Wǒmen jiā yǒu jiǔ kǒu rén!

“We have eight people at home.”

Wǒmen jiā yǒu bā kǒu rén.

Wǒmen jiā yǒu jiǔ kǒu rén!

“We have nine people at home.”

Wǒmen jiā yǒu jiǔ kǒu rén.

Wǒmen jiā yǒu jiǔ kǒu rén!

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 7, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. When the speaker says he has been to a certain country, ask him if he can speak the language of that country (use the series of words for the different languages that ends in -yǔ).

Wǒ qùguo Riběn.  Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Riyǔ?

“I’ve been to Japan.”  “Do you know how to speak Japanese?”

Wǒ qùguo Yīngguo.  Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Yīngyǔ?
“I’ve been to England.”

“Do you know how to speak English?”

Wǒ qùguo Fǎguo. Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Fǎyǔ?

“I’ve been to France.”

“Do you know how to speak French?”

Wǒ qùguo Xībānyá. Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Xībānyáyǔ?

“I’ve been to Spain.”

“Do you know how to speak Spanish?”

Wǒ qùguo Déguo. Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Dèyǔ?

“I’ve been to Germany.”

“Do you know how to speak German?”

Wǒ qùguo Zhōngguo. Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Hányǔ?

“I’ve been to China.”

“Do you know how to speak Chinese?”

2. When the speaker asks whether you can speak a certain language, respond that you can speak a little.
Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Fǎyǔ?  Wǒ hui shuō yìdiănr Fǎyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak “I know how to speak a little French.”

Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Déyǔ?  Wǒ hui shuō yìdiănr Déyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak “I know how to speak a little German.”

Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Táiyǔ?  Wǒ hui shuō yìdiănr Táiyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak “I know how to speak a little Taiwanese.”

Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Yīngyǔ?  Wǒ hui shuō yìdiănr Yīngyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak “I know how to speak a little English.”

Nǐ hui bu hui shuō Wǒ hui shuō yìdiănr Xībānyáyǔ?  Xībānyáyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak “I know how to speak a little Spanish.”
Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Riyŭ? Wŏ huì shuō yìdiănr Riyŭ.

“Do you know how to speak “I know how to speak a little Japanese.”

Nǐ huì bu hui shuō Wŏ huì shuō yìdiănr Pŭtōnghuà?

“Do you know how to speak “I know how to speak a little Mandarin.”

3. Combine the two short sentences into one longer one, adding the particle -de after the verb to indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is performed.

Tā zŏu. Tā hĕn màn. Tā zŏude hĕn màn.

“She walks. She is very slow.” “She walks very slowly.”

Tā shuō. Tā hĕn kuài. Tā shuōde hĕn kuài.

“He speaks. He is very fast.” “He speaks very fast.”

Tā zhăng. Tā hĕn gāo. Tā zhăngde hĕn gāo.
“She grows. She is very tall.”  “She is growing very tall.”


“I learn. I’m very tired.”  “I’m very tired from learning.”


“You write. You are quite good.”  “You write quite well.”


“You serve. You are very good.”  “You serve very well.”

4. Use bié to transform the sentences into negative imperatives.

Nǐ chīde tài duō.  Bié chīde tài duō!

“You eat too much.”  “Don’t eat too much!”

Nǐ xiǎngde tài duō.  Bié xiǎngde tài duō!
“You think too much.”  “Don’t think too much!”

Nǐ shuìde tài jiǔ.  Bié shuìde tài jiǔ!

“You sleep too long.”  “Don’t sleep too long!”

Nǐ zǒude tài kuài.  Bié zǒude tài kuài!

“You walk too quickly.”  “Don’t walk too quickly!”

Nǐ gāoxìngde tài zăo.  Bié gāoxìngde tài zăo!

“You’re happy too early.”  “Don’t get happy too early!”

5. Transform the sentences from the hĕn + STATIVE VERB pattern to the pattern STATIVE VERB + -de + hĕn.


“The stuff here is quite expensive.”

Tāde Zhōngwén hĕn hăo.  Tāde Zhōngwén hāode hĕn.

“Her Chinese is very good.”  “Her Chinese is very good.”
Wǒ hěn lèi.  Wǒ lèide hěn.
“I’m very tired.”  “I’m very tired.”
Wǒ hěn gāoxìng.  Wǒ gāoxìngde hěn.
“I’m very happy.”  “I’m very happy.”
Wǒmen hěn jīnzhāng.  Wǒmen jīnzhāngde hěn.
“We were quite nervous.”  “We were quite nervous.”

Nǐmen jiāde xiăo gǒu hěn Nǐmen jiāde xiăo gǒu kě’ài hěn.
“Your family’s dog is very cute.”
“Your family’s dog is very cute.”

6. Respond to each question using jī- in the sense of “a few.”

Nǐ yǒu méiyou hǎo péngyou?  Wǒ yǒu jīge hǎo péngyou.
“Do you have any good friends?”  “I have a few good friends.”
Xuéxiào yǒu méiyou hǎo lǎoshī?

“Does the school have any good teachers?”

Nǐ yǒu méiyou qián?

“Do you have any money?”

Nǐ rèn bu rènshi Zhōngguo zì?

“Do you know any Chinese characters?”

Nǐ mǎi bu mǎi bēizi?

“Are you buying any cups?”

Wǒ yǒu jǐkuài qián.

“Have you a few dollars.”

Wǒ rènshi jīge Zhōngguo zì.

“I know a few Chinese characters.”

Wǒ yǒu jīge Zhōngguo tóngxué.

“I have some Chinese classmates.”

Wǒ mǎi jīge bēizi.

“I’m buying a couple of cups.”
7. Respond to each question using the yǒude...yǒude... pattern.

Tāmen dōu láile ma? Yǒude láile, yǒude méi lái.

“Have they all come?” “Some have come, some have not come.”

Tāmen dōu huì ma? Yǒude huì, yǒude bú huì.

“Do they all know how to?” “Some of them do, some of them don’t.”

Tāmen dōu rènshi nǐ ma? Yǒude rènshi wǒ, yǒude bú rènshi wǒ.

“Do they all know you?” “Some of them know me, some of them don’t.”

Háizi dōu xīhuan chī táng Yǒude xīhuan, yǒude bù xīhuan.

“Do all children like to eat candy?” “Some do, some don’t.”
Are all those kids boys?” “Some are, some aren’t.”

“Are all of your sons engaged in business?” “Some of them are, some of them aren’t.”

8. Add the ma that indicates obviousness to each of the following sentences.

“Your Chinese is not bad, you know?”

“She’s Chinese!”

Wáng Xiáojie jiéhūnle. Wáng Xiáojie jiéhūnle ma!
“Miss Wang is married.”

“Miss Wang is married, you know?”

Wŏmen láibujíle. Wŏmen láibujíle ma!

“We’re not going to make it.”

“Hey, we’re not going to make it, you know?”

Tā hĕn hăokàn. Tā hĕn hăokàn ma!

“He is good-looking.”

“He’s quite good-looking, you know?”

Zhè shì hăo jīhui. Zhè shì hăo jīhui ma!

“This is a good opportunity.”

“Hey, this is a good opportunity!”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 7, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Answer the questions based on the following information: (a) You arrived last night at 8:30 by train; (b) You came together with your son and daughter; (c) You learned your Chinese in the U.S.
“When did you arrive?” “I arrived last night.”

“How did you get here?” “I came by train.”

“What time did you arrive?” “I arrived at 8:30 in the evening.”

“Did you come alone?” “No, I came together with my son and daughter.”

“Where do you study Chinese?” “I study in the United States.”
“Where did you learn Chinese?”
“I learned Chinese in the States.”

2. The speaker will say that a certain person has lived in a certain country for over 20 years. You should comment that it’s no wonder that he/she speaks the language so well.

Tā zài Zhōngguó zhùle Èrshíduōnián, nánguài tāde Zhōngwén jiāngde zhèmme hǎo.

“He lived in China for more than twenty years.”
“Oh, no wonder he speaks Chinese so well.”

Tā zài Rìběn zhùle Èrshíduōnián, nánguài tāde Rìyǔ jiāngde zhèmme hǎo.

“She lived in Japan for more than twenty years.”
“Oh, no wonder she speaks Japanese so well.”

Tā zài Fǎguó zhùle Èrshíduōnián, nánguài tāde Fǎyǔ jiāngde zhèmme hǎo.

“He lived in France for more than twenty years.”
“Oh, no wonder he speaks French so well.”
Tā zài Yīngguo zhùle Œ, nánguài tāde Yīngyǔ èrshídùnǐán. jiǎngde zhèmme hǎo.

“She lived in England for more than twenty years.”

“Oh, no wonder she speaks English so well.”

Tā zài Déguo zhùle Œ, nánguài tāde Děyǔ jiǎngde èrshídùnǐán. zhèmme hǎo.

“He lived in Germany for more than twenty years.”

“Oh, no wonder he speaks German so well.”

3. Convert the following Beijing-style pronunciations to non-Beijing-style pronunciations.

qiánbianr  qiánbian

“in front”  “in front”

hòubianr  hòubian

“in back”  “in back”

lìbianr  lìbian
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“inside”</td>
<td>“inside”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàibianr</td>
<td>wàibian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“outside”</td>
<td>“outside”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shàngbianr</td>
<td>shàngbian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“on top”</td>
<td>“on top”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàbianr</td>
<td>xiàbian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“on the bottom”</td>
<td>“on the bottom”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuŏbianr</td>
<td>zuŏbian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“left”</td>
<td>“left”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yòubianr</td>
<td>yòubian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“right”</td>
<td>“right”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pángbiānr pángbi</td>
<td>ān</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
“next to”

gǒur
gǒu

“dog”

shàngbānr
shàngbān

“go to work”

xiàbānr
xiàbān

“get off from work”

yǒude shíhour
yǒude shíhou

“sometimes”

xiě Zhōngguo zì
xiě Zhōngguo zi

“write Chinese characters”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 7, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills
1. Tell your interlocutor that you will begin doing what he is asking about after you graduate from college.

Nǐ shémmé shíhou kāishǐ Wǒ dàxué biyè yǐhòu kāishǐ gōngzuò? gōngzuò.

“When will you start “I’ll start working after I graduate working?”

Nǐ shémmé shíhou qù Wǒ dàxué biyè yǐhòu qù Zhōngguo? Zhōngguo.

“When will you go to “I’ll go to China after I graduate China?”

Nǐ shémmé shíhou kāishǐ Wǒ dàxué biyè yǐhòu kāishǐ shàngbān? shàngbān.

“When will you start “I’ll start working after I graduate working?”

Nǐ shémmé shíhou kāishǐ Wǒ dàxué biyè yǐhòu kāishǐ shēnqǐng? shēnqǐng.

“When will you start “I’ll start applying after I graduate applying?”

616
Nǐ shémmē shíhou kāishī Wǒ dàxué biyè yīhòu kāishī jiāoshū? jiāoshū.

“When will you start “I’ll start teaching after I graduate teaching?”

Nǐ shémmē shíhou jiéhūn? Wǒ dàxué biyè yīhòu jiéhūn.

“When will you get “I’ll get married after I graduate married?”

2. You’re in China now. Tell your interlocutor that you did what he is asking about before you came to China.

Nǐ shémmē shíhou biyède? Wǒ lái Zhōngguo yīqián biyède.

“When did you graduate?” “I graduated before I came to China.”

Nǐ shémmē shíhou qùde Xībānyá? Wǒ lái Zhōngguo yīqián qùde.

“When did you go to Spain?” “I went before I came to China.”
Nǐ shénme shíhou xuéde Wǒ lái Zhōngguo yǐqián Zhōngwén?

“When did you learn” “I learned it before I came to China.”

Nǐ shénme shíhou màide chē?

“When did you sell the car?” “I sold it before I came to China.”

3. You will listen to a number of utterances by a speaker, who will pause briefly in the middle of his utterance. When he pauses, you should make the backchannel comment Ng “yeah, uh-huh.” When he finishes his utterance, you should say Ò, zhèiyang “Oh, so that’s how it is/was” or “Oh, I see.”

Wǒ qùnián zài Táibĕi zhùle liúge yuè, Ng.

“I lived in Taipei for six months last year;” “Yeah.”

rènshile hěn duō yǒu yísìde rén.

(I) came to know many interesting people.” “Oh, so that’s how it was.”
Wǒ hé wǒde péngyou qùle Jiùjīnshān,  Ng.

“I went to San Francisco with my friend,  “Uh-huh.”

kěshì wǒmen méiyǒu yìqǐ huílái.  Ò, zhèiyàng.

but we didn’t come back together.”  “Oh, I see.”

Tāmen dōu shì dàxué yīniánjíde xuéshēng,  Ng.

“They’re all freshmen in college,  “Yeah.”

kěshì kànqílái hǎoxiàng shì zài shàng yòu’éryuán!  Ò, zhèiyàng.

but they look like they’re in kindergarten!”  “Oh, I see.”

Tā yuánlái zài gōngchāng gōngzuò,  Ng.

“He used to work in a factory;  “Uh-huh.”

hòuéi yīnwei tāde láobān tài bù hǎo, suóyì tā jiù gǎihángle.  Ò, zhèiyàng.
later because his boss was too mean, he “Oh, so that’s changed careers.” how it was.”

Tāmen jīnnián yuánlái yào qù Riběn, Ng.

“They were originally going to go to Japan “Yeah.” this year,

kěshī tīngshuō nàrde dōngxi hěn guì, suóyì “Oh, zhèiyang. jiù bú qùle.

but they heard that stuff there is very “Oh, I see.” expensive, so they’re not going anymore.”
To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 8, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. In each case, respond to the question in the negative.

Nǐ jiā lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Wǒ jiā lí zhèr bù yuǎn.

“Is your house far from here?” “My house is not far from here.”

Tiānjīn lí Bĕijīng yuǎn ma? Tiānjīn lí Bĕijīng bù yuǎn.

“Is Tianjin far from Beijing?” “Tianjin is not far from Beijing.”

Bĕijīng Fàndiàn lí Bĕijīng Fàndiàn lí Tiān’ānmén bù yuǎn.

“Is the Beijing Hotel far from Tiananmen?” “The Beijing Hotel is not far from Tiananmen.”

Shítáng lí túshūguǎn yuǎn ma? Shítáng lí túshūguǎn bù yuǎn.

“Is the cafeteria far from the library?” “The cafeteria is not far from the library.”
Sùshè lí shíyànshì yuǎn ma? Sùshè lí shíyànshì bù yuǎn.

“Is the dorm far from the lab?”

“The dorm is not far from the lab.”

2. In each case, respond to the question in the affirmative with “Duì,” ....

Nǐ jiā lí dàxué hěn jìn ba? Duì, wǒ jiā lí dàxué hěn jìn.

“You house must be close to the college?”

“Yes, my house is close to the college.”

Tiānjīn lí Běijīng hěn jìn ba? Duì, Tiānjīn lí Běijīng hěn jìn.

“Tianjin must be close to Beijing?”

“Yes, Tianjin is close to Beijing.”

Xuéxiào lí zhèr hěn jìn ba? Duì, xuéxiào lí zhèr hěn jìn.

“The school must be close to here?”

“Yes, the school is close to here.”

Xiànzài lí shàngkède shíjiān Duì, xiànzài lí shàngkède hěn jìn ba? shíjiān hěn jìn.
“Now must be close to the time when class begins?”

“Now must be close to the time when the train departs?”

3. Answer each question using the cues provided.

Cóng zhèr dào nàr dàgài yào duōjiǔ? (zŏulù, liăngge zhōngtōu)

Zŏulùde huà, dàgài yào liăngge zhōngtōu.

“From here to there will take about how long?” (“walk, two hours”)

Cóng Tiān’ānmén dào Běidà yào duōjiǔ? Zuòch (zuòchē, wūshifēn zhōng)

“From Tiananmen to Peking “If you go by bus, it will take about how long?” will take about 50 minutes.”

“Now is close to the time when class begins.”

Duì, xiànzài lí huŏchē kāichēde shíjiān hĕn jin.

kāichēde shíjiān hĕn jin.

“Now is close to the time when the train departs.”

Duì, xiànzài lí huŏchē kāichēde shíjiān hĕn jin.
Cóng wǒ jiā dào nǐ jiā dàgài yào Dădí de huà, dàgài duōjiŭ? (dădī, bàn xiăoshí) yào bàn xiăoshí.

“From my house to your house will “If you go by taxi, it take about how long?” (“take a taxi, will take about half half an hour”)

Cóng Táinán dào Táiběi dàgài yào duōjiŭ? (zuò huŏchē, sān’ge xiăoshí) Zuò huŏchē de huà, dàgài yào sān’ge xiăoshí.

“From Tainan to Taipei will take about “If you take the train, how long?” (“take a train, three it will take about hours”)

4. Agree with what the speaker says, but qualify it by adding Dui, wǒ xiăng...zuŏyòu.

Cóng Bĕijīng dào Tiānjīn yào Dui, wǒ xiăng yào sān’ge zhōngtóu ma? sān’ge zhōngtóu zuŏyòu.

“Does it take 3 hours to go from “Yes, I think it takes Beijing to Tianjin?” about 3 hours.”

Cóng tā jiā dào nǐ jiā yào èrshífēn Dui, wǒ xiăng yào zhōng ma? èrshífēn zhōng zuŏyòu.
“Does it take 20 minutes to go from her house to your house?”

“Yes, I think it takes about 20 minutes.”

Cóng wǒde sūshè dào nǐde sūshè Dui, wǒ xiăng yào shífēn yào shífēn zhōng ma? zhōng zuòyòu.

“Does it take 10 minutes to go from my dorm to your dorm?”

“Yes, I think it takes about 10 minutes.”

Cóng nǐ jiā dào nǐde bàngōngshì Dui, wǒ xiăng yào yíge yào yíge xiǎoshí ma? xiǎoshí zuòyòu.

“Does it take an hour from your home to your office?”

“Yes, I think it takes about an hour.”

Cóng Rìběn dào Táiwān yào sān’ge Dùì, wǒ xiăng yào xiǎoshí ma? sān’ge xiǎoshí zuòyòu.

“Does it take 3 hours to go from Japan to Taiwan?”

“Yes, I think it takes about 3 hours.”

Cóng Xīnjiāpō dào Mǎláixīyà yào Dùì, wǒ xiăng yào shífēn shífēn zhōng ma? zhōng zuòyòu.

“Does it take 10 minutes to go from Singapore to Malaysia?”

“Yes, I think it takes about 10 minutes.”
Unit 8, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Answer the telephone with Wéi? Nín hǎo and tell the dispatcher you want a cab to the place mentioned in the English cue provided.


(Cue: Tiananmen)

“Hi! Friendship Hotel“Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to Car Company.” Tiananmen.”


“Hi! Friendship Hotel“Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to Peking Car Company.” University.”


(Cue: Capital Airport)
“Hi! Friendship Hotel “Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to Capital Car Company.” Airport.”

Nín hǎo! Yōuyì Bīnguăn Qichē Gōngsī. Wéi? Nín hǎo. Wǒ yào yīliàng chē (Cue: Beijing Foreign Studies University)

“Hi! Friendship Hotel “Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to Beijing Car Company.” Foreign Studies University.”


(Cue: Japanese Embassy)


(Cue: Great Wall Hotel)
“Hi! Friendship Hotel “Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to the Great Wall Hotel.”

2. Respond to the questions using the English cues provided.

Nǐmen shéme shíhou lái? Wǒmen wǔfēn zhōng yīhòu jiù lái. (Cue: in 5 min.)

“When are you coming?” “We’ll be there in five minutes.”

Chēzi shéme shíhou dào? Chēzi shífēn zhōng yīhòu jiù dào. (Cue: in 10 min.)

“When will the car arrive?” “The car will be there in ten minutes.”

Huǒchē jǐdiǎn dào? Huǒchē bàn xiǎoshí yīhòu jiù dào. (Cue: in half an hour)

“When will the train be there?” “The train will be there in half an hour.”
“When do you get off?” “I’ll be off work in an hour.”

“After Mr. Li gets home we can eat.”

“How many taxi cabs do you want?” “I want one.”
“How many taxi cabs do you want?” “I want three.”

Nǐ yào jǐliàng chūzū qíchē?
(Wǒ yào wǔliàng.
(Cue: five)

“How many taxi cabs do you want?” “I want five.”

Nǐ yào jǐliàng chūzū qíchē?
(Wǒ yào liǎngliàng.
(Cue: two)

“How many taxi cabs do you want?” “I want two.”

Nǐ yào jǐliàng chūzū qíchē?
(Wǒ yào sīliàng.
(Cue: four)

“How many taxi cabs do you want?” “I want four.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 8, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Convert the expressions with zhōngtóu to xiăoshí.

Wǒ bàn’ge zhōngtóu yǐqián Wǒ bàn’ge xiăoshí yǐqián dāguo diànhuà.  dāguo diànhuà.
“I called half an hour ago.”  “I called half an hour ago.”

Zuò huǒchē yào jīge zhōngtóu?  Zuò huǒchē yào jīge xiǎoshí?

“How many hours does it take by train?” “How many hours does it take by train?”

Wǒ yíge zhōngtóu yīhòu jiù huì găndào nǐ jiā.  Wǒ yíge xiǎoshí yīhòu jiù huì găndào nǐ jiā.

“I’ll rush to your house in an hour.”  “I’ll rush to your house in an hour.”

Tā méi nàixīn děng liăngge zhōngtóu.  Tā méi nàixīn děng liăngge xiǎoshí.

“She doesn’t have the patience to wait two hours.”  “She doesn’t have the patience to wait two hours.”

Nǐmen dào wǒ jiā yào jīge zhōngtóu?  Nǐmen dào wǒ jiā yào jīge xiǎoshí?

“How many hours does it take for you to get to my house?”  “How many hours does it take for you to get to my house?”
Tā yìtiān zhǐ shuǐ liǎngge zhōngtóu.

“He only sleeps two hours a day.”

2. Convert the more formal wèishemme in the following sentences into the more informal zěmme.

Chēzi wèishemme dào xiànzài hái méi lái a?

“Why is the car still not here?”

Nǐ wèishemme nèmme méi nàixīn?

“Why are you so impatient?”

Tā wèishemme juédìng bù qù Zhōngguo le?

“Why did he decide not to go China?”
Jīntiānde jiāotōng zěmme wèishemme zhèmme yōngjī? zhèmme yōngjī?

“Why is today’s traffic so crowded?”

Tā zăoshang wèishemme kànqilai bù gāoxìng? bù gāoxìng?

“Why did she look unhappy this morning?”

Lăo Lĭ wèishemme nèmme xīhuan dă rén?

“Why does Old Li like to hit people so much?”

3. Calm the speaker down! Urge her not to get excited and tell her that what she asks about will happen in just a little while.

Wŏmen shémme Nín bié zháojí, wŏmen yihuī jiù hui shíhou dào a?

“When are we going to get there?”

633
Chēzi shémme shíhou lái a? Nín bié zháojí, chēzi yìhuǐr jiù huì lái.

“When is the car coming?”

“Don’t worry, the car will come in a short while.”

Tāmen shémme Nín bié zháojí, tāmen yìhuǐr jiù huì shíhou zōu a? zōu.

“When are they leaving?”

“Don’t worry, they’ll leave in a short while.”

Huŏchē shémme Nín bié zháojí, huŏchē yìhuǐr jiù huì shíhou kāi a? kāi.

“When will the train depart?”

“Don’t worry, the train will be departing in a little while.”

Shítáng shémme Nín bié zháojí, shítáng yìhuǐr jiù huì shíhou kāi a? kāi.

“When will the cafeteria open?”

“Don’t worry, the cafeteria will open in a little while.”

Tā shémme shíhou Nín bié zháojí, tā yìhuǐr jiù huì zīwǒ zīwǒ jièshao? jièshaole.
“When will he introduce himself?”

Don’t worry, he will introduce himself in a little while.”

4. Answer that whatever the speaker asks about will take place immediately.

Wǒmen shénme shíhou dào?
Wǒmen mǎshàng jiù dào.

“When are we going to arrive?”

Wǒ mǎshàng jiù lái.

Nǐ shénme shíhou lái? Wǒ mǎshàng jiù lái.

“When are you coming?”

“I’ll come right away.”

Tāmen shénme shíhou zǒu? Tāmen mǎshàng jiù zǒu.

“When are they leaving?”

“They’ll be leaving immediately.”

Shítáng shénme shíhou kāimén?
Shítáng mǎshàng jiù kāimén.

“When will the dining hall open?”

“The dining hall will open right away.”
Huŏchē shémme shíhou kāi?  
Huŏchē măshàng jiù kāi.

“When will the train depart?” “The train will depart right away.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 8, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Use shì with a stressed Tone Four for emphasis in responding positively to the following questions.

Zuótiān láide nèige rén bú shi nǐ ba?  Shi, shì wŏ!

“It wasn’t you who came yesterday, ‘Yes, it was me!’”

Jīntiān bú shi wŭyuè shíhào ba?  Shi, shì wŭyuè shíhào!

“It’s not May 10th today, is it?” “Yes, it is May 10th!”

Nèige nǚháizi bú shi nǐde nǚpéngyou Shi, shì wŏde nǚpéngyŏu!

636
“That girl is not your girlfriend, is “Yes, she is my girlfriend!”

Zhè bù shì nǐde chēzi ba?  Shi, shì wǒde chēzi!

“This is not your car, is it?”  “Yes, it is my car!”

Nǐ bù shì Xīfāng rén ba?  Shi, wǒ shì Xīfāng rén!

“You’re not a Westerner, are you?”  “Yes, I am a Westerner!”

Zhèijiàn xíngli zhèmme zhòng, bù shì nǐde ba?  Shi, shì wǒde!

“This suitcase is so heavy, it’s not “Yes, it is mine!” yours, is it?”

2. Add the number expression in the cue provided.

Zhèizhāng zhuōzi. (sānzhāng)  Zhèisānzhāng zhuōzi.

“This table.” (“three”)  “These three tables.”
Nèige rén. (wǔge) Nèiw ŭnge rén.

“That person.” (“five”) “Those five people.”

Něitiān? (shítiān) Něishítiān?

“Which day?” (“ten days”) “Which ten days?”

Zhèiwèi wàiguò zhuānjīā. Zhèijīnwèi wàiguò zhuānjīā.

“This foreign expert.” “These several foreign experts.”

Nèitiáo lù. (liăngtiáo) Nèili āngtiáo lù.

“That road.” (“two”) “Those two roads.”

Zhèiliàng chē. (liù) Zhèiliùliàng chē.

“This car.” (“six”) “These six cars.”

Něijjàn xíngli? (sìjiàn) Něisijjàn xíngli?
“Which piece of luggage?” “Which four pieces of (“four”) luggage?”

3. Combine the two shorter sentences into one longer sentence using zhīhǎo.

Túshūguăn yǐjīng guānle. ūguăn yǐjīng guănle, wǒmen Wǒmen huíjiā. Tūshū zhīhǎo huíjiā.

“The library already “The library already closed, we closed. We go home.” have no choice but to go home.”

Zhèitiáo lù dūchē le. Zhèitiáo lù dūchē le, wǒmen Wǒmen huàn yìtiáo biéde zhīhǎo huàn yìtiáo biéde lù.

“This road is clogged. We change to another road.” “This road is clogged, so we have no choice but to change to another road.”


“The stuff at the cafeteria “The stuff at the cafeteria is is inedible. We go eat at inedible, so we have no choice but the Beijing Hotel.” to go eat at the Beijing Hotel.”
Nǐ bú huì kāichē. Nǐ dǎ diànhuà qù jiào chūzū qìchē.

“Don’t know how to drive. You call a taxi.”

Tāmen xūyào yíge bēibāo. Tāmen qù mǎi yíge bēibāo.

“They need a backpack. They go buy a backpack.”

Nǐ bié zài láile! Nǐ búyòng zài láile!

“Don’t come again!” “You don’t need to come again!”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 9, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Transform the following sentences from Nǐ bié/Nǐ búyào to Nǐ búyòng.

Nǐ bié zài láile! Nǐ búyòng zài láile!

“Don’t come again!” “You don’t need to come again!”
Nǐ búyào gěi qián.  
“Don’t pay any money.”

Nǐ búyòng gěi qián.
“You don’t need to pay any money.”

Nǐ búyào kèqi.  
“Don’t be polite.”

Nǐ búyòng kèqi.
“You don’t need to be polite.”

Nǐ bié dă diànhuà gěi wŏ.  
“Don’t call me.”

Nǐ búyòng dă diànhuà gěi wŏ.
“You don’t need to call me.”

Nǐ búyào mái lĭwù gěi wŏ.  
“Don’t buy presents for me.”

Nǐ búyòng mái lĭwù gěi wŏ.
“You don’t need to buy presents for me.”

2. Be contrary! Disagree with the speaker. If the speaker says “right,” you say “left”; if the speaker says “the next,” you say “the previous” and so forth.

Shì bu shì yào wàng zuŏ guăi?  
Bú shì, yào wàng yòu guăi!

Bú shì, yào wàng yòu guăi!
“Do we turn left?”  “No, turn right!”

Shì bu shi xiàyíge lùkŏu?  Bú shì, shì hàngyíge lùkŏu!

“Is it the next intersection?”  “No, it was the last intersection!”

Shì bu shi yào wàng yòu zhuăn?  Bú shì, shì yào wàng zuǒ zhuăn!

“No, turn left!”

Shì bu shi zhèige hónglǜdēng zuǒ zhuăn?  Bú shì, shì xiàyíge hónglǜdēng yòu zhuăn!  yòu zhuăn!

“No, we turn right at the next traffic light!”

Shì bu shi xiàyitiáo lù yòu Bú shì, shì shàngyìtiáo lù zuǒ zhuăn?  

“No, we were to have turned left at the last street!”

“Do we turn right at the next street?”  “No, we were to have turned left at the last street!”

3. Transform the place words from the forms ending in -r to the forms ending in -li.
Nǐ zhùzai năr? Nǐ zhùzai náli?

“Where do you live?” “Where do you live?”

Nǐ zhǎode dōngxi zài wǒ zhèr. Nǐ zhǎode dōngxi zài wǒ zhèlǐ.

“The thing you’re looking for is here with me.” “The thing you’re looking for is here with me.”

Tāmen dōu qù nàr xiūxi. Tāmen dōu qù nāli xiūxi.

“They all go there to rest.” “They all go there to rest.”

Nàrde lù hěn yōngjǐ. Nàlìde lù hěn yōngjǐ.

“The road there is very clogged.” “The road there is very clogged.”

Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu méiyīu Qǐngwèn, zhèlǐ yǒu méiyīu cèsuǒ? cèsuǒ?

“Yes, there is a bathroom here.” “Excuse me, is there a bathroom here?”

To Download the audio files, please click here.
1. You’re an especially conscientious student, so whenever your classmate proposes doing something, you use the xiān...ránhòu... pattern to suggest that you first study and then do what your classmate proposes.

Wǒmen qù zhǎo Xiǎo Wǒmen xiān xuéxí, ránhòu qù zhǎo Gāo ba. Xiǎo Gāo.

“Let’s go find Little “Let’s first study, then go find Little Gao.”

Wǒmen qù dòngwùyuán Wǒmen xiān xuéxí, ránhòu qù ba. dòngwùyuán.

“Let’s go to the zoo.” “Let’s first study, then go to the zoo.”

Wǒmen huí sùshè Wǒmen xiān xuéxí, ránhòu huí liáotiān ba. sùshè liáotiān.

“Let’s go back to the “Let’s first study, then go back to the dorm to chat.”

Wǒmen qù shuǐjiào ba. Wǒmen xiān xuéxí, ránhòu qù shuǐjiào.
“Let’s go to sleep.”    “Let’s first study, then go to sleep.”

Wǒmen qù mǎi píxié ba.    Wǒmen xiān xuéxí, ránhòu qù mǎi píxié.

“Let’s go buy dress.”    “Let’s first study, then go buy dress shoes.”

2. Use búbì to indicate that what the speaker says is unnecessary.

Yào bu yao gěi nǐ mǎi bēizi?    Búbì gěi wǒ mǎi bēizi.

“Should we buy cups for you?”    “You don’t need to buy me cups.”

Yào bu yao dài míngpiàn?    Búbì dài míngpiàn.

“Should we bring name cards?”    “You don’t need to bring name cards.”

Yào bu yao jiéhūn?    Búbì jiéhūn.

“Should we get married?”    “We don’t need to get married.”
Yào bu yao sòng lǐwù?  Búbì sòng lǐwù.

“Should we give a present?”

Yào bu yao kāichē?  Búbì kāichē.

“Should we drive a car?”

Yào bu yao wèn jiāotōng jǐngchá?  Búbì wèn jiāotōng jǐngchá.

“Should we ask a traffic policeman?”

3. In each case, reply that at your home you keep two of the animals mentioned.

Nǐmen jiāli yăng bu yăng gōu?  Wǒmen jiāli yāngle liăngzhī gōu.

“Do you have any dogs at home?”

Nǐmen jiāli yāng bu yāng Wǒmen jiāli yāngle liăngzhī māo?

māo.
“Do you have any cats at home?”

Nǐmen jiāli yǎng bu yāng yú? Wǒmen jiāli yǎngle liǎngtiáo yú.

“Do you keep fish at home?”

Nǐmen jiāli yǎng bu yāng Wǒmen jiāli yǎngle liǎngzhī niăo?

“Do you keep any birds at home?”

We have two cats at home.”

We have two fish at home.”

We have two birds at home.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 9, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. In replying to the questions, use the antonym of the word the speaker uses.

Tīngshuō nǐde tóngwū Kāi wánxiào! Wǒde tóngwū hěn hěn cōngming. bèn!

“I heard your roommate “You have to be kidding! My roommate is very stupid!”
“I heard Little Wang is “You have to be kidding! Little very lazy.” Wang is very studious!”

“I heard your dog is very “You have to be kidding! Our dog clean.” is very dirty!”

“I heard your room is “You have to be kidding! My room very tidy.” is a mess!”

“I heard your house is “You have to be kidding! My very close to here.” house is very far from here.”

“I heard your gēge is “You have to be kidding! My gēge hěn pàng!”
“I heard your brother is “You have to be kidding! My skinny.” brother is very fat!”

Tīngshuō nǐ māma hěn Kāi wánxiào! Wǒ māma hěn lǎo.

“I heard your mom is “You have to be kidding! My very old.” mother is very young!”

Tīngshuō nǐde xíngli hěn Kāi wánxiào! Wǒde xíngli hěn zhòng.

“ I heard your luggage is “You have to be kidding! My very heavy.” luggage is very light!”

Tīngshuō nǐde tóngwū Kāi wánxiào! Wǒde tóngwū shi shì nán de. nǚde!

“ I heard your roommate “You have to be kidding! My is a guy.” roommate is a girl!”

2. Uset he búdàn...érqīě... pattern to add the cue that you hear to the speaker’s original comment.

Lǎo Lǐ hěn cōngming. (hěn Lǎo Lǐ búdàn hěn cōngming, yònggōng) érqīě hěn yònggōng.
“Old Li is very smart.” “Old Li is not only smart, but also very studious.”

“Little Wang is very lazy.” “Little Wang is not only very lazy, but also very stupid.”

“Your boyfriend is very good-looking.” “Your boyfriend is not only very good-looking, but also very cute.”

“This place is very rich.” “This place is not only very rich, but also very safe.”

Zhèige bēizi hěn piányi. Zhèige bēizi búdàn hěn piányi, (hěn hǎo) érqìě hěn hǎo.
“This cup is very cheap.” “This cup is not only very (‘very good’) cheap, but also very good.”

3. Convert the following non-Beijing-style pronunciations to Beijing-style pronunciations.

yìzhī gǒu yìzhī gǒur
“a dog” “a dog”
yìzhī māo yìzhī māor
“a cat” “a cat”
yìzhī niăo yìzhī niăor
“a bird” “a bird”
yītiáo yú yītiáo yúr
“a fish” “a fish”
dòngwǔyuán dòngwǔyuánr
“zoo” “zoo”
ménkŏu ménkŏur
“doorway” “doorway”
lùkŏu lŏk ŏur
“intersection” “intersection”
zhèiyang zhèiyangr
“this way” “this way”
nèiyang nèiyangr
“that way” “that way”
shuō xiàohua shuō xiàohuar
“tell a joke” “tell a joke”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 9, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Reply in each case that there is no problem and that you can indeed do what is being discussed.
Nǐ kàndedŏng, kānbudŏng? Méi wèntí, wǒ kàndedŏng.

“Can you read it?” “No problem, I can read it.”

Nǐ tīngdedŏng, tīngbudŏng? Méi wèntí, wǒ tīngdedŏng.

“Can you understand it?” “No problem, I can understand it.”

Nǐ zhăodedào, zhăobudào? Méi wèntí, wǒ zhăodedào.

“Can you find it?” “No problem, I can find it.”

Nǐ măidedào, măibudào? Méi wèntí, wǒ măidedào.

“Can you buy one?” “No problem, I can buy one.”

Nǐ zhăodezháo, zhăobuzháo? Méi wèntí, wǒ zhăodezháo.

“Can you find them?” “No problem, I can find them.”
Nǐ kànđèdào, kànbdào?
Méi wèntí, wŏ kànđèdào.

“Can you or can you not see it?”
“No problem, I can see it.”

Nǐ māidezháo, māibuzháo?
Méi wèntí, wŏ māidezháo.

“Are you or aren’t you able to buy some?”
“No problem, I can buy some.”

2. Reply that you are sorry, but you cannot do what is being talked about.

Nǐ zhāodezháo ma?
Duībuqī, wŏ zhāobuzháo.

“Can you find it?”
“Sorry, I can’t find it.”

Nǐ mǎiđèdào ma?
Duībuqī, wŏ māibudào.

“Can you buy it?”
“Sorry, I can’t buy it.”

Nǐ kànđèdào ma?
Duībuqī, wŏ kànbdào.

“Can you see it?”
“Sorry, I can’t see it.”

Nǐ tīngđèdào ma?
Duībuqī, wŏ tīngbudào.
“Can you hear it?”
“Sorry, I can’t hear it.”

Nǐ zhǎodedào ma?
Duìbuqĭ, wŏ zhǎobudào.

“Can you find it?”
“Sorry, I can’t find it.”

Nǐ tīngdedŏng ma?
Duìbuqĭ, wŏ tīngbudŏng.

“Can you understand when you hear it?”
“Sorry, I can’t understand it.”

Nǐ kàndedŏng ma?
Duìbuqĭ, wŏ kànbudŏng.

“Can you understand when you read it?”
“Sorry, I can’t read it.”

Nǐ shuìdezháo ma?
Duìbuqĭ, wŏ shuìbuzháo.

“Can you fall asleep?”
“Sorry, I can’t fall asleep.”

3. The speaker is under the impression that something hasn’t happened yet, but you reply that it has already happened.

Nǐ hái méi kàndào ma?
Wŏ yījīng kàndào le.
“You haven’t seen it yet?” “I’ve already seen it.”

Tā hái méi zhǎngdà ma? Tā yījīng zhǎngdàle.

“He hasn’t grown up yet?” “He has already grown up.”

Nǐmen hái méi mǎidào ma? Wǒmen yījīng mǎidàole.

“Haven’t you bought it yet?” “We have already bought it.”

Nǐmen hái méi zhăodào ma? Wǒmen yījīng zhăodàole.

“You haven’t found it yet?” “We have already found it.”

Tā hái méi shuìzháo ma? Tā yījīng shuǐzháole.

“She hasn’t fallen asleep “She has already fallen asleep.”

Tāmen hái méi tīngdào ma? Tāmen yījīng tīngdàole.

“They haven’t heard yet?” “They’ve already heard.”

4. Transform the following sentences from subject-verb-object sentences to sentences where the object is
pre-posed as the topic, which focuses special attention on the object.

Wǒ zhǎobuzháo wǒde piào le! Wǒde piào zhǎobuzháole!

“I can’t find my ticket!” “My ticket—I can’t find it!”

Wǒ yǒu hóngsède dàizi. Hóngsède dàizi wǒ yǒu.

“I have a red bag.” “A red bag I have.”

Wǒ méiyou hēisède xié. Hēisède xié wǒ méiyou.

“I don’t have black shoes.” “Black shoes I don’t have.”

Wǒmen bù cháng qù Tiān’ānmén wǒmen bù cháng qù.

“We don’t often go to Tiananmen.”

Wǒ bú rènshi zhège zì. Zhège zì wǒ bú rènshi.

“I don’t recognize this character.”
Wǒmen xǐhuan chī Zhōngguó cài wǒmen xǐhuan chī.

“We like to eat Chinese food.”

Wǒ yǐjīng guānle diànnăo le. Diànnăo wǒ yǐjīng guānle.

“I already turned off the computer.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 10, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Agree with your interlocutor and, using the yuè lái yuè pattern, comment that recently it has been getting more and more the way she says.

Tiānqì hěn lěng. Shì a! Zuìjìn tiānqì yuè lái yuè lěngle.

“The weather is “Yes! It’s been getting colder and colder recently.”

Nǐ gēge hěn lǎn. Shì a! Zuijīn tā yuè lái yuè lǎnle.
“Your brother is"Yes! He has been getting lazier and very lazy." lazier recently."

Zhèrde dōngxi hěn Shì a! Zuijin zhèrde dōngxi yuè lái yuè guì.

“The stuff here is"Yes! The stuff here has been getting very expensive." more and more expensive recently."

Nīde māo hěn Shì a! Zuijin wŏde māo yuè lái yuè pàng.

“Your cat is fat." "Yes! My cat has been getting fatter and fatter recently."

2. Agree with your interlocutor and add that, starting with the date or time she mentions, it’s going to rain for quite a few days.

Míngtiān yào xiàyŭ Dui, cóng míngtiān kāishĭ yào xià ma? hăojītīânde yū.

“Is it going to rain"Yes, starting tomorrow, it will rain tomorrow?" for quite a few days."
Hòutiān yào xiàyŭ ma? Dui, cóng hòutiān kāishǐ yào xià hăojǐtiānde yŭ.

“Is it going to rain the day after tomorrow?” “Yes, starting the day after tomorrow, it will rain for quite a few days.”

Jīntiān xiàwŭ yào Dui, cóng jīntiān xiàwŭ kāishǐ yào xiàyŭ ma? xià hăojǐtiānde yŭ.

“Is it going to rain this afternoon?” “Yes, starting this afternoon, it will rain for quite a few days.”

Lĭbài’èr yào xiàyŭ ma? Dui, cóng lĭbài’èr kāishǐ yào xià hăojǐtiānde yŭ.

“Is it going to rain on Tuesday?” “Yes, starting Tuesday, it will rain for quite a few days.”

Xià xīngqīsān yào Dui, cóng xià xīngqīsān kāishǐ yào xiàyŭ ma? xià hăojǐtiānde yŭ.

“Is it going to rain next Wednesday?” “Yes, starting next Wednesday, it will rain for quite a few days.”
Jīntiān wănshang yào Dui, cóng jīntiān wănshang kāishǐ xiàyǔ ma? yào xià hāojǐtiānde yǔ.

“Is it going to rain this evening?“Yes, starting this evening, it will rain for quite a few days.”

Jīntiān yèli yào xiàyǔ Dui, cóng jīntiān yèli kāishǐ yào xià ma? hāojǐtiānde yǔ.

“Is it going to rain tonight? “Yes, starting tonight, it will rain for quite a few days.”

3. You’re a member of a team of television meteorologists. When your colleague reports that the high temperature for today will be a certain number of degrees, you report that the low temperature will be 14 degrees below the high temperature. (Note: The Chinese for “below zero” is lǐngxià as in lǐngxià shísāndù “13 degrees below zero.”)

Jīntiān zuì gāo wēndù shì èrshijì dù. Zuì dī wēndù shì shíwǔ dù.

“Today’s high temperature is 29 degrees.” The low temperature is 15 degrees.”

Jīntiān zuì gāo wēndù shì liùshí dù. Zuì dī wēndù shì sìshí lìù dù.
“Today’s high temperature is 60 degrees.” “The low temperature is 46 degrees.”

Jīntiān zuì gāo wēndù shi jiǔshíjiǔdù. Zuí dī wēndù shi bāshiwǔdù.

“Today’s high temperature is 99 degrees.” “The low temperature is 85 degrees.”

Jīntiān zuì gāo wēndù shi èrshídù. Zuí dī wēndù shi liùdù.

“Today’s high temperature is 20 degrees.” “The low temperature is 6 degrees.”

Jīntiān zuì gāo wēndù shi Zuí dī wēndù shi lǐngxià língdù. shísidù.

“Today’s high temperature is 0 degrees.” “The low temperature is 14 degrees.” below zero.”

4. In each case, use the zhǐ...éryī pattern to stress that you have only the number mentioned in the English cue and that is all.
Nǐ yǒu jīge hǎo péngyou?  Wǒ zhǐ yǒu yīge hǎo péngyou ér yī.
(Cue: only one good friend)

“How many good friends do you have?”
“I only have one good friend.”

Nǐ yǒu jīkuài qián?  Wǒ zhǐ yǒu wǔ kuài qián ér yī.
(Cue: only five dollars)

“How many dollars do you have?”
“I only have five dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu jīzhī māo?  Wǒ zhǐ yǒu yī zhī māo ér yī.
(Cue: only one cat)

“How many cats do you have?”
“I only have one cat.”

Nǐ yǒu jījiàn xíngli?  Wǒ zhǐ yǒu yī jiàn xíngli ér yī.
(Cue: only one piece of luggage)

“How many pieces of luggage do you have?”
“I only have one piece of luggage.”

Nǐ yǒu jītiáo yú?  Wǒ zhǐ yǒu sān tiáo yú ér yī.
(Cue: only three fish)
“How many fish do you have?”  “I only have three fish.”

5. Transform a question into a shì bu shì question or suggestion.

Yào xiàyŭ le ma?  Shi bu shì yào xiàyŭ le?

“How is it going to rain?”  “How is it going to rain?”

Yào dăléi le ma?  Shi bu shì yào dăléi le?

“How is it going to thunder?”  “How is it going to thunder?”

Yào shăndiàn le ma?  Shi bu shì yào shăndiàn le?

“How is there going to be lightning?”  “How is there going to be lightning?”

Tā bú ài nĭ le ma?  Shi bu shì tā bú ài nĭ le?

“Does he not love you?”  “Is it the case that he doesn’t love you anymore?”

Wŏmen xiān qù wèn lăoshī  Shi bu shì wŏmen xiān qù wèn lăoshī?

664
“Are we going to first go“Shall we first go ask the ask the teacher?” teacher?”

6. Respond that, yes, whatever the questioner is asking is definitely so.

Wǒ yídìng dĕi qù ma? Dui, nǐ yídìng dĕi qù.

“Do I definitely have to go?” “Yes, you definitely must go.”

Nǐ yídìng huì děng wǒ ma? Dui, wǒ yídìng huì děng nǐ.

“Will you be sure to wait for“Yes, I’ll be sure to wait for me?” you.”

Nǐ yídìng huì xiǎoxīn ma? Dui, wǒ yídìng huì xiǎoxīn.

“Will you be sure to be“Yes, I’ll be sure to be careful?” careful.”

Wǒmen yídìng yào shàngkè Dui, wǒmen yídìng yào ma? shàngkè.

“Do we definitely have to go“Yes, we definitely have to go to class?” to class.”
Tāmen yídìng huì jīnkuài Dui, tāmen yídìng huì jīnkuài gǎndào ma? gǎndào.

“Will they be sure to hurry “Yes, they’ll be sure to hurry there as fast as they can?” there as fast as they can.”

Dòngwùyuán yídìng yǒu Dui, dòngwùyuán yídìng yǒu dòngwù ma? dòngwù!

“Do zoos definitely have “Yes, zoos definitely have animals?” animals!”

7. Now respond that what the questioner is asking is not necessarily true.

Nǐ yídìng huì lái ma? Bù yídìng, wǒ bù yídìng huì lái.

“Will you definitely be “Not necessarily; I won’t coming?” necessarily be coming.”

Tā yídìng shēnqǐng Hāfó Bù yídìng, tā bù yídìng shēnqǐng Dàxué ma? Hāfó Dàxué.

“Will she definitely be “Not necessarily; she won’t applying to Harvard necessarily be applying to University?” Harvard.”
Tāmen yídìng yào chūshì? Bù yídìng, tāmen bù yídìng yào chēpiào ma?

“Do they definitely need to show their bus tickets?” “Not necessarily; they don’t necessarily have to show their bus tickets.”

Nèitiáo lù xīngqīrì yídìng sāichē ma? Bù yídìng, nèitiáo lù xīngqīrì bù yídìng sāichē.

“Is that road definitely clogged up on Sundays?” “Not necessarily; that road is not necessarily clogged up on Sundays.”

Wáng Xiānsheng yídìng huì shēngqì ma? Bù yídìng, Wáng Xiānsheng bù huì shēngqì.

“Will Mr. Wang definitely get angry?” “Not necessarily; Mr. Wang won’t necessarily get angry.”

Tiānqì yùbào yídìng zhǔn ma? Bù yídìng, tiānqì yùbào bù yídìng zhǔn.

“Are weather forecasts definitely accurate?” “Not necessarily; weather forecasts are not necessarily accurate.”
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 10, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Listen to the question and reply, using the ｂｕ…ｙĕ ｂｕ… pattern plus an antonym of the word used by the speaker.

Dà bu dà?  
Bú dà yĕ bù xiăo.  
“Is it big?”  
“It’s neither big nor small.”

Qīng bu qīng?  
Bù qīng yĕ bú zhòng.  
“Is it light?”  
“It’s neither light nor heavy.”

Lĕng bu lĕng?  
Bù lĕng yĕ bú rè.  
“Is it cold?”  
“It’s neither cold nor hot.”

Nán bu nán?  
Bù nán yĕ bù róngyi.  
“Is it hard?”  
“It’s neither hard nor easy.”

Tā gāo bu gāo?  
Tā bù gāo yĕ bù āi.  
“Is he tall?”  
“He’s neither tall nor short.”
Qìwēn gāo bu gāo? Qìwēn bù gāo yě bù dī.

“Is the temperature “The temperature is neither high nor low.”

Qìwēn dī bu dī? Qìwēn bù dī yě bù gāo.

“Is the temperature “The temperature is neither low nor high.”

2. Respond to each question with the STATIVE VERB + -de yào sǐ pattern, to express that something is extremely something else.

Nǐ rè bu rè? Wŏ rède yào sǐ!

“Are you hot?” “I’m extremely hot!”

Nǐ máng bu máng? Wŏ mángde yào sǐ!

“Are you busy?” “I’m extremely busy!”

Nǐ lèi bu lèi? Wŏ lèide yào sǐ!

“Are you tired?” “I’m extremely tired!”
Nǐ jīn bu jīnzhāng? Wǒ jīnzhāngde yào sǐ!

“Are you nervous?” “I’m extremely nervous!”

Nǐmen kùn bu kùn? Wǒmen kùnde yào sǐ!

“Are you guys tired?” “We’re totally beat!”

Nǐmende sùshè zāng bu zāng? Wǒmende sùshè zāngde yào sǐ!

“Is your dorm dirty?” “Our dorm is filthy!”

Tā pàng bu pàng? Tā pàngde yào sǐ!

“Is he fat?” “He’s extremely fat!”

Tā bèn bu bèn? Tā bènde yào sǐ!

“Is she stupid?” “She’s unbelievably stupid!”

Jīntiān lěng bu lěng? Jīntiān lěngde yào sǐ!

“Is it cold today?” “It’s incredibly cold today!”
Dōngxi guì bu guì? Dōngxi guí de yào sī!

“Are things expensive?” “Things are incredibly expensive!”

3. Use the yòu...yòu... pattern to indicate that a certain dish of food is both what the speaker said and delicious.

Zhèige cài hǎokàn ma? Zhèige cài yòu hǎokàn yòu hǎochī.

“Does this dish look good?” “This dish both looks good and is delicious.”

Zhèige cài piányi ma? Zhèige cài yòu piányi yòu hǎochī.

“Is this dish cheap?” “This dish is both cheap and delicious.”

Zhèige cài róngyi zuò ma? Zhèige cài yòu róngyi zuò yòu hǎochī.

“Is this dish easy to make?” “This dish is both easy to make and delicious.”

Zhèige cài dui shēnti hǎo ma? Zhèige cài yòu dui shēnti hǎo yòu hǎochī.
“Is this dish good for“This dish is both good for the body and delicious.”

4. Use the rúguŏ...jiù... pattern to comment that if the speaker does what she says she’ll do, you can’t be friends with her anymore.

Wŏ yào gēn Xiăo Rúguŏ nǐ gēn Xiăo Zhăo jiéhūn, wŏ jiù Zhăo jiéhūn. bù néng zài gēn nǐ zuò péngyou le.

“I’m marrying Little“If you marry Little Zhao, then I can’t be friends with you anymore.”

Wŏ yào gēn lăoshĭ Rúguŏ nǐ gēn lăoshĭ shuŏ wŏ táokè le, wŏ jiù bù néng zài gēn nǐ zuò péngyou le.

“I’m telling the“If you tell the teacher that I skipped class, then I can’t be friends with you anymore.”

Wŏ yào gēn nǐ di di Rúguŏ nǐ gēn wŏ dì di líhūn, wŏ jiù bù líhūn le. néng zài gēn nǐ zuò péngyou le.

“I’m getting a“If you get a divorce from my younger brother, then I can’t be friends with younger brother.” you anymore.”
Wǒ yào gēn nǐ māma Rúguò nǐ gēn wǒ māma shuō wǒ yǒu shuō nǐ yǒu nǚpéngyǒu le, wǒ jiù bù néng zài gēn nǚpéngyou le. nǐ zuò péngyou le.

“I’m telling your “If you tell my mother that I have a mother that you have girlfriend, then I can’t be friends with a girlfriend.” you anymore.”

5. Using hěn shǎo, answer that whatever is being asked about happens very seldom. Precede your answer with the phrase Shuō shízàide “to tell the truth.”

Zhèige difang chángcháng Shuō shízàide, zhèige difang hěn xiàxué ma? shǎo xiàxué.

“Does it often snow in this “To tell the truth, it seldom snows place?” in this place.”

Běijīng chángcháng xiàyǔ Shuō shízàide, Běijīng hěn shǎo ma? xiàyǔ.

“Does it often rain in “To tell the truth, it seldom rains Beijing?” in Beijing.”

Zhèr chángcháng chū Shuō shízàide, zhèr hěn shǎo chū tàiyáng ma? tàiyáng.
“Does the sun often come out here?”
“To tell the truth, the sun seldom comes out here.”

Nâr chángcháng dâléi ma? Shuō shízàide, nàr hěn shăo dâléi.

“Is there often thunder?”
“To tell the truth, there is seldom thunder there.”

Nèige difang chángcháng Shuō shízàide, nèige difang hěn shăndiàn ma? shăo shăndiàn.

“Is there often lightning?”
“To tell the truth, there is seldom lightning there.”

Nĭ chángcháng qù wánr Shuō shízàide, wŏ hěn shăo qù ma? wánr.

“Do you often go have fun?”
“To tell the truth, I seldom go have fun.”

Nĭ māma chángcháng Shuō shízàide, wŏ māma hěn shēngqì ma? shăo shēngqì.

“Does your mom often get angry?”
“To tell the truth, my mom seldom gets angry.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).
Unit 10, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add  hăoxiàng...de yàngzi “it seems that...” to each of the sentences you hear.

Yào wūkuài qián.  Hăoxiàng yào wūkuài qián de yàngzi.

“It costs five dollars.”  “It seems it costs five dollars.”

Tā xiànzài bú zài.  Tā hăoxiàng xiànzài bú zài de yàngzi.

“She’s not here now.”  “It seems she’s not here now.”

Tàiyáng chūláile.  Tàiyáng hăoxiàng chūláile de yàngzi.

“The sun has come out.”  “It seems the sun has come out.”

Xiăo Zhāngde yùnqi hĕn Xiăo Zhāngde yùnqi hăoxiàng hĕn hăo.  hăode yàngzi.

“Little Zhang’s luck is very good.”  “It seems Little Zhang’s luck is very good.”

Tā biànshòule.  Tā hăoxiàng biànshòule de yàngzi.

675
“He has gotten skinnier.” “It seems he has gotten skinnier.”

Jīntiān hĕn cháoshī. Jīntiān hǎoxiàng hĕn cháoshīde yàngzi.

“Today is very humid.” “It seems today is very humid.”

2. Change the following sentences from mĕi + MEASURE to reduplicated measure, retaining the meaning “every.”

Zuìjìn mĕitiān dōu chū tàiyáng. Zuìjìn tiāntiān dōu chū tàiyáng.

“It’s been sunny every day “It’s been sunny every day recently.”


“Every one here has a dog.” “Every one here has a dog.”

Tā mĕinián dōu huí Táiwān Tā niánnián dōu huí Táiwān yícì.

“She goes back to Taiwan “She goes back to Taiwan every year.”

yícì. every year.”
Shūjiàshangde shū, wǒ Shūjiàshangde shū, wǒ měiběn dōu yào.

“I want every one of those books on the bookshelf.”

Wǒmen jiāde zhuōzi, tā měizhāng dōu màile.

“He sold every single table in our house.”

3. Agree with the speaker, adding gēnběn for emphasis.

Wǒmen yùnqi bù hǎo. Dui, wǒmen yùnqi gēnběn bù hǎo.

“Our luck is bad.” “Yes, our luck is just plain bad.”

Tāmen méi bànfā chūmén. Dui, tāmen gēnběn méi bànfā chūmén.

“They can’t leave the house.” “Yes, there’s no way at all they can leave the house.”
Tā méi you shémme Dui, tā gēnběn méi you shémme péngyou.  

“She doesn’t have any “Yes, she doesn’t have any friends.””

Tā bù dŏng tā zài shuō Dui, tā gēnběn bù dŏng tā zài shémme. 

“Yes, she doesn’t have any friends at all.”

“Tā méi shuō shémme bù Dui, tā gēnběn méi shuō shémme hǎotīngde huà.  

“She doesn’t understand “Yes, she doesn’t understand what she’s talking about.”” what she’s talking about at all.”

Tā méi shuō shémme bù Dui, tā gēnběn méi shuō shémme hǎotīngde huà.  

“Yes, she didn’t say anything “Yes, he didn’t say anything bad bad.”” at all.”

4. Respond (using Qíshí,...) that actually you would like to do what the speaker has suggested, but (using dànshi) say that you recently have really been too busy and don’t have any time at all.

Nǐ xiăng bu xiāng Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiăng chūqu wánr, dànshi chūqu wánr?  

“Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiăng chūqu wánr, dànshi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mángle, gēnběn méi you shíjiān.”
“Would you like to go out and have some fun?”

“Actually, I’d very much like to go out and have some fun, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng zǒulù qù?

Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng zǒulù qù, dànshi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mánɡle, gěnběn méiyǒu shíjiān.

“Would you like to walk there?”

“Actually, I’d very much like to walk there, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng xīūxi yǐhuír?

Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng xīūxi yǐhuír, dànshi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mánɡle, gěnběn méiyǒu shíjiān.

“Would you like to rest for a while?”

“Actually, I’d very much like to rest for a while, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng dào yǔyán zhōnɡxīn xué Riyū?

Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng dào yǔyán zhōnɡxīn xué Riyū, dànshi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mánɡle, gěnběn méiyǒu shíjiān.
“Would you like “Actually, I’d very much like to go to the to go to the language center to learn Japanese, but language center to recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t learn Japanese?” have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng gēn nǐ qù xué kāichē, gēn wǒ qù xué dān- shì wǒ zuìjīn shízài tài mángle, kāichē? gēnběn méiyǒu shíjiān.

“Would you like to go learn how to drive with me?” “Actually, I’d very much like to learn how to drive with you, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng gēn nǐ dào dòngwùyuánr qù wánr, dànshì wǒ zuìjīn shízài tài mángle, gēnběn méiyǒu shíjiān.

“Would you like “Actually, I’d very much like to go to the to go to the zoo with you to have some fun, but with me to have recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t some fun?” have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng chī zhōngfān yīhòu gēn nǐmen liáotiān, dànshì wǒ zuìjīn shízài tài mángle, gēnběn méiyǒu shíjiān.
“Would you like “Actually, I’d very much like to chat with to chat with us you after we’ve had lunch, but recently after we’ve had I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have lunch?” any time at all.”

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Unit 10, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Answer the following questions about where you are from using the cue provided. Indicate whether the city mentioned is on the east or west coast of the U.S. If it’s on the east coast, say that it’s not too far from New York; if it’s on the west coast, say it’s not too far from San Francisco.

Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shénme dìfang?

Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shénme dìfang?

(Cue: San Jose)

“So, where in the U.S. is your home?”

Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shénme dìfang?

Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shénme dìfang?
“So, where in the U.S. is your home?”

“It’s on the U.S. west coast, Oakland, not too far from San Francisco.”

“Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shémme difang?

Zài Měiguó dōngàn, Newark, New Jersey, lǐ Niǔyē bú tài yuǎn.

(Cue: Newark, New Jersey)

“So, where in the U.S. is your home?”

“It’s on the U.S. east coast, Newark, New Jersey, not too far from New York.”

“Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shémme difang?

Zài Měiguó xī’àn, Sacramento, lǐ Jiùjīnshān bú tài yuǎn.

(Cue: Sacramento)

“So, where in the U.S. is your home?”

“It’s on the U.S. west coast, Sacramento, not too far from San Francisco.”
Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shémme difang?
Zài Měiguó dōngān, Philadelphia, lí Niǔyuē bú tài yuǎn.

(Cue: Philadelphia)

“So, where in the U.S. is your home?”
“It’s on the U.S. east coast, Philadelphia, not too far from New York.”

2. Use bǐ to state where it’s hotter: “here” or “there”? (Note that some temperatures are Centigrade while others are Fahrenheit.)


“It’s 39˚ here. It’s 38˚ there.” “It’s hotter here than there.”


“It’s 85˚ here. It’s 90˚ there.” “It’s hotter there than here.”

“It’s 27° here. It’s 29° there.”  “It’s hotter there than here.”


“It’s 40° here. It’s 33° there.”  “It’s hotter here than there.”

3. Use bǐ to state who is older (use dà for “older”).

Xiǎo Zhāng 28 suì. Xiǎo Lǐ 33 suì.  Xiǎo Lǐ bǐ Xiǎo Zhāng dà.

“Little Zhang is 28. Little Li is 33.”  “Little Li is older than Little Zhang.”

Lǎo Zhèng 57 suì. Lǎo Xiè 55 suì.  Lǎo Zhèng bǐ Lǎo Xiè dà.

“Old Zheng is 57. Old Xie is 55.”  “Old Zheng is older than Old Xie.”

Luó Xiānshēng 32 suì. Shī Xiānshēng bǐ Shī Xiānshēng 31 suì.  Xiānshēng dà.

684
“Mr. Luo is 32. Mr. Shi is 31.”

“Mr. Luo is older than Mr. Shi.”

“Ms. Huang is 27. Ms. Lin is 29.”

“Ms. Lin is older than Ms. Huang.”

4. Use the A méiyòu B nèmme C pattern to state that the one person is not as tall as the other person.

“Little Chen is 1 m 81 cm. Old Bai is 1 m 82 cm.”

“Little Chen is not as tall as Old Bai.”

“Little Ma is 1 m 63 cm. Old Sun is 1 m 58 cm.”

“Old Sun is not as tall as Little Ma.”

“Little He is 1 m 73 cm. Old Zhao is 1 m 80 cm.”

“Old Zhao is not as tall as Little He.”

685
“Little He is 1 m 74 cm. Old “Little He is not as tall as Zhao is 1 m 77 cm.” Old Zhao.”

Xiǎo Wú yǐmǐ liùjiǔ. Lǎo Hóu Lǎo Hóu méiyǒu Xiǎo Wú yǐmǐ liùbā. nèmme gāo.

“Little Wu is 1 m 69 cm. Old “Old Hou is not as tall as Hou is 1 m 68 cm.” Little Wu.”

5. Use the A méiyǒu B nèmme C pattern to state that it’s not as cold in the one city as it is in the other. (As before, some temperatures are Centigrade while others are Fahrenheit.)


“It’s 6˚ in Beijing. It’s 7˚ in “It’s not as cold in Tianjin as it is in Beijing.”


“It’s 13˚ in Shanghai. It’s “It’s not as cold in Nanjing as it 14˚ in Nanjing.” is in Shanghai.”
Xiānggăng liǎngdù. Àomén Xiānggăng méiyou Àomén yīdù. nèmme lĕng.

“It’s 2˚ in Hong Kong. It’s “It’s not as cold in Hong Kong 1˚ in Macao.”


“It’s 44˚ in New York. It’s “It’s not as cold in San Francisco as it is in New York.”

6. Based on the information you hear, state whether “you” weigh more than “he” or “she” does, or whether “you” do not weigh as much as “he” or “she” does. For “to weigh” use zhòng “be heavy.”

Wŏ qīshibāgōngjīn. Tā qīshiqīgōngjīn. Wŏ bĭ tā zhòng.

“I weigh 78 kilos. He weighs 77 kilos.”

Wŏ wūshisígōngjīn. Tā Wŏ méiyou tā nèmme zhòng.

Wŏ wūshiwūgōngjīn.
“I weigh 54 kilos. She weighs “I don’t weigh as much as 55 kilos.”

Wǒ liùshísāngōngjīn. Tā liùshi’èrgōngjīn. Wǒ bǐ tā zhòng.

“I weigh 63 kilos. He weighs 62 “I weigh more than he does.”

Wǒ sìshijīügōngjīn. Tā Wǒ méiyou tā nèmme wǔshijīügōngjīn. zhòng.

“I weigh 49 kilos. She weighs “I don’t weigh as much as 59 kilos.”

7. Use the pattern ...-de shíhou to transform the two shorter, separate sentences into one longer, complex sentence that expresses “When...”.

Wǒ xiăo. Wǒ bù xīhuan Wǒ xiăode shíhou, bù xīhuan xuéxí. xuéxí.

“I was small. I didn’t like to “When I was small, I didn’t like study.”

688
Wŏ biyèle. Wŏ fǔmŭ Wŏ biyède shíhou, fŭmŭ méiyou lái.

“I graduated. My parents “When I graduated, my parents didn’t come.”

Wŏ tōngzhī tāmen le. Yĭjīng Wŏ tōngzhī tāmende shíhou, tài wănle.

“I notified them. It was “When I notified them, it was already too late.”

Wŏ dào Mălāixīyà le. Wŏ bù Wŏ dào Mălăixīyăde shíhou, bū tài shĭying.

“I arrived in Malaysia. I had “When I arrived in Malaysia, I had a hard time getting used to”

Wŏ yímín Mĕiguó le. Wŏ Wŏ yímín Mĕiguode shíhou, yĭjīng shíwūsuì le.

“I immigrated to the U.S. I “When I immigrated to the U.S., I was already 15.”
Wǒ kǎoshi. Wǒ dōu huì Wǒ kǎoshide shíhou, dōu huì jǐnzhāngde yào sǐ.

“I take a test. I always get nervous.”

Wǒ zài Zhōngguo liúxué. Wǒ zài Zhōngguo liúxuéde shíhou, qùle hěn duō yǒu yiside difang.

“I studied abroad in China. I went to lots of interesting places.”
4. Role Play Exercises

Unit 1, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: How are you?
   B: How are you?

   A: Where are you going?
   B: I’m going to the dining hall. How about you?

   A: I’m going to the library.

2. A: Hello!
   B: Hi!

   A: Where are you going?
   B: I’m going back to my dorm. And you?

   A: I’m going to take care of a little something.

3. A: Hello, how are you doing?
   B: Hi!

   A: Where are you going?
B: I’m going to the library. How about yourself?
A: I’m also going to the library.

4. A: Hi! Where is Wang Jingsheng going?
B: Wang Jingsheng is going to the library.
A: And Ke Leien?
B: Ke Leien is also going to the library.
A: And you?
B: I’m returning to my dorm.

The following role plays use some of the vocabulary from the Classroom Expressions.

5. A: Good morning! How are you? Where are you going?
B: I’m going to take care of some stuff. How about you?
A: I’m going to the dining hall.
B: Good, very good. Goodbye! See you tomorrow.
A: See you tomorrow!

6. A: Good morning! How are you? Where are you going?
B: I’m going back to my dorm.
A: Could you say that again?
B: I’m returning to my dormitory. How about you? Where are you going?

A: I’m also returning to my dormitory.

Unit 1, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: How are you?

B: How are you? I haven’t seen you for a long time. How have you been?

A: Fine, thanks. How are your mom and dad?

B: They’re both fine, thanks.

A: I’ll be going now. So long!

B: So long!

2. A: Hi! Long time no see! How have you been?

B: Pretty good. How have you been?

A: Very busy.

B: I’ve been very busy, too.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How is your spouse?
B: He/she’s fine, thanks. How about your spouse?

A: He/she’s fine, too.

B: I have something I have to do. I’ll be going now. See you!

A: See you!

3. A: Haven’t seen you for quite a while. How have you been?

B: I’ve been very busy. How have you been?

A: I’ve been very busy, too. How are your spouse and children?

B: They’re all fine, thanks. How are your mom and dad?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: They’re both fine, too.

B: Where are you going?

A: I’m going to the library. And you?

B: I have something I have to do. I’ll be going now…

4. A: Hi! Long time no see! How have you been?

B: I’m very tired. How have you been?

A: I’m also very tired.
B: How is your mom?

A: She’s very busy.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: How’s your dad?

A: He’s fine.

B: Where are you going?

A: I’m returning to my dorm. And you?

B: I’m going to the cafeteria. I’ll be going now…

A: Bye-bye!

Unit 1, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hi, Old Gao, how are you? Have you been busy lately?

B: I’m still the same as before. I’m not too busy. Little Wang, how have you been recently?

A: Pretty good, not too busy. How have your studies been going? Is Chinese hard?

(switch to another pair of students)
B: My studies have been quite intense. Chinese is hard! How has your work been going?

A: My work has lately been very busy.

B: I have something I have to do, I’ll be going now. Bye!

A: Goodbye. See you tomorrow!

2. A: Hello, Old He!

B: Hello, Little Zhao!

A: How have you been doing recently?

B: Very well, thanks. Still the same as before. How have you been?

A: Not too well. I’m too busy.

B: Recently, I’ve been very busy, too.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How are your children?

B: They’re all fine. Their studies have been quite intense. How is your spouse?

A: Fine. He/she is not too busy. Where are you going? Are you going to the library?

B: I’m not going to the library. I’m going to the cafeteria.
A: I’m going to the library to take care of a little something. I’ll be going now.

B: Bye-bye!

3. A: Hi, Little Wang! How have you been recently?

B: Hi, Old Ke. I’m very sleepy. How have you been? Are you sleepy, too?

A: I’m not sleepy. Recently I’ve been very busy.

B: How are your studies going? Is Chinese hard?

A: My studies are very intense. Chinese is very hard.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: Chinese is not hard, Chinese is easy! Where are you going? Back to the dorm?

A: I’m going to the library. Are you going to the library, too?

B: I’m not going to the library. I’m returning to the dorm. Bye!

A: Bye! See you tomorrow!

4. A: Little He, you’re very tall!

B: I’m not tall. Old Zhao, you also are not short!

5. A: My father is very tall. Is your father tall?
B: My father is quite short. My mother is tall.

Unit 1, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Mr. Lin, Mrs. Lin, welcome, welcome. Come in, come in!
   
   B: Mr./Miss Ke, how are you? Thank you!
   
   A: You’re welcome. Please sit down, please sit down. Are you both well?
   
   B: Thank you, we’re both very well. Are your parents well?
   
   A: They’re also very well, thank you.
   
   B: I have a little something, I must be going now. Thank you.
   
   A: You’re welcome. Take it easy. Goodbye!

2. A: Mr. and Mrs. Xie, welcome, welcome. Come in, come in!
   
   B: Mr./Ms. Wang, how are you? Thank you.
   
   A: Please sit down, please sit down.
   
   B: Thank you, thank you.

(switch to another pair of students)
A: Mr. and Mrs. Xie, I have a little something, I must be going now.

B: Mr./Ms. Wang, where are you going?

A: I’m going to take care of something. Mr. and Mrs. Xie, thank you.


3. A: Teacher Zhao, welcome, welcome. Come in, come in!

B: Mr./Miss Gao, thank you. Long time no see.

A: Right, long time no see. Please sit down, please sit down.

B: Thank you. How have your studies been going? Is Chinese interesting?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Chinese is too hard, it’s not interesting.

B: Mr./Miss Gao, I’ve gotten tired, I must be going now. Thank you.

A: You’re welcome. Take it easy. Goodbye, Teacher Zhao.

B: Goodbye, goodbye.

4. A: Old Li, how are you? Welcome, welcome!

B: Little Gao, how have you been lately?
A: Pretty good. Come in, come in! Have you been well lately?

B: Still the same as before. How are your spouse and kids? Are you all well?

A: We’re all fine. My spouse is fine. My kids are also fine.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: How are your studies?

A: My studies are very intense. How about you? Is your work busy?

B: My work is not too busy.

A: Is your work interesting?

B: My work is uninteresting. Little Gao, I have something, I have to go now. Thank you!

A: You’re welcome. Take it easy. Goodbye!

Unit 2, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: What’s your name?

B: My name is ___. What’s your name?
A: My name is ___.

B: Is he your teacher?

A: Correct, he’s our Chinese teacher.

B: What is his name?

A: His name is Lǐ Qún. He’s Malaysian.

2. A: Excuse me, what country are you guys from?

B: I’m Canadian. She’s American. What country are you from?

A: I’m Chinese.

B: What’s your name?

A: My name is ___. What’s your name?

B: My name is ___.

3. A: Excuse me, are they your teachers?

B: They’re my classmates, not my teachers.

A: Are they all Americans?

B: Not all are. This classmate is also American, but that classmate is Taiwanese.

4. A: Excuse me, what country are you from?
B: I’m American, Chinese-American. How about you? What country are you from?

A: I’m also American. Are your classmates all American?

B: They’re not all American. This classmate is American, but that classmate is Japanese.

5. A: What’s the name of your Chinese teacher?

B: Her name is Zhāng Huiqíáng.

A: What country is she from?

B: She’s Singaporean.

A: How has Chinese been lately? Is it hard? Is it interesting?

B: Chinese is not hard, it’s easy. It’s also very interesting.

6. A: Which classmate is Spanish?

B: This classmate is Spanish!

7. A: Which teacher is named Yáng Pēixīn?

B: That teacher is named Yáng Pēixīn!

Unit 2, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.
1. A: I will introduce you guys. Old Wang, this is Little Li. Little Li, this is Old Wang.

   B: Little Li, how are you? Happy to meet you! Welcome to China!

   C: Old Wang, how are you? Thank you. I’m also happy to meet you.

2. A: Let me introduce you. This is my new roommate, her/his name is ___. This is my old classmate, her/his name is ___.

   B: How are you? Welcome to America!

   C: I’m happy to meet you, Mr./Ms. ___.

   B: Oh, don’t address me like that! It’s better if you call me Little ___. C: O.K. In that case, why don’t you also call me Little ___.

3. A: I’m your new roommate. My name is ___. I’m happy to meet you?

   B: How are you? I’m also happy to meet you. My name is ___.

   A: Excuse me, what country are you from? Are you American?

   B: I’m not American. I’m Canadian.

4. A: Who is that?
B: She is our new roommate, her name is Lili.

A: And who is he?

B: He is our Chinese teacher, Teacher Zhāng.

A: And who are they?

B: They are our new classmates. You don’t know them?

A: I don’t know any of them. Please introduce them to me.

5. A: Excuse me, are you Chinese?

B: No, I’m not Chinese, I’m Japanese. Are you American?

A: No, I’m not American, I’m Canadian.

B: How should I address you?

A: Oh, my name is ___. It would be best if you called me Little ___. What’s your name?

B: My name is ___. In that case, why don’t you also call me Little___.

A: Little___, I have a little something, I’ll be leaving first now. Goodbye!

B: I must also be leaving now. Goodbye!

6. A: Mr./Miss Zhao, how are you?

B: Don’t call me like that. Just call me Little Zhao.
A: O.K., in that case you call me Little He, too. Little Zhao, what country are you from?

B: I’m Chinese. So how about you? What country are you from?

A: I’m American. Welcome to America! I’m happy to meet you!

Unit 2, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: How do you do? What’s your honorable surname?
   B: My last name is ___. What is your honorable surname?
   A: My last name is ___.
   B: Excuse me, I have a little something (to do). I’ll leave first. Goodbye!
   A: Goodbye!

2. A: That must be your husband/wife?
   B: No, no, he/she is not my husband/wife. He/she is my colleague.
   A: Excuse me, I have a little something (to do). I’ll leave first. I’m very happy to meet you?
B: I’m also very happy to meet you. Goodbye!

3. A: I guess that must be Madam Zhao?

B: No, no, she’s not Madam Zhao. She’s my Chinese teacher. Her last name is Chen.

A: Excuse me, I have a little something (to do). I’ll leave first. I’m very happy to meet you?

B: I’m also very happy to meet you. Goodbye!

4. A: How do you do? What’s your honorable surname?

B: My last name is ___. What is your honorable surname?

A: My last name is ___. Mr./Ms. ___, at what organization do you work?

B: I work at the Canadian Embassy. Mr./Ms. ___, where do you work?

A: I now don’t work anymore. I study Chinese.

(switch to another group of students)

B: Where are you studying Chinese?

A: I’m studying Chinese at the Chinese University of Hong Kong.

B: Is Chinese hard?
A: Chinese is hard, but it’s very interesting.

5. A: How do you do? What’s your honorable surname?

B: My last name is ___. What’s your honorable surname?

A: My last name is ___. Mr./Ms. ___, what country are you from? Where do you work?

B: I’m American, I work at a company. Oh, let me introduce you. This is my husband/wife, his/her name is ___.

(switch to another group of students)

A: How do you do? I work at the Chinese Foreign Ministry. Where do you work?

C: I’m a college teacher. I work at ___ College.

A: Very happy to meet you! What is your college president’s last name?

C: Our college president is surnamed ___. Do you know him/her?

A: I know him/her! President ___ is very good. The teachers at ___ College are also all very good!

Unit 2, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.
1. A: Hello! My name is ___. Please instruct me more.

B: My surname is ___. Sorry, I didn’t bring name cards.

A: I didn’t bring name cards either.

B: Mr./Ms. ___, where do you work?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: I work at Peking University. Mr./Ms. ___, where do you work?

B: I work at Sino-American Trading Company.

A: Mr./Ms. ___, excuse me, I have to go do something. Goodbye?

B: Bye!

2. A: General Manager Li, this is Manager Xie from China Trading Company.

B: Oh, welcome, welcome! My name is Li. Sorry, I didn’t bring name cards.

C: My name is Gao. I work at Sino-American University. Please give me more advice.

B: Mr./Ms. Gao, I suppose that you must be Chinese?

(switch to another group of students)
C: Yes, my spouse and I are both Chinese. I suppose that you are Chinese, too?

B: No, I’m not Chinese, I’m American, Chinese-American.

A: Excuse me, I have to go work now. I’ll leave now before you all. Goodbye!

3. A: Hello! You must be Ms. Bai from the Chinese Foreign Ministry?

B: You made a mistake. My last name is Hou, my last name is not Bai.

A: Oh, sorry, sorry, I got it wrong.

B: Never mind.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: I suppose you must be from Spain?

B: No, no. I’m not Spanish. I’m Canadian!

A: Sorry, sorry. I got it wrong!

B: Never mind. I have to be going now. Goodbye! See you tomorrow!

4. A: Who is that lady?

B: Her last name is Luo. Her whole name is Luó Měiyún.
A: Who is that gentleman?

B: His last name is Shi. His full name is Shī Dàpéng.

A: I suppose they must both be Chinese?

B: That’s incorrect, you got it wrong. Neither of them is Chinese; they’re Japanese!

5. A: Let’s welcome (“we welcome”) Madam Wood from the British Embassy!

B: Welcome, welcome! I suppose you must be American, too? Oh, sorry, I got that wrong!

C: You didn’t get it wrong. I work at the British Embassy, but I am American.

Unit 3, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: How many students do you have in your Chinese class?

B: There are ten—oh, that’s not right, I made a mistake. There are nine.

A: Are they all Americans?

B: They’re not all Americans. There are six Americans, two Germans, and a Frenchman.
(switch to another pair of students)

A: How many male students and how many female students?

B: Four men, five women.

A: So, how many teachers do you have in all?

B: In all there are two. One is a male teacher, one is a female teacher.

2. A: Excuse me, how many students do you have in your English class?

B: In all there are six.

A: Are they all Americans?

B: Right, they’re all Americans—oh, sorry, they’re not all Americans. There’s one Brit.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How many male students and how many female students?

B: Half and half. Three males, three females.

A: So, who is your teacher? I suppose it’s a female teacher?

B: Correct, it’s a female teacher. Her last name is Ramirez. She’s Spanish.

3. A: How many classmates are there in your dormitory?
B: In all there are seven. The dormitory is not big, it’s very small.

A: Are your classmates all Americans?

B: They’re not all Americans. There are 3 Americans, 3 Japanese, and 1 Singaporean.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: I suppose your classmates are all females?

B: No, they’re not all females. There are four males and three females.

A: It’s very interesting. Are you going back to your dorm now?

B: No, I’m going to the library to study. Tomorrow there is a test. I’m very nervous!

4. A: How many colleagues are there in your company?

B: In all there are eight. Four men, four women—half and half. It’s a small company.

A: So, I suppose your colleagues must all be Americans?

B: No, they’re not all Americans. There are Americans, Taiwanese, and Germans.

(switch to another pair of students)
A: Your company’s manager is a male or a female?

B: There’s a general manager and a manager. They’re both female. The general manager is German, her last name is Weiss. The manager is Taiwanese, her last name is Ma.

A: I know Manager Ma. She is very good.

B: Right, Manager Ma is very good. She is a very interesting person.

Unit 3, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Is this your mother? How old is she?

B: Let me try to think. She’s forty-six this year—no, forty-seven.

A: Oh. So I suppose this must be your father?

B: Yes, he’s forty-five years old this year.

2. A: This is your younger brother, right? He’s cute. How old is he this year?

B: He’s five years old. Next month he’ll be six.

A: And this is your younger sister, right? She’s cute too. How old is she?
B: She’s three years old.

3. A: Is this your older brother? How old is he?

B: Let me try to think. He’s twenty-eight this year—no, twenty-nine.

A: Oh. So I guess this must be your older sister?

B: Yes, it’s my older sister. She’s twenty-seven years old this year.

4. A: You’re cute! How old are you?

B: You try to guess!

A: Let me try to think… I think you’re seventeen?

B: That’s not right. I’m thirty-two. Am I still cute?

5. A: How old are you?

B: I’ll be twenty-one next month. How old are you?

A: You try to guess.

B: Twenty years old?

A: Not correct!

B: Nineteen years old?

A: Also not correct! I was twenty-one last month!
6. A: I have neither an older brother nor an older sister.
B: I have neither a younger brother nor a younger sister.
A: But you have me, right? I’m also very cute, right?
B: Right. I have you. You also have me. But you’re not cute!
7. A: Let’s go back to the dormitory, O.K.?
B: Not good. Going back to the dormitory is uninteresting.
A: In that case, let’s go the dining hall, O.K.?
B: Good! Too good!

Unit 3, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, how much is this bag?
B: That bag is 50 dollars.
A: Wow, that’s too expensive! How much is this cup?
B: That cup is only 15 dollars, it’s very cheap.

(switch to another pair of students)
A: Could I have a look at it?
B: Sure, why don’t you take a look. How many do you want?
A: I’ll buy one. This is 15 dollars.

B: O.K., thank you. Goodbye!

2. A: Excuse me, how much is that?

B: That briefcase? Let me take a look. That briefcase is 625 dollars.

A: Gosh, that’s too expensive! Well, how much is that backpack?

B: That backpack is only 260 dollars, it’s very cheap.

A: Could I look at it?

B: Sure, why don’t you take a look. The backpacks we sell are very good.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: All right, I’ll buy two of them.

B: In all it’s 520 dollars.

A: 500 dollars, O.K.?

B: I suppose it’s O.K. In all it’s 500 dollars.

A: O.K., this is 500 dollars. Thank you. Goodbye.

B: Thank you. Goodbye!

3. A: Do you have backpacks?
B: Backpacks we have. One backpack is 1,500 dollars.

A: Gosh, that’s too expensive!

B: It’s not expensive, it’s very cheap. The backpacks we sell are very good.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How much is this?

B: That bag is only 600 dollars. How many do you want to buy?

A: Could I take a look at it?

B: Sure, why don’t you take a look.

A: I’ll buy six of them. How much is that in all?

B: In all it’s 3,600 dollars.

4. A: How much is one cent plus five cents?

B: One cent plus five cents is six cents.

A: How much is 90 cents minus 10 cents?

B: 90 cents minus 10 cents is 80 cents.

Unit 3, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.
1. A: Excuse me, when does the next train to Beijing (Běijīng) depart?

B: At 11:15. But it’s now already 11:10, I’m afraid you’re not going to make it.

A: Well, how about the one after the next one?

B: Let me take a look. The one after the next one is 12:30.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: All right. In that case, I’ll then take the 12:30 one. How much does it cost?

B: $28.30.

A: How long does it take to get to Beijing?

B: It takes about one and one-half hours.

A: O.K., thanks.

B: You’re welcome!

2. A: Excuse me, when does the next train to Taipei (Táiběi) depart?

B: At 9:30. But it’s now already 9:25, I’m afraid you’re not going to make it.

A: Well, how about the one after the next one?
B: Let me take a look. The one after the next one is 9:45.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: All right. In that case, I’ll then take the 9:45 one. How much does it cost?

B: Fifty dollars.

A: How long does it take to get to Taipei?

B: It takes about half an hour. Let me take a look: it takes only twenty-five minutes.

A: O.K., thanks.

B: You’re welcome.

3. A: Excuse me, when does the next train to Shanghai (Shànghǎi) depart?

B: At 21:05. But it’s now already 21:00, I’m afraid you’re not going to make it.

A: Well, how about the one after the next one?

B: Let me take a look. The one after the next one is 23:05.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: All right. In that case, I’ll then take the 23:05 one. How much does it cost?
B: $133.50.

A: Excuse me, how long does it take to get to Shanghai?

B: It takes about four and a half hours.

A: O.K., thanks.

B: You’re welcome!

4. A: What time are you leaving?

B: I’m leaving at seven.

A: What time is it now?

B: It’s already a quarter to seven. I’m not going to make it!

Unit 4, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, what time every day does the library open and what time does it close?

B: It opens at 7:30 in the morning and it closes at 11:00 at night.

A: Is it open on Saturday and Sunday?

B: It’s open on Saturday. Sundays it’s open half the day; it’s open in the morning, not in the afternoon.
2. A: Excuse me, what time every day does the embassy open and what time does it close?

B: It opens at 8:15 in the morning and it closes at 4:45 in the afternoon.

A: Is it open on Saturday and Sunday?

B: It’s open Saturday morning. Saturday afternoon and Sunday it’s closed.

A: Thank you!

B: Not at all.

3. A: Excuse me, what time every day does Sino-American Trading Company open?

B: It opens at 9:15 every morning; it closes at 5:30 every afternoon.

4. A: What time do you usually get up in the morning?

B: I usually get up at 6:30 in the morning.

A: What time do you usually go to bed at night?

B: I usually go to bed at 11:45 at night.

5. A: How many hours do you usually sleep every day?

B: I usually sleep seven hours a day. How about you?
A: I usually sleep five hours a day.

B: You only sleep five hours? Aren’t you sleepy?

A: I’m very sleepy!

6. A: How many hours do you usually sleep every day?

B: Monday to Friday I sleep four hours a day. Saturday and Sunday I sleep ten hours a day. How about you?

A: Monday to Friday I sleep three hours a day. Saturday and Sunday I sleep twelve hours a day.

7. A: Last Monday I was still in China!

B: Last Tuesday I was still in Germany!

A: Next Thursday I’m going to Japan?

B: Next Friday I’m going to Taiwan!

Unit 4, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: What’s your name?

B: My name is ___.

A: Which year were you born?

B: In 1992, it’s the 81st year of the Republic.
A: Which month and which day?
B: May 16.
A: Your address is?
B: Peace Road, Section Three, Lane 5, Alley 8, Number 66, 2nd Floor.
A: O.K., please wait for a second.
2. A: What’s your name? Where were you born?
B: My name is ___. I was born in Canada.
A: What year were you born?
B: In 1987, it’s the 76th year of the Republic.
A: Which month and which day?
B: November 2.
A: Your address is?
B: Beijing West Road, Section One, Lane 20, Alley 4, Number 5, 5th Floor.
A: All right, please wait a minute.
3. A: Your birthday is which month and which day?
B: My birthday is June 10. When is your birthday?
A: My birthday is December 25.

B: This year I’m 19. How old are you this year?

A: This year I’m 18.

4. A: What month and day is it today? What day of the week?

B: Today is ___.

A: What was the date yesterday and what day of the week was it?

B: Yesterday was ___.

A: And what’s the date tomorrow, and what day of the week?

B: Tomorrow is ___.

5. A: What year is it this year?

B: This year is ___.

A: What year was it last year?

B: Last year was ___.

A: What year will it be next year?

B: Next year will be ___.

Unit 4, Part 3: Role Play Exercises
Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hello!

B: Hi! Are you American?

A: Yes, I’m an American.

B: Is this your first trip to China?

A: No, this is my third time. The year before last I came once, and last year I came once.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: How long are you going to stay this time?

A: About two weeks. I go back to my country on November 23.

B: What room are you staying in?

A: I’m staying in 702.

B: Oh, sorry, I have to go now. Goodbye!

A: Goodbye!

2. A: Hello! I suppose you must be Chinese?

B: Yes, I’m Chinese.

A: Welcome to America!
B: Thank you.

A: Is this your first trip to the States?

B: No, this is my fourth time. I came twice last year, once in 1989, and once in 1998.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How long are you going to stay this time?

B: About a month and a half. I go back on February 15th.

A: What room are you staying in?

B: I’m staying in 428.

A: Nice meeting you!

B: I’m glad to have met you, too!

3. A: Have you ever taken a train before?

B: I’ve taken a train before. And you?

A: I’ve never taken a train before.

4. A: Have you ever been to Malaysia before?

B: I’ve been to Singapore, but I haven’t been to Malaysia. How about you?

A: Singapore, Malaysia, I’ve been to both.
5. A: Are you returning home tomorrow?

B: Yes, I’m returning home tomorrow at noon. How about you? I suppose you’re going home also?

A: I’ve been too busy recently, this time I’m not returning home.

Unit 4, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, what’s the population of China?

B: China has about one billion 300 million people.

A: What’s the population of Taiwan?

B: Taiwan has more than 20 million people.

2. A: Excuse me, what’s the population of Hong Kong?

B: Hong Kong has about seven million people.

A: Well, and what’s the population of Singapore?

B: Singapore’s population is comparatively small. It seems it only has about 5 million people.

A: Oh, Singapore only has 5 million people?

B: That’s right!
3. A: Excuse me, what’s the population of America?

B: America has almost 300 million people.

A: What’s the population of England?

B: England has more than 60 million people.

A: Well, and what about Canada?

B: Canada’s population is comparatively small. It seems it only has 32 million people.

4. A: Excuse me, what’s the population of Shanghai?

B: Shanghai’s people are very many. Shanghai has about 17 million people!

A: What’s the population of Guangzhou?

B: Guangzhou’s population is comparatively smaller. It seems it has more than 9 million people.

5. A: Excuse me, what’s the population of Xi’an?

B: Xi’an has about 8 million people.

A: Well, and what about Taipei?

B: The population of Taipei is comparatively small. It seems it only has about 3 million people.

6. A: What days of the week do you have Chinese class?
B: We have Chinese class every day.

A: Do you often skip class?

B: I don’t skip class.

A: Have you ever been late for class?

B: I’ve been late for class two or three times.

Unit 5, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, I’d like to find Mrs. Li. Is she here?

B: Which Mrs. Li?

A: I’m really sorry, I don’t know her Chinese name. However, her English name is Gertrude.

B: Gertrude? Oh, I know now. Her Chinese name is Lǐ Gē. But, you know, she’s not here right now!

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Do you know where she is now?

B: It seems she’s now in the general manager’s office.

A: In that case, could I leave her a note?

B: Of course you can.
A: Thank you.

2. A: Come in!

B: Excuse me, I’d like to find Mr. Wang. Is he here?

A: Mr. Wang? Which Mr. Wang?

B: I’m really sorry, I’m American, and my Chinese is not too good. I don’t know his Chinese name. But his English name is Hank.

A: Hank Wang? Oh, I know now. His Chinese name is Wáng Jiànjūn. But, you know, he’s not here right now!

(switch to another pair of students)

B: Do you know where Mr. Wang is right now?

A: It seems he’s now in the college president’s office.

B: In that case, could I leave him a note?

A: Of course you can.

B: Thank you.

3. A: Excuse me, if Little Xie isn’t there, what should I do?

B: You could leave a note for her.

4. A: The chairs are here. But where’s the table?

B: The table is over there.
A: Oh, that’s right. Thank you!

5. A: I’d like to buy this chair and that table.

B: You’re only buying one chair?

A: Yes. How much is this chair? And how much is that table?

B: This chair costs $200. That table costs $500. In all that’s $700.

A: All right. Thank you. Goodbye.

Unit 5, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, is there anybody in this seat?

B: No, there isn’t. Go ahead and sit down.

A: Do you often come here to eat?

B: No, I don’t come often. How about you?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: I eat here often. I come almost every day.

B: Are you a student?

A: Yes. Are you a student, too?
B: No, I’m a laborer. I work at Nanjing Shoe Factory No. 13.

2. A: Anybody in this seat?

B: No. Have a seat!

A: Do you often come here to eat breakfast?

B: No, I don’t come often. How about you?

A: I also don’t come often. Are you a student?

B: No, I work in a trading company. How about you?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: I’m a college student in America. This year I’m studying Chinese in China.

B: Where are you studying Chinese?

A: At Peking University’s Chinese Language Training Center. Gosh! It will soon be 9:00. I have to go to attend class. Bye!

B: Goodbye!

3. A: I’m a student. I study English at Taiwan University. I suppose you’re a student too?

B: No, I’m not a student. I’m already over 30! I work at a company.
4. A: Excuse me, where do you usually eat?
B: I usually eat in the college dining hall. It’s comparatively cheap.

5. A: Breakfast, lunch, and dinner, do you eat them all in the university dining hall?
B: Lunch and dinner I eat at the dining hall. I don’t eat breakfast.

6. A: Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
B: Chinese food, I’ve eaten it very many times.
A: Do you like to eat Chinese food?
B: I very much like to eat Chinese food.
A: In that case, today’s lunch, we’ll eat Chinese food, O.K.?
B: That’s too good!

Unit 5, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, where’s the bathroom?
B: It’s over there.
2. A: I want to find the bathroom. Excuse me, where’s the bathroom?

B: It’s over there—sorry, I made a mistake, it’s over here.

3. A: Old Bai, sorry to have made you wait so long.

B: It’s nothing, it’s nothing. Old Li, long time no see! You’ve really gotten thinner!

A: On this trip of yours to Shanghai, where are you staying?

B: I’m staying at the Shanghai Hotel, Room 107. Do you still live where you lived before?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: No, the year before last we moved to Pǔdōng.

B: Where is Pǔdōng?

A: Pǔdōng is to the west of Shanghai. And you? Are you still living in the same place?

B: In March of this year we moved to the south of the United States.

4. A: Little Zhang, sorry to have made you wait so long.

B: Never mind. Old Chen, long time no see! You really have put on some weight!
A: You’ve put on some weight, too. Both of us have gotten fatter!

(switch to another pair of students)

A: On this trip of yours to Tianjin, where are you staying?

B: I’m staying at the Tianjin Hotel, Room 227. Do you still live where you lived before?

A: Correct, we still live in the same place as before. We welcome you to come!

5. A: (You) look! That child is really too fat!

B: That child is too fat? That child is mine. Your children are not thin either!

6. A: Where is my cup? I have to find my cup!

B: O.K. We’ll first look over here, and then we’ll go there and look.

7. A: In which part of China is Chéngdū?

B: Chéngdū is in the west of China.

8. A: Excuse me, in which part of China is Guăngxī?

B: Guăngxī is in the south of China. Guăngxī is to the west of Guăngdōng, which is to say that Guăngdōng is to the east of Guăngxī.
Unit 5, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Yesterday I bought a new computer. It’s in my study. Do you want to see it?

B: All right! It’s a Pentium, right? Inside it, how much RAM is there?

A: Of course it’s a Pentium. Inside it, there are 64 megabytes.

B: I suppose the switch ought to be in front?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: No, the switch is in the back.

B: Could I see the operating manual?

A: Of course you can. However, there is only a Chinese one, there is no English one.

B: Never mind. Where is the operating manual?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: It’s on the table to the left—no, it’s on the chair to the right—I’m sorry, I made a mistake, it’s on the computer?

B: O.K. Hey, what is that thing under the table?
A: Oh, it’s Lassie (Láixī), our family’s dog. Don’t pay any attention to her.

B: I very much love dogs! Lassie, come!

2. A: The day before yesterday I bought a new computer. It’s in my room. You want to see it?

B: Of course I want to see it! It’s a Pentium, right? Inside it, how much RAM is there?

A: Of course it’s a Pentium. Inside it, there are 128 megabytes.

B: Where is the switch? I suppose the switch ought to be in back?

A: No, this is a new computer. The switch is on top.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: On top? That’s interesting! Could I see the operating manual?

A: Of course you can. It’s on the bookcase to the right—no, it’s on the table to the left—I’m sorry, I don’t know where it is.

B: In that case, I will go look for it. Oh, who is that little kid?

A: That’s my two-year old little brother. Just ignore him.

B: He’s really cute!
3. A: How much does this computer cost?

B: This computer costs $1,000.

A: And how much does that computer cost?

B: That computer costs $1,500.

A: Both are new computers, right?

B: They’re not new ones, but they’re very good. Do you want to take a look?

A: They’re not new ones? If I buy computers, of course I buy new ones! I’m leaving?

B: Don’t leave! Do you want to see our new computers? Don’t leave, don’t leave!

4. A: Excuse me, was Old Zhao there?

B: No, Old Zhao was not there, but I left a note.

Unit 6, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Uncle, how are you?

B: How are you, little friend! What’s your name? How old are you?
A: My name is Lùlu. I’m 7.

B: Lùlu, I guess you already go to elementary school?

(switch to another group of students)

A: Yes, I go to second grade.

B: This is a little present I’m giving you.

A: Thank you, uncle.

B: You’re welcome.

A: Mm, it tastes really good!

2. A: Auntie, how are you?

B: How are you? What’s your name?

A: My name is Xiăo Míng.

B: How old are you, Xiăo Míng? I suppose you already go to elementary school?

A: I’m five years old. I don’t go to school yet.

B: Xiăo Míng, this is candy I’m giving you.

A: I very much like to eat candy. Thank you, Auntie!

3. A: Do you like dogs?

B: I very much like little dogs. They’re cute!
A: Do you like me?

B: I don’t like you. You’re not cute!

4. A: What year in college are you?

B: I’m a senior. How about you? What year in college are you?

A: I’m a junior. My younger brother is a sophomore, my younger sister is a first-year.

5. A: Let me introduce a friend to you. This is Little Ma. Little Ma, this is Little Ke.

B: Little Ke, I’m happy to meet you!

C: Little Ma, I’m also happy to meet you!

6. A: Excuse me, have you ever eaten Chinese food?

B: I’ve eaten Chinese food before. It’s delicious. I very much like to eat Chinese food.

7. A: Does she have a boyfriend?

B: She has two boyfriends. One is good-looking, one is not too good-looking.

Unit 6, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.
1. A: Hi! Are you Chinese?
B: Yes, I’m Chinese.
A: What place in China?
B: I was born in Tianjin, and then I grew up in Beijing. Where are you from?
A: I’m from Canada. You look quite young. I guess you’re not yet 20?
B: I’m 19. I’ll be 20 next month.

2. A: How are you? Are you American?
B: No, I’m German.
A: What place in Germany?
B: I was born in Berlin (Bólín), and I grew up in Hamburg (Hànbaò). Where are you from?
A: I’m from Shanghai. You look quite young. I guess you’re not yet 30?
B: I’m 24. I’ll be 25 in April.

3. A: Where were you born?
B: I was born in New York and then I grew up in San Francisco.
A: Interesting! I was born in San Francisco and then I grew up in New York.

4. A: Are you married?

B: I’m already married.

A: Do you have kids?

B: We have three children, one son and two daughters. How about you? Are you married?

A: I’m a college student. I haven’t yet gotten married.

5. A: What are you doing sitting there?

B: May I not sit here?

A: I didn’t say you may not sit there! I asked you what you are doing sitting there.

6. A: Moving is very tiring! Have you ever moved?

B: I have moved before; I have moved twice.

7. A: What is the food in the dining hall like? Does it taste good?

B: The dining hall food, in looking at it it looks tasty, but in eating it it’s not very tasty.

8. A: Excuse me, what is the meaning of shémme difang?
B: The meaning of shémme difang is năr. I suppose now you understand?

Unit 6, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Are you married? Do you have kids?

B: I’m married. I have two kids, a son and a daughter.

A: How old are your children? Are they already in school?

B: They’re still too small. My son is five and my daughter is ten months old, so they’re not in school yet.

(switch to another group of students)

A: Where do you work?

B: I serve at Northwest Airlines.

A: Oh. Does your spouse work also?

B: He/she teaches at a high school. However, because our children are still small, he/she only can work half days.

2. A: Are you married? Do you have kids?

B: I’m married. I have a daughter.
A: How old is your daughter? I suppose she is already in school?

B: Yes, she’s already attending school. She’s seven years old and is already in second grade in elementary school.

(switch to another group of students)

A: Where do you work?

B: I work at Southwest Airlines.

A: Oh. Does your spouse work also?

B: He/she works at a trading company. However, because our daughter is still small, he/she only can work half days.

A: This is a small present that I am giving your daughter. It’s candy. There are no children that don’t like to eat candy!

3. A: Excuse me, what’s your name? Where do you work?

B: My name is ___. I teach at a junior high school.

A: What do you teach?

B: I teach English.

4. A: What time every morning does your mother go to work?

B: She goes to work every morning at 9:00 A.M.

A: What time every afternoon does she get off from work?
B: She gets off from work every afternoon at 5:00 P.M.

5. A: Why do many people say that Chinese is hard to learn?

B: I think it’s because Chinese characters are too many. Chinese characters are also hard to write, right?

Unit 6, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Do you have any brothers or sisters?

B: I have one older brother and one younger brother. How about you?

A: I have two older sisters and one younger sister.

B: Oh, it’s already 9:00! Sorry, I have something I have to do, I’ll be going first now. In the future, when there’s a chance, why don’t we chat again!

2. A: Do you have any siblings?

B: I’m the oldest in our family. I have two younger brothers and two younger sisters. How about you? Do you have any brothers or sisters?

A: I have two older sisters and one younger sister.
B: Oh, it’s already 10:00. I have to go to class. I’ve already been late too many times! In the future, when there’s a chance, let’s chat again!

3. A: How many brothers and sisters do you have?
B: I’m the second oldest in our family. I have an older sister and a younger brother.
A: Where do your sister and brother live? Do they live in America?
B: No. My older sister immigrated to England. My little brother is studying abroad in China.

4. A: How many brothers and sisters do you have?
B: I have one older brother, one younger brother, one older sister, and one younger sister.
A: Do they all live in China?
B: My parents, older brother, and younger brother live in China. My older sister immigrated to Canada; she got married to a Canadian. My younger sister is studying abroad in Japan.

5. A: Oh, sorry. I forgot to introduce myself. My name is ___.
B: My name is ___. This is my name card, please instruct me much.
A: Thank you, thank you. Sorry, I forgot to carry name cards.
B: That’s O.K. Sorry, I have a little something, I have to leave first. In the future when there’s a chance, let’s chat again.

6. A: How are you? This is my name card. My name is ___.

B: Thank you, thank you. Sorry, I forgot to introduce myself. My name is ___. I was born in Beijing and grew up in Shanghai. I also will give you a name card.

A: You were born in Beijing and grew up in Shanghai? Very interesting! I was born in Shanghai and grew up in Beijing.

B: Right, very interesting. O.K., nice to meet you. Excuse me, I have something I have to do. In the future when there’s a chance, let’s chat again! I much enjoy chatting with friends.

Unit 7, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Where do you live?

B: We live to the west of Beijing city.

A: Who all is there in your family?

B: Me and my spouse, in addition there are two children.

(switch to another group of students)

A: Boys or girls? How old are they?
B: A four-year-old boy and a one-year-old girl.

A: Where do you work?

B: I work at a kindergarten.

A: And your spouse?

B: He/she formerly worked in a factory. Because her/his health was not too good, he/she now has changed her/ his line of work. He/she does a little small-scale business.

2. A: Where do you live?

B: We live to the south of Shanghai city.

A: Who all is there in your family?

B: Me and my spouse, in addition there is one child.

(switch to another group of students)

A: Boy or girl? How old?

B: A son. He’s eleven years old.

A: Could I ask where you work?

B: I work at a factory.

A: And your spouse?
B: He/she formerly taught English in a high school. Because the money was too little, he/she changed jobs. Now he/she works at a computer company.

3. A: Where do you live?

B: We live in Taipei County, to the east of Taipei city.

A: Who all is there in your family?

B: There are three in our family: me, my spouse, and in addition there is one child.

(switch to another group of students)

A: Boy or girl? How old?

B: A daughter. She’s sixteen years old.

A: Where do you and your spouse work?

B: I serve at the Foreign Ministry. My spouse formerly also worked at the Foreign Ministry. Because the work was too intense, therefore he/she changed jobs. Now he/she teaches English at home. He/she has about twenty students.

4. A: How many people are there in your family?

B: There are three in our family.

Unit 7, Part 2: Role Play Exercises
Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hello! You can speak Chinese!

B: I don’t speak it very well, but I can speak a little.

A: Oh, you speak pretty well! Where did you learn?

B: At first I studied some in England. Now I’m continuing to study it at Peking University.

A: Can you also read (“recognize”) Chinese characters?

B: I recognize a couple hundred but I can write only about 100.

A: I forgot to introduce myself. My name is ___. What’s your name?

B: My name is ___. I’m sorry, I have something I have to do now. In the future if there’s a chance let’s chat again!

2. A: I know you can speak Chinese; you speak it very well. Excuse me, can you write it, too?

B: I don’t write it very well, but I can write a little.

A: Where did you learn your Chinese characters?

B: I learned some in high school. Now I’m continuing my studies of them here.
A: You know Chinese and English. Do you know any other languages?

B: I studied French in elementary school and studied German in junior high school. Before I used to be able to speak a little Japanese, but now I’ve completely forgotten.

3. A: There are people who say Japanese is hard to learn. Do you speak Japanese?

B: I don’t know Japanese, but I can speak German.

A: Oh, you can speak German. Do you speak it very well?

B: Pretty well.

A: Where did you learn German?

B: My mom and dad speak it at home.

A: Can you write German, too?

B: Before I couldn’t, but now I’m studying German in college.

4. A: Can you write Chinese?

B: Yes, I can.

A: About how many characters have you learned?

B: I’ve learned a few hundred characters. About 250 characters, I suppose.
A: Nice chatting with you. I have to go to class now. Bye!

5. A: Your Mandarin, you really speak it very well!

B: Not at all, not at all.

A: How many Chinese characters can you write?

B: I used to recognize several thousand, now I only recognize a couple hundred. Some I can write, some I can’t write. Do you know English?

A: My English, I forgot it completely! English is very hard to learn, very easy to forget!

Unit 7, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: When did you arrive in China?

B: I arrived in the month of March this year.

A: Did you come alone?

B: No, I came together with my older brother.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Where did you learn Chinese? Did you learn it previously in America?
B: Yes. In the beginning I studied it in America. Later I studied for a while in Singapore.

A: No wonder you speak Chinese so well!

B: Not at all. It still has a long ways to go!

2. A: When did you arrive in Taiwan?

B: I arrived in October of this year.

A: Did you come alone?

B: No, I came together with two friends.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Where did you learn Chinese? Did you learn it previously in China?

B: No. In the beginning I studied it in America. Later I studied for a while in Hong Kong.

A: No wonder you speak Chinese so well!

B: Not at all. My Chinese is not very good. It still has a long ways to go!

3. A: When did she arrive in America?

B: She arrived in the month of August this year.
A: With whom did she come together? Did she come together with her husband?

B: She hasn’t married yet; she doesn’t have a husband! She came alone.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Where did she learn English? Did she learn it previously in America?

B: In the beginning she studied it in China. Later she studied for a while in England.

A: No wonder she speaks English so well!

B: Sometimes she speaks so-so, sometimes she speaks not very well.

4. A: When did you arrive in Hong Kong?

B: I arrived in February of this year.

A: I suppose you didn’t come alone?

B: No, I came together with my older sister.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Where did you learn Chinese? Did you learn it previously in Canada?
B: Yes. In the beginning I studied it in Canada. Later I studied for a while in Beijing.

A: No wonder you speak Chinese so well!

B: Not at all. It still has a long ways to go! I don’t speak Chinese very well, Chinese characters I also don’t very much know how to write.

Unit 7, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, did you come from Taiwan?

B: Yes. Have you ever been to Taiwan? You speak Chinese very well!

A: Not at all. Where in Taiwan is your home?

B: Tainan (Táinán). It’s an ancient city. Have you ever heard of it?

A: I have heard of it.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Before you came to America, where did you work?

B: After I graduated from high school, I worked in a factory for several years (A: Oh.), then I applied to come to America to attend college.
A: Oh, it was like this. So, what do you plan to do after you graduate from college?

B: After I graduate from college, I plan to go back to Taiwan and look for a good job.

A: Of course!

2. A: Excuse me, are you from China?

B: Yes. Have you ever been to China? You speak Chinese very well!

A: Not at all. Where in China is your home?

B: Luòyáng. It’s an ancient city. Have you ever heard of it?

A: Luòyáng, is it? Sorry, it seems I haven’t heard of it.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: So, before you came to America, where did you work?

B: After I graduated from college, I taught for several years at an elementary school (A: Oh.), then I applied to come to America to study at graduate school.

A: Oh, it was like this. So, how do you feel America is like?

B: America is not bad. America is very wealthy, most people work very hard. It’s just that there’s quite a bit of crime.

A: Oh.
3. A: Excuse me, are you from America?

B: Yes. Have you ever been to America? You speak English very well!

A: Not at all. Where in America is your home?

B: New York City. One month ago I was still there. New York is a big city. I suppose you have heard of it before?

A: Of course I have heard of it!

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Before you came to China, what did you do in America?

B: After I graduated from high school, I worked at a company for several years, but the work wasn’t very interesting. (A: Oh.). Then I applied to come to the Chinese Language Training Center at Peking University to study Chinese. I also teach a little English.

A: Oh, it’s like this. So, what do you think of China?

B: I feel China is very interesting. I very much like it. Chinese food is also very delicious. It’s just that sometimes the toilets here…

A: Oh… You speak correctly.

Unit 8, Part 1: Role Play Exercises
Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, how do you get to the Shanghai Hotel?

B: The Shanghai Hotel, is it? Keep going straight, after you pass the library you will have arrived.

A: Is it very far from here?

B: It’s not far from here.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Probably how long does it take?

B: If you walk, it probably takes half an hour more or less. Or you take a taxi and it will be even faster; in ten minutes then you will have arrived.

A: All right, thank you!

B: You’re welcome.

2. A: Excuse me, how do you get to Sino-American Trade Company?

B: Sino-American Trade Company, is it? Keep walking toward the north for about ten minutes. After you pass the U.S. Embassy, walk toward the south for about five minutes and then you will have arrived.

A: Is it far from here?
B: It’s not far from here. It’s close to here.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Probably how long does it take?

B: I already said! If you walk, it probably takes fifteen minutes more or less. Or you take a taxi and it will be even faster, in five minutes then you will have arrived.

A: All right, thank you!

B: It’s nothing.

3. A: How does one get to your home?

B: First drive east, and then after you pass the Great Wall Hotel, drive west.

A: Is your home far from the Great Wall Hotel?

B: My home is very close to the Great Wall Hotel. In a few minutes you’ll be there.

4. A: Excuse me, are you from America?

B: Yes, I’m American, a Southerner. My home is in the state of Alabama (Ālābāmă zhōu).

A: I’m also a Southerner, a Chinese Southerner. My home is in Guangdong province (Guăngdōng shěng)?
B: At home we speak Southern speech. Don’t know if you understand it or not?

5. A: Where is their Japanese teacher from? Is she American?

B: I know she’s not a Westerner, she’s Asian. However, she’s not Japanese; it seems she’s Chinese.

Unit 8, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.


B: Hello? How are you? I want a car to the Peace Hotel.

A: Where are you now?

B: I’m at Capital Airport.

A: How many people?

B: Three.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: When do you want the car?

B: Right now.

A: All right. What’s your name?
B: I’m a student who has come from America. My Chinese name is ___.

A: O.K. The car will be there in five minutes. Please wait at the entrance to the airport.

B: All right, thanks!

2. A: Hello? Is this the Friendship Hotel taxi company?

B: Yes. Do you want a car?

A: I want two taxis to the U.S. Embassy.

B: You want two taxis?

A: Yes, there are seven people in all.

B: Seven people? All right. Where are you now?

A: We’re at Peking University.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: When do you want the cars?

A: In fifteen minutes.

B: What’s your name?

A: My name is ___.

B: Are you a foreigner? You speak Chinese very well!
A: Not at all. I’m a professor from America.

B: O.K., two taxis will be there at 2:30. Please wait at the entrance to Peking University.

A: Good, thanks!


B: How many people?

A: Just me alone.

B: The car will be there in half an hour. Please wait at the entrance to the Great Wall Hotel.

4. A: Why in Beijing are there so many foreigners?

B: Do you feel that foreigners are many?

A: Yes. I want to speak the Chinese language with Chinese people! I don’t want to speak foreign languages with foreigners!

B: Your liking to speak Chinese is very good, but don’t forget, you’re a foreigner, too!

Unit 8, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

B: Hello, 20 minutes ago I called and requested a cab. You said it would arrive in 15 minutes. How come up until now it still hasn’t come?

A: I’m sorry. We’ve already dispatched the cab. But it’s rush hour now, traffic is very congested. Please be patient and wait a bit longer.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: How much longer do I have to wait?

A: Please don’t get excited. I think it’s likely to arrive in about 5 minutes.

B: Please do try to hurry, O.K.? I have to go to the airport to take a plane. Soon I’ll be late.

A: O.K. I’ll immediately notify the driver to rush there as fast as he can.


B: Hello, one hour ago I called and requested a cab. You said it would arrive in half an hour. How come up until now it still hasn’t come?

A: I’m sorry. We’ve already dispatched the cab. But it’s rush hour now, traffic is very congested. Please be patient and wait a bit longer.
B: How much longer do I have to wait?

A: Please don’t get excited. I think it’s likely to arrive in a little while.

B: Please try to hurry, O.K.? I have to take a 12:30 train. Soon I’ll be late.

A: O.K. I’ll immediately notify the driver to rush there as fast as he can.

3. A: Hello? How are you! Beijing Number One Taxi Company.

B: Hello? Three hours ago I called and requested a cab. You said it would arrive immediately. How come up until now it still hasn’t come?

A: I’m sorry, it seems we forgot. What’s your name? How many people? Where are you now? What time do you want the car? Hello? Hello? Hello?

4. A: I heard yesterday Little Lin waited for a taxi for an hour, but it still didn’t come! She was very excited?

B: When the taxi still hadn’t come, what did she decide to do?

A: She decided to walk.

5. A: Old Zhang, I’m waiting for a taxi, but it hasn’t come yet. What should I do?
B: I know, it’s rush hour now, traffic is very congested. Why don’t you call the taxi company again?

A: I’ve already called on the phone three times! Do you have a way to make them come here?

B: I don’t have a way either.

Unit 8, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Is it you who wants a taxi to Capital Airport?

B: Yes, it’s us.

A: Are you American? You’re very tall! How tall are you? How much do you weigh?

B: Yes, I’m American. I’m one meter eighty-five. I weigh ninety-two kilograms.

A: Only these three pieces of luggage?

B: Yes, these three pieces of luggage. How long does it take from here to Capital Airport?

A: Normally half an hour, but now it’s rush hour, so probably it will take one hour give or take.

(switch to another pair of students)
A: Darn! There’s a traffic jam here again. We’ve no choice but to change to a different road.

B: Is the airport still far from here?

A: It’s not far, it’s close to here. We’ll probably arrive in about 10 minutes.

B: I’ll give you two hundred dollars. Give me fifty dollars in change and that’ll be fine.

2. A: Is it you who wants a taxi to the Friendship Hotel?

B: No, we want a taxi to Capital Airport!

A: Oh, sorry, I got it wrong. Right, right, right, to Capital Airport. How come I forgot? Uh, how many pieces of luggage do you have? Only this one piece?

B: No, we have five pieces.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Two people, five pieces of luggage? Never mind, my car is big.

B: These four pieces are all light, but that piece is too heavy. Let’s the two of us move it together!

A: O.K, we’ll move it together. It’s really heavy!

B: From here to Capital Airport takes how much time?
A: Probably an hour and a half, approximately.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Darn! There’s a traffic jam here again. We’ve no choice but to change to a different road.

B: We probably shouldn’t have gone on this road. What are we going to do? Is the airport still far from here? Soon I’ll be too late…

A: The airport is very close to here. In a few minutes we’ll arrive.

B: Cabbie, how much is it?

A: 95 dollars.

B: I’ll give you a hundred dollars. You don’t need to give me any change.

3. A: You said you can teach me how to drive. How come you didn’t come yesterday evening?

B: I did go! I waited for you for a long time, but you didn’t come! In the end, I had no choice but to leave.

A: Wasn’t it in the evening at 7:00?

B: No, it was at 5:00 in the afternoon!

Unit 9, Part 1: Role Play Exercises
Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, how do you get to the Beijing Hotel?

B: Sorry, I’m not local, I’m not sure myself. There are two traffic cops over there, why don’t you go ask them?

A: O.K., thanks!

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Pardon me, how do you get to the Beijing Hotel?

C: It’s close to here. From here go straight. When you pass the third traffic light, turn right. Keep going about another ten minutes and you’ll be there.

A: Thanks.

C: You don’t need to thank me.

2. A: Pardon me, how do you get to the Peace Hotel?

B: The Peace Hotel? I come from Shanghai, I’m not local, I don’t know either. Why don’t you go ask a local person?

A: O.K., thank you.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Excuse me, are you from here?
C: Yes, I’m from here. What are you looking for?

A: How do you get to the Peace Hotel?

C: It’s not too far from here. Go straight from here. At the next intersection, turn left. Keep going about another three minutes and you’ll be there.

A: Thanks!

C: Don’t mention it.

3. A: Excuse me, how do you get to Tiananmen?

B: Sorry, I’m an overseas Chinese from America, I’m not from here. There’s a traffic policeman over there. Why don’t you go ask her?

A: Excuse me, how do you get to Tiananmen?

C: It’s relatively far from here. Go straight from here. After the first traffic light, turn to the south. Keep going another half an hour and you’ll be there. It’s on your right.

A: Thanks.

C: You’re welcome.

4. A: What colors do you like?

B: I like the color red and the color blue. How about you? What colors do you like?
A: I like the color black and the color white.

B: Do you feel yellow-colored backpacks look nice?

A: No, but I very much like green-colored shoes. At home I have many green-colored shoes. Do you want to come to my home to look at my green-colored shoes?

B: Sorry, in our Chinese class we’re having a test tomorrow, I have to study…

Unit 9, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, what number bus do you take to get to Tiananmen?

B: Tiananmen? I have to think... First take streetcar number 478, then transfer to bus number 35, which you take to the last stop, which is Tiananmen.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: And where is the streetcar station?

B: Turn to the east at the intersection in front and there it is.

A: Thanks very much.

B: Don’t mention it.
2. A: Where’s the bus station?

B: You first go straight, and then when you arrive at the next intersection, turn right.

A: Thanks.

B: You’re welcome.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Excuse me, does this bus go to the airport?

C: No, but you can first take it and then change to streetcar number 113.

A: To where do I take it and change to the streetcar?

C: Let me think... You change at Zoo.

A: Oh, it seems the bus has arrived.

C: Yes, the bus has come. Get on the bus quick!

3. A: Excuse me, how do you get to the Great Wall Hotel? Do you know?

B: I haven’t been there in a long time. Let me think… First go straight. When you get to the 3rd traffic light, turn left. Walk for about 10 minutes and you’ll be there. It’s on your right.

A: It seems very far. Can one take the bus?
B: No, but you can take a streetcar.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: To where do you take the streetcar?

B: Take it to the Měishùguăn Station and get off.

A: Oh, the streetcar has arrived.

B: Yes, get on quick!

A: Thanks.

B: Your welcome.

4. A: I very much like animals. Do you keep small animals at home?

B: Yes, at our home we keep a dog and two cats. What about you? Do you also keep small animals at home?

A: Yes, we keep three birds and several fish. The birds can talk! They often say Nǐ hǎo! Nǐ hǎo! and Zāogāo, zāogāo!

B: So, what about the fish? What do they say?

Unit 9, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.
1. A: Is anyone buying a ticket? Those who don’t have a ticket, buy one?

B: Two tickets to Tiananmen.

A: Where did you get on?

B: We just got on.

A: Two dollars.

B: Here’s the money. When we get to Tiananmen, could you call me?

A: All right.

2. A: Anybody buying a ticket? Those who don’t have one, buy one!

B: Three tickets to Beijing Hotel.

A: Where did you get on?

B: We got on at Zoo.

A: Six dollars.

B: Here’s the money. When we get to Beijing Hotel, could you call me?

A: All right.
3. A: Anybody buying a ticket? Those who don’t have one, buy one!

B: One ticket to Capital Airport.

A: Where did you get on?

B: We just got on.

A: $1.50.

B: Here’s the money. When we get to Capital Airport, could you call me?

A: All right.

4. A: My roommate is not very smart. What’s your roommate like?

B: My roommate is not stupid, but s/he’s very lazy. S/he doesn’t work very hard.

5. A: My room is not only dirty, it’s also a mess. What’s your room like?

B: My room is not only clean, it’s also neat. Welcome! Please come in! Please sit down!

6. A: Why are you so angry? All of us hope you will be happy. Don’t be angry, all right?

B: I am happy. I didn’t get angry. I’m joking with you!
7. A: You really are too lazy; in the future, you’ll have to study harder!

B: O.K., in the future I’ll study harder.

A: And your room is too disorderly. Why is it that only your room is so dirty?

B: I’m sorry, in the future my room will not only be in good order but also clean!

Unit 9, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Soon we’ll arrive, I suppose?

B: It’s still early, there are still two stations. When the time comes I’ll call you all… Hey, the next station is Tiananmen, you all should prepare to get off the bus.

A: O.K., thanks!

(switch to another pair of students)

B: Comrades getting off the bus should show their tickets!

A: Oh, sorry, my ticket, I can’t find it!

B: If you can’t find your ticket, you must buy a new one.

A: But my money, I can’t find it either!
B: O.K., O.K. Never mind. But in the future, you really should be more careful!

2. A: Soon we’ll arrive, I suppose?

B: It’s still early, there are still eight stations. When the time comes I’ll call you… Hey, the next station is Summer Palace, you should prepare to get off the bus.

A: O.K., thanks!

(switch to another pair of students)

B: Comrades getting off the bus should show their tickets!

A: Oh, sorry, my ticket, I can’t find it! I bought one, but now I can’t find it?

B: You’ll have to buy one again. Two dollars and fifty cents.

A: Today taking the bus really was too expensive!

3. A: Comrades getting off the bus should show their tickets!

B: Excuse me, I can’t find my ticket, what should I do?

A: Because you’re a foreigner, this time it doesn’t matter; I remember that you bought a ticket. In the future, you really must be more careful!

4. A: Those several Chinese characters, can you read them or can you not read them?
B: Those several characters, is it? I can’t read them.

A: And how about these three characters? Can you read them?

B: These three characters I can read. It’s yī, èr, sān!

5. A: Little Li, can you fall asleep?

B: Because I’m very tired, I think I can probably fall asleep.

A: I’m also very tired, but I don’t why, I can’t fall asleep.

6. A: The Chinese that she speaks, can you understand it or not?

B: She’s a Southerner, but I can understand it. You can’t understand it?

A: Sometimes I can understand it, but sometimes I can’t understand it!

Unit 10, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Good morning! What does the weather forecast today?

B: Let me see… This morning is cloudy, in the afternoon it’s possible it might change to clear weather.
A: Right. Now in the sky there are lots of clouds…

B: Starting from the day after tomorrow, it will get hotter and hotter.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: What will be the highest temperature today?

B: Let me see… Today the highest temperature is 72 degrees.

A: Huh? It seems that lightning struck! And thunder has struck, too! Is it going to rain?

B: Man! It’s already raining, and it’s raining pretty hard, too.

A: So, weather forecasts are only forecasts and are not necessarily accurate.

B: That’s right!

2. A: Hi! What does today’s weather forecast say?

B: Let me see… This morning is clear, in the afternoon it’s possible it might change to cloudy weather. In the evening it’s possible it might rain.

A: Oh. In that case, it wouldn’t be very good. In the evening I originally wanted to go see a friend.

B: However, starting from tomorrow, the weather will get better and better.
A: What will be the low temperature this evening?

B: Let me see… This evening the low temperature will be 55 degrees.

A: Huh? It seems that there is thunder! Is it going to rain now?

B: Shoot! It’s already raining, and it’s raining pretty hard.

A: And that’s why weather forecasts are only forecasts and are not necessarily accurate.

B: That’s right!

3. A: Good morning, how are you? What does tomorrow’s weather forecast say?

B: Let me see… Tomorrow morning is cloudy, in the afternoon it’s possible it might change to clear weather.

A: In that case, the weather next week should also be quite good, I suppose?

B: No! Starting from next week, the weather will get worse and worse.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: What will be the high and low temperatures today?
B: Let me see… Today the high temperature is 83 degrees and the low temperature is 46 degrees.

A: That’s impossible! Huh? It seems that lightning struck! The little cat we keep in our family is afraid of lightning. And there’s also thunder. Is it going to rain?

B: Gosh! It’s already raining, and it’s raining very hard.

A: Therefore weather forecasts are only forecasts and are not necessarily accurate.

B: That’s right! Recently weather forecasts have been getting more and more inaccurate!

Unit 10, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hey, the weather here is not bad! It’s neither cold nor hot, quite comfortable.

B: Summers are O.K. Winters are incredibly cold, both dry and cold, and it often snows.

A: Well, what about spring and fall?

B: In the spring it often rains. The fall is very nice. If you want to come here to have a good time, the fall is the most appropriate.

A: Saying it like that, I’ve come at just the right time!
2. A: Hey, the weather here is not bad! It’s neither dry nor cold, quite comfortable.

B: Winters are O.K. Summers are incredibly hot, both dry and hot, and the wind is strong.

A: Well, what about the spring?

B: If it weren’t that the blowing sand is too strong, it would be O.K. In the spring it often rains. The fall is relatively good. If you want to come here to have fun, the fall and winter are the most appropriate.

A: Saying it like that, I’ve come at just the right time!

3. A: The weather there is pretty good, you know! Neither cold nor hot, very comfortable!

B: The spring is O.K., but the winters are incredibly cold, both dry and cold, and the wind is very strong.

A: In winter, does it often snow?

B: No, it seldom snows. However, it is often overcast.

4. A: What are the summers here like?

B: If it didn’t often rain, then it would be all right. If you want to come here to have a good time, then fall is the most appropriate.

A: If you say it that way, I’ve come at just the right time!
B: Yes. Look, the sun just came out!

5. A: The season you like most is which season?

B: The season I like most is winter. And you? Which season do you like best?

A: The season I like most is fall.

6. A: The season you like most is which season?

B: The season I like most is spring. And you? Which season do you like best?

A: The season I like most is summer. Look, the sun just came out!

7. A: The season you like most is which season?

B: I don’t have any season that I like best. I like every season!

Unit 10, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: How come there’s fog again this afternoon? It seems like it floated in through the window screen.

B: Yes, this place is often like this in the spring. The air is humid and it often rains. Every day is cloudy.
A: Actually, it’s drizzling right now, but because of the fog, you can’t tell.

B: My luck is really bad. Last time when I came here it rained every day, and I couldn’t go out at all!

2. A: How come there is fog this evening? It seems it floated in from the outside.

B: This place is often like this in the winter. The air is very humid and it is often overcast.

A: And it often drizzles. Actually, it’s drizzling right now, but because there is the fog, you can’t see it.

B: Recently the weather has not been very good. Our luck is really bad!

3. A: The last time I came to Hong Kong I encountered a big typhoon. I hope this time there is none.

B: Actually, I heard that, after a few days, there is a typhoon that is going to come.

A: There is a typhoon that’s going to come? Where is the typhoon now?

B: Now it’s still very far from us here. Now it’s close to Japan.

A: Dang it! When the typhoon comes, it will rain every day. The wind will also be strong. There won’t be any way at all to go outside…
4. A: How come it’s drizzling again this morning? There is also fog. It seems it floated in from the window screen.

B: Yes. Taiwan is often like this in the wintertime. The air is very humid, and it often rains. On the mountains sometimes it even snows!

A: Actually, it’s snowing right now, but because the sun is not yet out, you can’t see it.

B: We really are unlucky! The weather is so bad, there’s no way at all that we can go out…

5. A: Little Lin, please go in and look for some things to eat, O.K.?

B: All right, but how do you open the door? I don’t know how to open it.

A: In that case, please go in through the screen window.

B: What? You want me to go in through the screen window?!

A: Don’t look at me that way! Of course I want you to go in through the screen window!

6. A: Little Li, how do you get out of this place?

B: Old Bai, how did you get in?

A: I don’t remember how I got in!

B: Bye! I’m out of here. You’re really unlucky!
Unit 10, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Where in the U.S. do you live?


A: That’s interesting! I live on the west coast. So, what’s the climate like in New Jersey?

B: Not very good. In the winter it’s colder than Shanghai, and it’s also drier than Shanghai. In the summer, it’s even hotter than Shanghai. So the climate is not so good as Shanghai!

2. A: Where in China is your home?

B: On the Chinese east coast, Qīngdǎo.

A: I head the scenery there is very beautiful. What’s the climate there like?

B: Really you can say it’s “warm in winter, cool in summer.”

A: Why do you speak in that way?

B: The weather in Qīngdǎo is fantastic. In winter it’s warm, drier than here, not as humid as here. But in the summer it is cool, not as hot as here.

A: In that case, let’s all move to Qīngdǎo!
3. A: How long have you been in America?

B: I’ve been here about half a year.

A: Well, you’ve been in America so long, by now I suppose you’ve already gotten used to the culture here?

B: Yes, when I first came, I had a hard time adapting. Now I’m just about accustomed to it.

4. A: How long have you been in Macao?

B: I’ve been here more than two years.

A: Well, you’ve been in Macao so long, by now I suppose you’ve already gotten used to eating Chinese food?

B: Yeah, when I first came, I had a hard time adapting to it. Breakfast, lunch, and dinner—I had to eat Chinese food for them all. But now, I’m just about accustomed to it. Now I like eating Chinese food; it’s delicious. Have you eaten yet? Come, let’s go eat together!

5. A: I most dislike people who arrive late.

B: Today I arrived 10 minutes earlier than you!

A: Correct, but yesterday you arrived 20 minutes later than I did?

B: Really? How come I don’t remember?

6. A: My dog died yesterday.
B: How old was it?
A: Fourteen. I’m very sad.
B: Don’t be sad, there’s nothing that can be done about this.
5. Listening Comprehension Exercises

Unit 1, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the female speaker going?
   (A) To the dorm
   (B) To the dining hall
   (C) To do something

2. Where is the male speaker going?
   (A) To the dorm
   (B) To the dining hall
   (C) To do something

To Download the audio files, please click here.
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the male speaker going?
   (A) To the dorm
   (B) To the library
   (C) To the dining hall

2. Where is the female speaker going?
   (A) To the dorm
   (B) To the library
   (C) To the dining hall

3. What is the name of the female speaker?
   (A) Wang Jingsheng
   (B) Zhang Taisheng
   (C) Jia Aihua

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.
To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How has the female speaker been?
   (A) She is fine.
   (B) She is busy.
   (C) She is tired.

2. Where is the male speaker going?
   (A) He is going to the library.
   (B) He is going to the dining hall.
   (C) He is going to the dorm.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How are the female speaker’s spouse and child?
   (A) They are fine.
   (B) They are busy.
   (C) They are tired.

2. How are the male speaker’s parents?
(A) They are fine.

(B) They are busy.

(C) They are tired.

3. Where is the male speaker going?

(A) To the dining hall

(B) To the library

(C) To do something

Unit 1, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How has Old Gao been recently?

(A) Very tired

(B) Very nervous

(C) The same as before
2. How are his children doing?

(A) They are fine.

(B) They are tired.

(C) They are busy with their studies.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the relationship between the two speakers?

(A) Husband and wife

(B) Teacher and student

(C) Colleagues

2. What does the female speaker think about the Chinese language?

(A) It’s easy to learn.

(B) It’s difficult to learn.

(C) It’s neither easy nor difficult to learn.

3. Where is the female speaker going?

(A) Dorm

(B) Library
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How are the female speaker’s husband and children?
   (A) They are fine.
   (B) They are busy.
   (C) They are tired.

2. How are the male speaker’s parents?
   (A) They are fine.
   (B) They are busy.
   (C) They are the same as before.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS
1. What does the female speaker ask the male speaker to do?
   (A) To come in
   (B) To sit down
   (C) To speak Chinese

2. How has the female speaker been?
   (A) She has been fine.
   (B) She has been busy.
   (C) She has been tired.

3. What does the female speaker think about the Chinese language?
   (A) Chinese is easy and interesting.
   (B) Chinese is difficult but interesting.
   (C) Chinese is difficult and not interesting.

Unit 2, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME________________________ COURSE ___________________ DATE __________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.
To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the nationality of the speaker’s father?
   (A) American
   (B) Canadian
   (C) Japanese

2. What is the nationality of the speaker’s mother?
   (A) American
   (B) Canadian
   (C) Japanese

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the name of the female speaker?
   (A) Ke Jingling
   (B) Ke Jinling
   (C) Ke Jinlin

2. What is the nationality of the female speaker?
3. What is the nationality of the female speaker’s spouse?

(A) Singaporean

(B) American

(C) Spanish

Unit 2, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME__________________ COURSE ________________ DATE __________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Who is the person that the two speakers are discussing?

(A) The male speaker’s new teacher

(B) The male speaker’s new roommate

(C) The male speaker’s old friend
2. What is the nationality of the person that the two speakers are talking about?

(A) American

(B) Spanish

(C) Canadian

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is Zhang Tianming’s nationality?

(A) Chinese

(B) American

(C) Spanish

2. Where did this conversation take place?

(A) Taipei

(B) Shanghai

(C) Beijing

3. By what name does the female speaker prefer to be called?

(A) Miss Wang

(B) Xiao Wang
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where does the female speaker work?

(A) The Chinese embassy

(B) A company

(C) A university

2. Where does the male speaker work?

(A) The American embassy

(B) A company

(C) A university

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS
1. Who is the person being discussed?
(A) Teacher Wang’s mother  
(B) Teacher Wang’s colleague  
(C) Teacher Wang’s wife  

2. What is this person’s surname?
(A) Wang  
(B) Li  
(C) Zhang  

3. What does this person teach?
(A) Chinese  
(B) English  
(C) Japanese  

Unit 2, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE ________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.
EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where does the female speaker work?
   (A) Embassy
   (B) University
   (C) Trading company

2. Where does the male speaker work?
   (A) Embassy
   (B) University
   (C) Trading company

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What does the speaker’s husband do?
   (A) He is a college student.
   (B) He is the general manager of a company.
   (C) He is a university professor.

2. What is the speaker’s nationality?
   (A) British
3. What is the nationality of the speaker’s husband?

(A) American

(B) Chinese

(C) British

Unit 3, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How many Chinese teachers does the female speaker have?

(A) Three

(B) Four

(C) Five

2. How many of her teachers are American?
3. How many of her teachers are male?

(A) Two

(B) Three

(C) Four

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How many Japanese students are there in the male speaker’s class?

(A) One

(B) Two

(C) Five

2. How many female students are there in his class?

(A) Three

(B) Six

(C) Nine
Unit 3, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Who is the person being talked about?
   (A) The female speaker’s brother
   (B) The female speaker’s older sister
   (C) The female speaker’s younger sister

2. How old is this person now?
   (A) 5
   (B) 6
   (C) 7

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How old is the male speaker’s father?
2. Where does the male speaker’s father work?

(A) A company

(B) A university

(C) An embassy

3. How old is the male speaker’s youngest brother?

(A) 8

(B) 9

(C) 10
1. What does the female speaker want to buy?
   (A) A cup
   (B) A bag
   (C) A briefcase
2. How much does it cost?
   (A) 500 RMB
   (B) 520 RMB
   (C) 1000 RMB

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What does the male speaker want to buy?
   (A) A cup
   (B) A backpack
   (C) A briefcase
2. How many does he want to buy?
   (A) One
   (B) Three
3. How much is he going to pay?

(A) 15 RMB

(B) 40 RMB

(C) 45 RMB

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How has the male speaker been?

(A) He has been busy.

(B) He has been tired.

(C) He has been sleepy.

2. What time does the conversation take place?

(A) About 5:15
(B) About 6:30

(C) About 6:45

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. When is the male speaker going to take the train to Taipei?
   (A) 3:10
   (B) 3:15
   (C) 5:30

2. How long does it take to get to Taipei by train?
   (A) About three hours
   (B) About four hours
   (C) About ten hours

3. How much does the train ticket cost?
   (A) 285 NT
   (B) 665 NT
   (C) 685 NT

Unit 4, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What time does the language lab open on Saturday?
   (A) 8:30 A.M.
   (B) 9:30 A.M.
   (C) 10:30 A.M.

2. What time does the language lab close on Wednesday?
   (A) 8:30 P.M.
   (B) 9:30 P.M.
   (C) 10:30 P.M.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What year in college is the speaker?
   (A) Freshman
(B) Sophomore

(C) Junior

2. When does the speaker usually get up every day?

(A) 6:30 A.M.

(B) 7:30 A.M.

(C) 8:30 A.M.

3. How many hours of sleep does the speaker usually get every day?

(A) Six hours

(B) Seven hours

(C) Eight hours

4. When does the speaker go to study at the library?

(A) Monday to Friday

(B) Monday to Thursday

(C) Almost every day

Unit 4, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. When is the male speaker’s birthday?
   (A) August 31, 1986
   (B) July 17, 1987
   (C) August 31, 1987

2. What does the male speaker do in Beijing?
   (A) Working
   (B) Teaching
   (C) Studying

3. What is the male speaker’s address?
   (A) 213, Building 14, Beijing University
   (B) 321, Building 15, Beijing University
   (C) 213, Building 15, Beijing University

To Download the audio files, please click here.
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. When did this conversation take place?
   (A) March 13
   (B) March 14
   (C) March 15

2. How old is the female speaker now?
   (A) 20 years old
   (B) 21 years old
   (C) 22 years old

Unit 4, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE ________________ DATE __________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. When did the female speaker first come to China?
   (A) This year

811
(B) Last year

(C) The year before last

2. When does the female speaker plan to return to her country?

(A) April

(B) August

(C) December

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is Li Weijian’s nationality?

(A) Chinese

(B) American

(C) Japanese

2. How many times has Li Weijian been to China?

(A) One time

(B) Two times

(C) Three times

3. When does Li Weijian plan to return to his country?
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the approximate population of England?

(A) 30,000,000

(B) 60,000,000

(C) 80,000,000

2. What is the population of Shanghai?

(A) More than 13,000,000

(B) More than 15,000,000

(C) More than 18,000,000
3. About how many more people does Shanghai have than Beijing?

(A) 3,000,000

(B) 4,000,000

(C) 5,000,000

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the approximate population of Hong Kong?

(A) 5,600,000

(B) 6,500,000

(C) 6,800,000

2. What is the approximate population of Taipei?

(A) 3,000,000

(B) 4,000,000

(C) 5,000,000

3. How many times has the male speaker been to Taipei?

(A) About 10 times

(B) About 20 times
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follow. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the last name of the person the male speaker is looking for?
   (A) Wàn
   (B) Wáng
   (C) Wāng

2. Where is the person that the male speaker is looking for?
   (A) At the person’s own office
   (B) At Teacher Zhang’s office
   (C) At the female speaker’s office

3. Where is the male speaker from?
(A) Taiwan
(B) Mainland China
(C) U.S.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where is Li Derong?
   (A) At home
   (B) At his office
   (C) At the manager’s office

2. Why did the male speaker call?
   (A) Because he wants to buy 150 tables and 250 chairs.
   (B) Because he wants to buy 250 tables and 150 chairs.
   (C) Because he wants to buy 250 tables and 50 chairs.

Unit 5, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME___________________ COURSE _________________ DATE _________________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.
EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the speaker studying this year?
   (A) Chinese high school
   (B) Beijing University
   (C) Language center

2. Where will the speaker go next year?
   (A) Hong Kong
   (B) Beijing
   (C) The United States

3. Which meals did the speaker eat in the dining hall last year?
   (A) Breakfast
   (B) Lunch
   (C) Breakfast, lunch, and dinner

4. Which meals does the speaker eat in the dining hall now?
   (A) Breakfast
   (B) Lunch
(C) Breakfast, lunch, and dinner

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What are the two speakers doing?

   (A) Having breakfast
   
   (B) Having lunch
   
   (C) Having dinner

2. Does the male speaker come to the restaurant often?

   (A) Yes, often
   
   (B) No, not often
   
   (C) He has only been once

3. How many times has the female speaker been to the restaurant?

   (A) One time
   
   (B) Two times
   
   (C) Three times

4. Where does the male speaker work?

   (A) At a university
EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the female speaker’s hotel room number?
   (A) 58
   (B) 158
   (C) 258

2. How long does the female speaker plan to stay?
   (A) Half a month
   (B) One month
   (C) A month and a half
3. What does the female speaker do when the male speaker says she has lost weight?

(A) She ignores him.

(B) She disagrees with him.

(C) She explains why.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How many times has the female speaker been to China?

(A) One time

(B) Two times

(C) She has never been.

2. How many times has the male speaker been to China?

(A) One time

(B) Two times

(C) He has never been.

3. Where is Suzhou?

(A) To the north of Shanghai

(B) To the east of Shanghai
(C) To the west of Shanghai

Unit 5, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. When did the male speaker buy the iPhone?
   (A) The day before yesterday
   (B) Yesterday
   (C) Today

2. Where is the iPhone now?
   (A) On the bookshelf behind the female speaker
   (B) On the table to the right of the female speaker
   (C) On the table to the left of the female speaker

3. Where is the instruction manual now?
   (A) On the right of the iPhone
(B) On the left of the iPhone

(C) Next to the iPhone

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the backpack?

(A) On the bookshelf in the study

(B) On the table in the study

(C) Next to the computer

2. Where is the instruction manual?

(A) To the right of the bookshelf

(B) On the bookshelf to the right

(C) On the bookshelf to the left

3. What is the main topic of this dialog?

(A) A backpack.

(B) A computer

(C) An instruction booklet

Unit 6, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. When was the speaker born?
   (A) 1993  
   (B) 1994  
   (C) 1995

2. What is the speaker’s current year in school?
   (A) Second year of junior high school  
   (B) Third year of junior high school  
   (C) First year of senior high school

3. What did the speaker receive for his birthday?
   (A) A backpack  
   (B) A computer  
   (C) A bookshelf
To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What year in college is the female speaker’s child?
   (A) First year
   (B) Second year
   (C) Third year

2. What do we know about the woman whom the female speaker would like to introduce to the male speaker?
   (A) She works at a trading company.
   (B) She is a colleague of the female speaker’s husband.
   (C) She is 26 years old.

3. Based on the dialog, which of the following statements is NOT true?
   (A) The male speaker is older than the female speaker.
   (B) The female speaker is married.
   (C) The female speaker has lost some weight.

Unit 6, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE ________________ DATE ________

824
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where did the female speaker grow up?
   (A) Hong Kong
   (B) New York
   (C) San Francisco

2. How old is the female speaker?
   (A) 18
   (B) 19
   (C) 20

3. How many siblings does the female speaker have?
   (A) 1
   (B) 2
   (C) 3

To Download the audio files, please click here.
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where does Zhang Guoshu’s ex-wife work?
   (A) High school
   (B) University
   (C) Company

2. Where does Zhang Guoshu’s current wife work?
   (A) High school
   (B) University
   (C) Company

3. How old is Zhang Guoshu’s daughter?
   (A) Two
   (B) Five
   (C) Twelve

Unit 6, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME________________ COURSE ________________ DATE __________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.
EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. At the beginning of the dialog, what is the first speaker’s problem?
   (A) He missed class.
   (B) He ate too much food.
   (C) He’s late to an appointment.

2. What is the problem with this place?
   (A) It’s hard to find.
   (B) It’s too expensive.
   (C) There are too many students.

3. Why didn’t Mr. Bai come?
   (A) His children are still small.
   (B) He is busy with his studies.
   (C) He has things to do at home.

4. What is one aspect of Chinese that the first speaker says is hard to learn?
   (A) Culture
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What city is the speaker’s husband from?
   (A) Shanghai
   (B) Tianjin
   (C) Pudong

2. Where is Pudong?
   (A) In the northeast of Shanghai
   (B) In the northwest of Shanghai
   (C) In the southeast of Shanghai

3. How old is the speaker’s daughter?
   (A) Ten months old
   (B) Five years old
   (C) Eight years old

4. Where does the speaker’s husband work?
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

**EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS**

1. How many sisters does the male speaker have?
   
   (A) One
   
   (B) Two
   
   (C) Three

2. Where did the speaker grow up?
   
   (A) New York
   
   (B) Los Angeles
   
   (C) Guangzhou
3. Where do his maternal grandparents parents live?

(A) New York

(B) Los Angeles

(C) Guangzhou

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the age of the female speaker relative to her siblings?

(A) Eldest

(B) Second eldest

(C) Third eldest

2. Where is the female speaker’s brother?

(A) China

(B) United States

(C) England

3. When did the female speaker go to the United States?

(A) Two years ago

(B) One year ago
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Who are the people in the picture?
   (A) The female speaker’s sister and her family
   (B) The female speaker’s cousin and her family
   (C) The female speaker’s aunt and her family

2. What does the woman in the picture do for a living?
   (A) Factory work
   (B) Business
   (C) Teaching

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

To Download the audio files, please click here.
1. Where does the female speaker live now?

(A) To the northeast of Beijing

(B) To the northwest of Beijing

(C) To the southeast of Beijing

2. Where does the female speaker’s son go to school now?

(A) Elementary school

(B) Junior high school

(C) Senior high school

3. Where does the female speaker’s husband work?

(A) Kindergarten

(B) Elementary school

(C) Junior high school

Unit 7, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.
EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the female speaker studying now?
   (A) United States
   (B) Mainland China
   (C) Taiwan

2. How many characters does the female speaker know?
   (A) One hundred
   (B) Seven hundred
   (C) Several hundred

3. What other foreign language has the female speaker learned?
   (A) French
   (B) Japanese
   (C) Spanish

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where did the female speaker learn English?
   (A) Elementary school
(B) Junior high school

(C) University

2. For how long did the female speaker learn English?

(A) Half a year

(B) A year and a half

(C) Eight years

3. What does the female speaker think of English?

(A) It’s easy.

(B) It’s hard.

(C) It’s interesting.

4. For how long did the female speaker learn Spanish?

(A) Half a year

(B) A year and a half

(C) Eight years

Unit 7, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. In which month did the male speaker arrive in Hong Kong?
   (A) January
   (B) February
   (C) March

2. How long did the male speaker learn Chinese?
   (A) Less than a year
   (B) A year
   (C) More than a year

3. What level is the Chinese of the male speaker’s wife?
   (A) Beginning
   (B) Advanced
   (C) She speaks no Chinese.

To Download the audio files, please click here.
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where is Nanjing?
   
   (A) In the south of China

   (B) In the east of China

   (C) In the northwest of China

2. In what level of school is the speaker?

   (A) Junior high school

   (B) Senior high school

   (C) University

3. With whom did the speaker come to the U.S.?

   (A) Sister

   (B) Brother

   (C) Cousin

4. What criticism does the speaker express?

   (A) Chinatown is dirty.

   (B) New Yorkers talk too fast.

   (C) New York is very expensive.
EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What did the male speaker do after graduating from college?
   (A) Teach school.
   (B) Go to graduate school.
   (C) Work at a trading company.

2. What does the female speaker want to do after graduating from college?
   (A) Teach school.
   (B) Go to graduate school.
   (C) Work at a trading company.

3. What is NOT said about the city of Harbin?
(A) It is cold.

(B) It is a good area.

(C) The people there are nice.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How long did the female speaker study in Beijing?

(A) Four months

(B) Six months

(C) Ten months

2. What are the male speaker’s future plans?

(A) Go to graduate school in the U.S.

(B) Go to graduate school in China

(C) Study in China for a couple of years

3. What is NOT said about Beijing?

(A) The air is bad.

(B) The traffic is congested.

(C) There isn’t much crime.
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where should the male speaker go in order to get to his destination?
   (A) North
   (B) South
   (C) Straight

2. How fast can he get to the destination by taxi?
   (A) About three minutes
   (B) About seven minutes
   (C) About half an hour

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS
1. Where is the male speaker’s teacher from?

(A) Beijing

(B) North China

(C) South China

2. Where is Harbin?

(A) In the northeast of China

(B) In the northwest of China

(C) In the southeast of China

3. How far is the male speaker’s dorm from his teacher’s office?

(A) Quite far

(B) One minute on foot

(C) Seven minutes on foot

Unit 8, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.
EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the passenger’s surname?
   (A) Li
   (B) Wang
   (C) Zhang

2. Where does the passenger wish to go?
   (A) University
   (B) Embassy
   (C) Airport

3. What time will the taxi arrive?
   (A) 5:05
   (B) 5:20
   (C) 5:35

4. What is the correct romanization for the university that is mentioned?
   (A) Fūdàn
   (B) Fùdàn
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where are the two speakers?

(A) Beijing
(B) Shanghai
(C) Hong Kong

2. How many people are going to take the taxi?

(A) One
(B) Two
(C) Three

3. When will the passenger(s) be leaving for the airport?

(A) 6:00
(B) 6:25
(C) 6:50

Unit 8, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE ____________
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. When did the male speaker call the taxi company for the first time?
   (A) 15 minutes ago
   (B) 30 minutes ago
   (C) 60 minutes ago

2. How many more minutes does the male speaker need to wait?
   (A) 5 minutes
   (B) 10 minutes
   (C) 15 minutes

3. About what time will the taxi arrive?
   (A) 5:00 P.M.
   (B) 5:20 P.M.
   (C) 5:40 P.M.
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How many times did the male speaker call the taxi company?
   (A) Once
   (B) Twice
   (C) Three times

2. What time is it now?
   (A) 10:30
   (B) 11:30
   (C) 12:30

3. How long does it take to get to the airport?
   (A) 5 minutes
   (B) 20 minutes
   (C) 40 minutes

Unit 8, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME__________ COURSE ____________ DATE ________

844
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How many passengers are going to the airport?
   (A) One
   (B) Two
   (C) Three

2. How many suitcases are there?
   (A) One
   (B) Two
   (C) Three

3. How fast can they get to the airport?
   (A) 30 minutes
   (B) 45 minutes
   (C) One hour

To Download the audio files, please click here.
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How heavy is the male speaker?
   (A) 73 kilograms
   (B) 86 kilograms
   (C) 97 kilograms

2. How tall is the female speaker?
   (A) 1.63 meters
   (B) 1.79 meters
   (C) 1.86 meters

3. The female speaker relates the height of Americans to what?
   (A) Trees
   (B) Mountains
   (C) Sky

Unit 9, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

846
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. After passing the third traffic light, where should the female speaker go?
   (A) Go straight
   (B) Turn right
   (C) Turn left

2. How far away is the library?
   (A) 3 minutes on foot
   (B) 15 minutes on foot
   (C) 30 minutes on foot

3. What time does the library close today?
   (A) 7:30 P.M.
   (B) 8:30 P.M.
   (C) 9:30 P.M.

To Download the audio files, please click here.
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Which backpack belongs to the female speaker’s roommate?
   (A) The black one
   (B) The green one
   (C) The white one

2. What colors does the male speaker like?
   (A) White and red
   (B) Black and white
   (C) Green and red

3. Where is the female speaker from?
   (A) New York
   (B) San Francisco
   (C) Hong Kong

Unit 9, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE ______________
Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the bus stop for bus 805?
   (A) Straight ahead
   (B) After the intersection, turn right.
   (C) After the intersection, turn left.

2. What bus should the female speaker take to get to the zoo?
   (A) Take bus 805.
   (B) Take bus 15, then switch to bus 805.
   (C) Take bus 805, then switch to bus 15.

3. How far away is the bus stop for bus 805?
   (A) 5 minutes
   (B) 10 minutes
   (C) 15 minutes

To Download the audio files, please click here.
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How far away is Peking University?
   (A) 5-6 minutes on foot
   (B) 5-6 minutes by bus
   (C) 20 minutes on foot

2. What does the woman suggest to the man?
   (A) He should walk.
   (B) He should take the bus.
   (C) He should take a taxi.

3. In what direction does Peking University lie?
   (A) East
   (B) West
   (C) Straight ahead

Unit 9, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.
EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where did the male speaker get on the bus?
   (A) First stop
   (B) Heping Hotel
   (C) Renmin University

2. How many stops are there before the last stop?
   (A) Three
   (B) Four
   (C) Five

3. How much does the bus ticket cost?
   (A) 3.5 RMB
   (B) 4.0 RMB
   (C) 4.5 RMB

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Whose room are the speakers talking about?
2. What is Little Wang like?

(A) She often studies in her doom.

(B) She is hard-working, but not very smart.

(C) She likes to joke with people.

3. What language is Little Wang learning?

(A) Chinese

(B) Japanese

(C) Spanish

Unit 9, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME_________________ COURSE ________________ DATE __________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS
1. What is the male speaker’s problem?
   (A) He hasn’t bought a ticket.
   (B) He can’t find his ticket.
   (C) He can’t find his money.

2. At which stop is the male speaker going to get off?
   (A) The Summer Palace
   (B) The next stop
   (C) The stop after the next stop

3. How much did the male speaker’s ticket cost?
   (A) 1.5 RMB
   (B) 2.5 RMB
   (C) 3.5 RMB

4. What was the key fact in resolving the problem?
   (A) The male speaker found his ticket.
   (B) The conductor lent the male speaker some money.
   (C) The conductor remembered the male speaker.

To Download the audio files, please click here.
EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. When did the male speaker come back to the U.S.?
   (A) April 6
   (B) May 20
   (C) June 24

2. Where is Hangzhou?
   (A) In the east of China
   (B) To the northeast of Shanghai
   (C) Quite far from Shanghai

3. When does the female speaker plan to go to China?
   (A) October this year
   (B) January next year
   (C) November next year

Unit 10, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE ________________ DATE __________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.
EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What will the weather be like this morning?
   (A) Clear
   (B) Overcast
   (C) Rainy

2. What is the high temperature tomorrow?
   (A) 31˚
   (B) 34˚
   (C) 35˚

3. What will the weather be like tomorrow?
   (A) Sunny
   (B) Drizzling rain
   (C) Heavy rain

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the weather like right now?
2. What will the weather be like tomorrow?

(A) Rainy
(B) Overcast
(C) Sunny

3. What is the high temperature tomorrow?

(A) 29˚
(B) 32˚
(C) 34˚

Unit 10, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.
1. In which season did the male speaker go to Beijing?
   (A) Spring
   (B) Summer
   (C) Winter

2. What are Harbin summers like?
   (A) Hot
   (B) Dry
   (C) Rainy

3. What is NOT true of Harbin winters?
   (A) It often snows.
   (B) They start in November.
   (C) January is the coldest month.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What was the weather like last week?
   (A) Rainy
   (B) Very hot
(C) Neither cold nor hot

2. What is the prediction for the next few days?

(A) It will rain.

(B) It will be neither cold nor hot.

(C) The high temperature will be 78°.

3. What is the male speaker’s favorite season?

(A) Spring

(B) Summer

(C) Autumn

Unit 10, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME______________ COURSE ________________ DATE __________

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. On which day did the male speaker return from Taipei?

(A) The 12th
2. What was the weather like when the male speaker was in Taipei the last time?

(A) Very hot

(B) Very humid

(C) There was a typhoon.

3. What was the weather like when the male speaker was in Taipei this time?

(A) Very hot

(B) Very humid

(C) There was a typhoon.

4. According to the male speaker, which season in Taiwan is best for tourists?

(A) Winter

(B) Summer

(C) Autumn

To Download the audio files, please click here.
1. What is the weather like right now?

(A) Light rain

(B) Heavy rain

(C) Sunshine

2. What is Mary doing?

(A) Studying

(B) Sleeping

(C) Having fun

Unit 10, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where is Qingdao?

(A) In the east of China

(B) In the west of China
(C) In the south of China

2. What is the winter like in Nanjing?
   (A) Cold
   (B) Hot
   (C) Humid

3. How long has the female speaker been in Nanjing?
   (A) Half a year
   (B) A year
   (C) A year and a half

4. Has she gotten used to the climate in Nanjing?
   (A) Yes, she has.
   (B) No, she hasn’t.
   (C) Not at first, but now she has just about gotten accustomed to it.

To Download the audio files, please click here.

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. When did the female speaker come?
   (A) Around 5:40
(B) Around 6:00

(C) Around 6:20

2. How did the male speaker come?

(A) By bus

(B) By taxi

(C) On foot

3. What did the female speaker’s experience show?

(A) Taxi is faster than bus.

(B) Walking can be faster than bus or taxi.

(C) Taxi is not necessarily faster than bus.

4. How would the male speaker’s attitude toward the female speaker be best described?

(A) He is angry at her.

(B) He is used to her.

(C) He likes her very much.
6. Dictation Exercises

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Dictation Exercise 1

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION: INITIALS

NAME_____________ COURSE _____________ DATE ____________

Based on the recording for this exercise, write in the correct Pinyin initials. The finals and tones are indicated. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. _____________ā
2. _____________ū
3. _____________ī
4. _____________ō
5. _____________ǎi
6. _____________iā
7. _____________ōu
8. _____________āo
9. _____________iē
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Dictation Exercise 2

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION: FINALS

NAME__________ COURSE ____________ DATE ________

Based on the recording for this exercise, write in the correct Pinyin finals, which are all in Tone One. The initials are indicated. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. f____________
2. j____________
3. t____________
4. x____________
5. j____________
6. c____________
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Dictation Exercise 3

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION: TONES

NAME______________ COURSE ________________ DATE __________

Based on the recording for this exercise, add the correct Pinyin tones. The initials and finals are indicated. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. ta

2. ma

3. wo

4. shei
5. hao
6. lei
7. sha
8. gui
9. ni
10. mei
11. zhi
12. shu
13. tan
14. lü
15. lu
16. ru
17. rou
18. lüe
19. ku
20. li
21. xue
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Dictation Exercise 4

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION: INITIALS, FINALS, AND TONES

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Based on the recording for this exercise, write the initial, final, and tone for the syllables you hear. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. ______________
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Dictation Exercise 5

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS 1–32

NAME___________ COURSE _______________ DATE ________
Based on the recording for this exercise, write below the English equivalents for the Chinese expressions you hear. Note that some of the classroom expressions from the textbook have here been combined or slightly rearranged. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. ______________________
2. ______________________
3. ______________________
4. ______________________
5. ______________________
6. ______________________
7. ______________________
8. ______________________
9. ______________________
10.______________________
11.______________________
12.______________________
13.______________________
14.______________________
To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

**Dictation Exercise 6**

**UNIT 3, PART 2: NUMBERS 1–99 AND AGES**

**NAME**______________ **COURSE** _____________ **DATE** ____________

Based on the recording for this exercise, write the number or age that you hear (in the case of ages, write “___ years old”). You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. ______________
2. ______________
3. ______________
4. ______________
5. ______________
Based on the recording for this exercise, write the number or money amount that you hear (in the case of money amounts, assume it is American money and indicate $ or ¢ as appropriate). You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. _____________
To Download the audio files, please click here.

Dictation Exercise 8

UNIT 3, PART 4: CLOCK TIMES AND AMOUNTS OF TIME

NAME___________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________
Based on the recording for this exercise, write the clock time or amount of time that you hear. (Write clock times as hour followed by minutes, e.g., “5:35”; indicate amounts of time with “hours” or “minutes”, e.g., “2 hours” or “10 minutes.”) You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. ______________
2. ______________
3. ______________
4. ______________
5. ______________
6. ______________
7. ______________
8. ______________
9. ______________
10. ______________
11. ______________
12. ______________
13. ______________
14. ______________
To Download the audio files, please click here.
Dictation Exercise 9

UNIT 4, PART 2: DATES

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Based on the recording for this exercise, write the date that you hear, including day of the week, month, day of the month, and year. For example, if you hear the Chinese for “Monday, July 4, 2011,” then write below in this order and with these abbreviations: “Mon., 7/4/2011.” You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. ______________________

2. ______________________

3. ______________________

4. ______________________

5. ______________________

6. ______________________

7. ______________________

8. ______________________

9. ______________________

10. ______________________
11. ______________________
12. ______________________
13. ______________________
14. ______________________
15. ______________________
16. ______________________
17. ______________________
18. ______________________
19. ______________________
20. ______________________

To Download the audio files, please click here.

Dictation Exercise 10

UNIT 4, PART 4: LARGE NUMBERS

NAME ____________  COURSE ______________  DATE ____________

Based on the recording for this exercise, write numerically the number that you hear as it would be written in the U.S. For example, for “one billion three hundred million,” write “1,300,000,000.” If the Chinese uses duō to indicate “more
than,” then use a plus mark (+) after the number. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. ____________
2. ____________
3. ____________
4. ____________
5. ____________
6. ____________
7. ____________
8. ____________
9. ____________
10. ____________
11. ____________
12. ____________
13. ____________
14. ____________
15. ____________
16. ____________
7. Translation Exercises, Units 1–10: For Each Part (Lesson)

Unit 1, Part 1: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Where is Ke Leien going?
2. I’m going to the cafeteria. How about you?
3. Wang Jingsheng is going back to the dorm.
4. Ke Leien is going to take care of some things.
5. You’re going to the library; I also am going to the library.

Unit 1, Part 2: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I’m tired; are you tired, too?
2. Haven’t seen you for a long time! Are you busy?

3. He is busy; his wife and children are also all busy.

4. How have your mom and dad been? Are they both well?

5. She has a little something (she has to do); I also have a little something (I have to do).

Unit 1, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Chinese is not hard; Chinese is easy!

2. Little Wang, hi! How have you been lately?

3. Recently her studies have not been too intense.

4. Recently we have all been quite busy. (use tīng...-de pattern)

5. Is Old Zhao going? Are you going? (use affirmative-negative question pattern)

Unit 1, Part 4: Translation Exercise
Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Teacher Wang, please come in! Please sit down!

2. We’ve gotten tired. Have you (plural) gotten tired, too?

3. A: Ms. Gao, thank you! B: You’re welcome. Take care!

4. Mr. Li, how are you? Mrs. Li, how are you? (be as polite as possible)

5. Miss Lin, I have a little something (I have to do); I must be going now. Goodbye!

Unit 2, Part 1: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. She is American, Chinese-American. How about you?

2. Are both of you Chinese? And how about that classmate?
3. Excuse me, what country are you from? Are you Japanese? (be polite)

4. I’m called (write your own Chinese surname and given name). What’s your name?

5. They’re not all good fathers. This teacher is a good father, but that teacher isn’t a good father.

Unit 2, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE ____________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. We welcome you to come to America! (be polite)

2. Who is your (plural) teacher? Who are your classmates?

3. Welcome! Please come in, please sit down. Don’t leave!

4. I’m happy to meet you. Excuse me, how should I address you?

5. Don’t address me like this. It would be better if you called me Little Gao.

Unit 2, Part 3: Translation Exercise
Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I study at Taiwan University; where do you study?

2. This person must be your spouse, I suppose? (be polite)

3. My mother works at a company. Where does your mother work?

4. Mr. Wu works at the Foreign Ministry, Mrs. Wu works at the Japanese Embassy.

5. What is your last name? At which organization do you work? (be as polite as you can)

Unit 2, Part 4: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Sorry, I didn’t go, I also didn’t ask.

2. None of them went to the dining hall.
3. A: Have they come? B: They still haven’t come.

4. Not all of them are Chinese, but none of us are Canadians.

5. Miss Wang from the Chinese Embassy has come. Do you know her?

Unit 3, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE ______

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. We in the class have nine classmates. (be polite)

2. You guys in all have how many Chinese language teachers?

3. One is a male student, eight are female students. (no need to be polite)

4. In the class there are seven French people, six Chinese people, and four Germans.

5. There are five teachers; two are male teachers, three are female teachers. (be polite)

Unit 3, Part 2: Translation Exercise
Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. How old is their child?
2. Next month I’ll be 19 years old.
3. How old is your mother this year?
4. You don’t have an older brother, right?
5. Let me try to think: My father is 61 this year.

Unit 3, Part 3: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Why don’t we buy one, too?
2. How much does that backpack cost?
3. The cups and bags she sells are all too expensive.
4. Why don’t you take a look. This is very good, also very inexpensive.

5. This briefcase costs three thousand four hundred and fifty-nine dollars.

Unit 3, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. In that case, I then will take the 10:00 train.

2. We will take the 9:30 one. How about you?

3. To Tianjin it takes about one and one-half hours.

4. Excuse me, how long does it take to get to Singapore?

5. Now it’s already 2:30; I’m afraid you guys are not going to make it.

Unit 4, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________
Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Excuse me, is the library open on Sunday?

2. I ordinarily sleep seven hours every day. How about you?

3. Monday, Wednesday, Friday the company is open half the day.

4. I usually get up at 7:00 in the morning and go to sleep at 11:00 at night.

5. The language lab opens at 9:00 in the morning, and closes at 8:30 in the evening.

Unit 4, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME ___________ COURSE ___________ DATE ___________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Her mother’s birthday is November 24.

2. His father was born on September 19, 1965 in England.

3. What is the date tomorrow and what day of the week is it?
4. My address is Peace Road, Section 3, Lane 46, Alley 5, Number 27, 7th floor.

5. How many days? One day! How many weeks? Two weeks! How many months? Three months! How many years? Four years!

Unit 4, Part 3: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. This is my third time in China.

2. Teacher Wang this year went twice.

3. On November 25th I’ll be going home.

4. I’ve never been (= “gone”) to China before. Have you been there before?

5. A: How long will you be staying? B: This time I want to stay one month.

Unit 4, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME_________________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________
Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. How many people are there in Shanghai?

2. Taiwan has about twenty-four million people.

3. It seems Taipei only has three million people.

4. It seems Guangzhou has more than twelve million people.

5. Guangzhou’s population is comparatively larger. (use duō “be many, much”)

Unit 5, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Where is that table?

2. Do you know where that chair is?

3. Excuse me, is Ms. Zhang present?

4. If I’m not there, can you leave me a note?

5. Mrs. Zhang is here, but Ms. Zhang is not here now.
Unit 5, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I work there.

2. Where do you eat breakfast?

3. We often come here to eat Chinese food.

4. She is studying Chinese language at Beijing University.

5. Gosh! Soon it will be seven o’clock. I have to go eat dinner!

Unit 5, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Shanghai is in the east of China.

2. The year before last they moved to Chengdu.
3. Little Li, you really have gotten a little fatter!
4. I’m looking for the toilet; excuse me, where’s the toilet?
5. This time I’m staying at the Beijing Hotel. Where do you live?

Unit 5, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. In the cup there are five cents.
2. The computer is on that table to your right.
3. The switch is not in the front, it’s in the back.
4. That thing that is on top—don’t concern yourself with it!
5. Little Wang is outside the library; he’s not inside the library.

Unit 6, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________
Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. That is the candy that she gave me.

2. Auntie, let me introduce a friend to you.

3. The dining hall food is not very good to eat.

4. This is a little present that I’m giving you. (be polite)

5. Her boyfriend is already in his senior year; he’s quite good-looking.

Unit 6, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Little Jin, you look very sleepy!

2. I’m not yet married. Are you married?

3. Excuse me, what does qiānzhèng mean?

4. Old Sun, I suppose you’re not yet fifty years old?
5. My Chinese friend was born in Tianjin and then grew up in Beijing.

Unit 6, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. That child is six months old.

2. Why do you only work half the day?

3. Do you like to teach? What do you teach?

4. Because we’re very busy, we didn’t wait for him.

5. You work at Northeast Airlines, right? When do you go to work and when do you get off from work?

Unit 6, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. He’s the oldest in their family.
2. Sorry, I forgot to introduce myself.

3. Mrs. Zhang, in the future if there is an opportunity, let’s chat again!

4. I have one older sister and one younger brother. How many siblings do you have?

5. My older brother is studying abroad in Japan; my younger sister immigrated to France.

Unit 7, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Who all is there in their family?

2. My parents used to work in a factory. (“used to” = “formerly”)

3. Formerly I sold computers; now I’ve changed my line of work.

4. She works in a kindergarten; she has to go to work at 7:00 in the morning.

5. Because his health is not too good, therefore he now is not engaged in business anymore.
Unit 7, Part 2: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I can speak a little Chinese, but (I) speak it not too well.

2. She only knows English, she can’t speak other languages.

3. I recognize about two hundred Chinese characters; some I can write, others I can’t.

4. He used to be able to write Chinese characters, but now he has completely forgotten.

5. Oh, your Chinese characters are written not badly! (indicate this is something obvious)

Unit 7, Part 3: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. No wonder the things here are so expensive!
2. I didn’t come alone. I came together with my parents.

3. We arrived this year in September. When did you arrive?

4. Sometimes I go with my classmates, sometimes I go alone.

5. My Chinese in the beginning was learned in America, later I studied for a while in China.

Unit 7, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I hear you speak English very well.

2. Six months ago I couldn’t yet speak Chinese.

3. Little Gao, where did you study before you came here?

4. In 3 months, we’re going to China for study abroad. (“in 3 months” = “after 3 months”)

5. In China the great majority of people start working after they graduate from high school.

Unit 8, Part 1: Translation Exercise
Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. My home is close to her home.

2. Is your dormitory far from the dining hall?

3. Excuse me, how do you get to Tiananmen?

4. If you take a train, it will probably take more or less two hours.

5. Please keep going straight ahead; when you’ve passed the Beijing Hotel then you’ll have arrived.

Unit 8, Part 2: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I want a cab to go to the Great Wall Hotel.

2. The car will be there in twenty-five minutes.

3. I have a foreign friend whose last name is Tachelzik.
4. Why don’t you wait at the entrance to Capital Airport.

5. Her English name is Mary Smith. She doesn’t yet have a Chinese name.

Unit 8, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. How come you still haven’t decided what you want to do?

2. At that time it’s rush hour; traffic is comparatively congested.

3. Could I trouble you to be a little faster, all right? Soon we’ll be late!

4. They said the car had already been dispatched and would be there in twenty minutes.

5. I called you on the phone an hour ago to ask for a taxi. (don’t use zhōngtóu for “hour”)

Unit 8, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

903
Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Those three pieces of luggage are all mine.


3. How much time does one need from here to the airport?

4. A: How tall is she? B: It seems she’s about one meter seventy.

5. There’s a traffic jam here again; we have no choice but to change to a different road.

Unit 9, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Ask her what colors she likes.

2. Turn right at the next intersection.

3. When you pass the third traffic light, turn east.

4. My daughter likes blue and yellow; my son likes black and white.
5. He isn’t a person from this locality; he’s probably not very clear either.

Unit 9, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME________________ COURSE ______________ DATE ____________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Excuse me, to get to the zoo, what bus number do you take?

2. The zoo? I have to think for a second; I’m not too clear either.

3. You first take bus number 578; then transfer to street car number 232.

4. The street car has come. Get on quickly! You don’t need to wait for me.

5. We keep many small animals at our house: cats, dogs, fish, and birds, we have them all!

Unit 9, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME________________ COURSE ______________ DATE ____________
Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I just got on. When did you get on?
2. Your room is not only clean, but it’s also very neat.
3. I’ll pay; you don’t need to pay. (“pay” = “give money”)
4. The students there, some are hard-working, some are lazy.
5. Two tickets to Tiananmen. When we get to Tiananmen, please call me.

Unit 9, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I’m not sleepy; I can’t fall asleep. Do you think you can fall asleep?
2. I can understand spoken Chinese, but I can’t read Chinese characters.
3. A: I suppose we’ll soon be there? B: It’s still early, there are still three stations.
4. Never mind, I remember he bought a ticket. In the future he should be more careful!

5. I’m sorry, my classmate bought a ticket but now he can’t find it. What should be done?

Unit 10, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. The weather report says that starting Friday, it’s going to get hotter and hotter.

2. Tomorrow the high temperature is 37 degrees, the low temperature is 28 degrees.

3. This morning is cloudy; this afternoon it’s possible it will change to clear weather.

4. Dang it, it’s started raining; now it has thundered. Do you think lightning will strike?

5. Don’t ask her; she’s merely a child, she doesn’t necessarily know either. (use zhī…éryī)

Unit 10, Part 2: Translation Exercise
Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Today is a cloudy day; if the sun came out, then it would be good.

2. The season I like the most is spring, so I’ve come at just the right time!

3. Hey, the weather here is not bad. Neither cold nor hot, quite comfortable.

4. If you want to have a good time in Canada, summer is the most appropriate.

5. In the winter it’s extremely cold; in the summer it’s both dry and hot, and it seldom rains.

Unit 10, Part 3: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. What are you doing? Don’t go in! Come out quickly!
2. We encountered a big typhoon; we really had bad luck.

3. Taiwan is both hot and humid; in the winter it often drizzles.

4. Recently it’s been raining every day, there’s no way at all to go outdoors.

5. Actually, it’s snowing right now, but because it’s too far away, you can’t tell.

Unit 10, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. The East Coast of the U.S. is not as dry as the West Coast.

2. Where in China is your home? What is the climate like there?

3. When I first arrived, I didn’t adapt too well; later it was pretty much O.K.

4. I feel that the scenery on the West Coast is more beautiful than on the East Coast.

5. The winters here are warmer than New York, and the summers are cooler than New York.
8. Translation Exercises, Units 1–10: For Each Complete Unit

Unit 1: Translation Exercise

NAME_____________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Mr. Zhao is a good teacher; he is very interesting.

2. Chinese is not too hard, and it’s also not too easy.

3. Miss Ke, welcome! Please come in, please sit down.

4. Mrs. Li, has your work been busy recently? (be polite)

5. I’m going to take care of some things. How about you?

6. She is very tall; her mom and dad are also both very tall.

7. I’ll go to the library; you please go back to the dormitory.

8. We have all gotten tired. Have you (plural) also gotten tired?

9. I have a little something to do; I must be going now. Goodbye!
10. Little Lin, how are you? Long time no see! Where are you going?

Unit 2: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I know Ms. Ma from the U.S. Embassy.

2. I suppose your studies must be very intense.

3. General Manager He, welcome to America! (be polite)


5. Excuse me, who is that? What’s his name? What unit does he work in?

6. Don’t address me like that. It would be better if you called me Little Wu.

7. My mother and I work at a trading company, my dad doesn’t work anymore.

8. I will introduce you: this gentleman is my new colleague; his last name is Bai.
9. Old Wang, don’t go back to the dining hall. It would be better if you went to the library.

10. They’re my classmates; they’re not all Americans. Little Lin is Chinese; she’s very busy.

Unit 3: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. How much is nine plus eight minus six?

2. This bag is cheap. Why don’t you buy one too?

3. I don’t have an older brother, also don’t have an older sister.

4. In our Chinese class, in all there are twelve classmates, right?

5. This one costs $4,000, that one costs $5,000. Too expensive!

6. Would it be all right if I took a look at your name card? Thanks!

7. I’m afraid the classmate who works in the library is no longer coming.
8. Let me try to think... My mom will be forty-seven years old next month.

9. My mom and dad are coming at 11:45; it will still take an hour and a half.

10. A: How much does that cup cost? B: This cup only costs two dollars and ninety-eight cents.

Unit 4: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. She was born in Taipei on July 23, 1995.

2. This is the third time that he’s going to China.

3. It seems Hong Kong has more than seven million people.

4. It seems yesterday was October 17, a Wednesday. Is that right?

5. This is my second time here; this time I’m going to stay for three months.

6. That trading company is open half-days on Saturdays; it’s closed on Sundays.
7. The library opens daily at 8:45 in the morning and closes at 7:30 in the evening.

8. I’ve been to Shanghai, but I’ve never been to Guangzhou. Have you been there?

9. The first person wants to go for one day; the second person wants to go for one year.

10. Her address is 6th Floor, No. 108, Alley 22, Lane 345, Nanjing East Road Section Three.

Unit 5: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. If you’re tired, you may sleep here.

2. Little Sun, do you know where the boss is?

3. Miss Zhang was not in. I left her a message.

4. Is she also studying Chinese at Peking University?

5. Last year they moved to Tianjin; it’s east of Beijing.

6. Next month Mrs. Chen is coming here to study English.
7. The dog was on the bookshelf, the child was under the table.

8. This computer is a little cheaper, that computer is a little more expensive.

9. It will soon be 12:00. The shoe factory workers will soon be eating lunch.

10. A: Where does Mr. Bai live? B: He lives in Nanjing, to the west of Shanghai.

Unit 6: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE ______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I’m a first-year and she’s a junior. What year are you in?

2. My friend was born in China and then grew up in America.

3. Mrs. Zheng, this is a little present which we are giving you.

4. A: How old is her son? B: He’s still small. It seems he’s seven months old.

5. She’s already over 70, but because she eats lots of good things, she looks young.
6. A: Are you married? B: My older brother is already married; I’m not yet married.

7. That Chinese person said that American food looks good but does not taste very good.

8. I have one older sister, she works at Southwest Airlines. Do you have brothers or sisters?

9. Sorry, I forgot to introduce myself. My surname is Huang. I’m a teacher; I teach junior high.

10. A: I suppose your daughter is already in elementary school? B: Yes, she’s already in second grade.

Unit 7: Translation Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Where did you live before coming to America?

2. You say you have one child, right? A boy or a girl? How old?

3. I’ve heard that Little Chen knows German, French, and Japanese.

5. A: Can you write Chinese? B: I can write a little, but I don’t write it very well.

6. Do you know if that American teacher can speak Standard Chinese (Mandarin)?

7. She lived in Spain for over eleven years. No wonder she speaks Spanish so well.

8. After graduating from high school, she worked for two years, then she applied to college.

9. The Chinese University of Hong Kong has several thousand students. Some I know, others I don’t.

10. A: You speak English very well, you know! Where did you learn it? B: I learned it in kindergarten.

Unit 8: Translation Exercise

NAME______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Excuse me, how do I get to Taiwan University?

2. We’ll come looking for you in half an hour, O.K.?
3. It seems that my home is not very far from your home.

4. Miss Li is not at her desk. Please call her again in ten minutes.

5. The tourists who come from America almost all stay at the Beijing Hotel.

6. These two pieces of luggage are mine, those three pieces of luggage are his.

7. Don’t get excited, I think Professor Wang is likely to come in just a little while.

8. Keep going straight, after you’ve passed the French Embassy you then will have arrived.

9. A: How long does it take to get from there to the foreign ministry? B: One hour, more or less.

10. Darn it, I forgot! New Asia Trading Co. is closed today. We have no choice but to come again tomorrow.

Unit 9: Translation Exercise

NAME__________ COURSE ______________ DATE ________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. He’s not only stupid but also lazy.
2. First take the bus, then take the trolley.

3. When we get to Tiananmen, please call me.

4. She likes red and blue. What colors do you like?

5. I can’t fall asleep on trains. Can you fall asleep on trains?

6. Go straight from here and turn left at the first traffic light.

7. You don’t need to ask her, she’s not very clear about it either.

8. First turn to the east, then turn to the west, and you’ll be there!

9. I’m sorry, I can’t find my name cards. (don’t use kéyi or néng)

10. At home we raise fish. Do you keep any small animals at home?

Unit 10: Translation Exercise

NAME_______________ COURSE _______________ DATE __________

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. When Old Wang died, everybody was very sad.
2. The east coast of the U.S. is not as dry as the west coast.

3. This winter I’m going to Beijing. Is Beijing colder than New York?

4. I’m playing with my computer; Old Sun is sleeping. What are you doing?

5. Macao is hot every day—both hot and humid, so we seldom go outdoors.

6. Recently the weather has been cooler and cooler, more and more comfortable.

7. Starting tomorrow, I’m going to be working at the embassy. I’m so nervous I’m going to die.

8. The weather forecast said that tomorrow the high temperature will be 33° and the low temperature 25°.

9. If it rains tomorrow, then we won’t go out to have fun; but the weather report isn’t necessarily accurate.

10. A: My friends are neither many nor few. B: I have only one good friend. C: I don’t have friends at all.

Cornelius C. Kubler is Stanfield Professor of Asian Studies at Williams College, where he teaches Chinese and for many years chaired the Department of Asian Studies. He was formerly Chinese Language Training Supervisor and Chair of the Department of Asian and African Languages at the
Foreign Service Institute, U.S. Department of State, where he trained American diplomats in Chinese and other languages, and he served for six years as Principal of the American Institute in Taiwan Chinese Language & Area Studies School. Kubler, who has directed intensive Chinese language training programs in the U.S., mainland China, and Taiwan, has been active in Chinese language test development and has authored or coauthored nine books and over 50 articles on Chinese language pedagogy and linguistics.

Yang Wang, native to Beijing, is a Lecturer in Chinese at Brown University, where she teaches all levels of modern Chinese language. Before joining the Brown faculty, she taught Chinese at The Ohio State University and Williams College. She also taught for several years at the Middlebury College Summer Chinese School. Wang is interested in the implications of pragmatics in Chinese pedagogical practice, teaching materials development, and the integration of technology into the curriculum.
REINFORCE YOUR CHINESE LANGUAGE SKILLS.

Anyone who's studying Chinese knows that it takes lots of practice. Use this one-of-a-kind practice guide together with any Chinese book or language program, and dramatically enhance your proficiency.

PRACTICE ESSENTIALS offers a wealth of carefully-designed activities to help you solidify every aspect of your spoken Chinese skills:

- Substitution drills
- Role Play exercises
- Dictation exercises
- Transformation & Response drills
- Listening Comprehension exercises
- Translation exercises

The included CD-ROM provides over 16 hours of audio by native speakers, plus printable PDF files of hundreds of additional pages of Chinese exercises and activities.

Praise for BASIC SPOKEN CHINESE

“Outstanding for its carefully graduated presentation of material ... and perhaps most important of all, its separation of the task of learning to speak the language from the very different processes of learning to read and write Chinese characters ... The most exciting Chinese language textbook I have seen in many years.”

—Dr. James E. Dwee, retired associate professor of Chinese, Univ. of Michigan; former Director of the Inter-University Program for Chinese Language Studies in Taipei

“A breath of fresh air ... Its dual track for spoken and written language finally gives American students a chance to develop oral proficiency without being slowed down by the character writing ... An ideal textbook for any program that seeks to advance rapidly in spoken Chinese and to fully prepare the students for their encounter with China.”

—Dr. Jingyi Fu, Associate Professor of Chinese, St. Mary's College of Maryland

“Contextualized so learners know not only what to say, but why, when, and with whom it is appropriate to use such language ... thorough and clear ... refreshing.”

—Dr. Matthew Christensen, Associate Professor of Chinese, Brigham Young University

“Kubler's books distinguish themselves with natural, culturally-rooted dialogues, detailed notes for both written and spoken language, generous practice activities and an amazing care for organization. These books will be valuable tools for both students and their teachers.”

—Prof. Eric Peidt, Wisconsin Lutheran College

TWO TRACKS FOR MORE EFFICIENT LEARNING...

基础中文 THE BASIC CHINESE SERIES 基础中文

www.tuttlepublishing.com

Printed in Singapore

922